010028.s.1

AN Entertaining Account OF ALL THE COUNTRIES OF THE KNOWN WORLD.

Deſcribing the different

RELIGIONS, HABITS. TEMPERS, | CUSTOMS, TRAFFICK, AND MANUFACTURES.

OF

THEIR INHABITANTS;

THE

Remarkable Curioſities, amongſt Them, either of *Art*, or *Nature*;

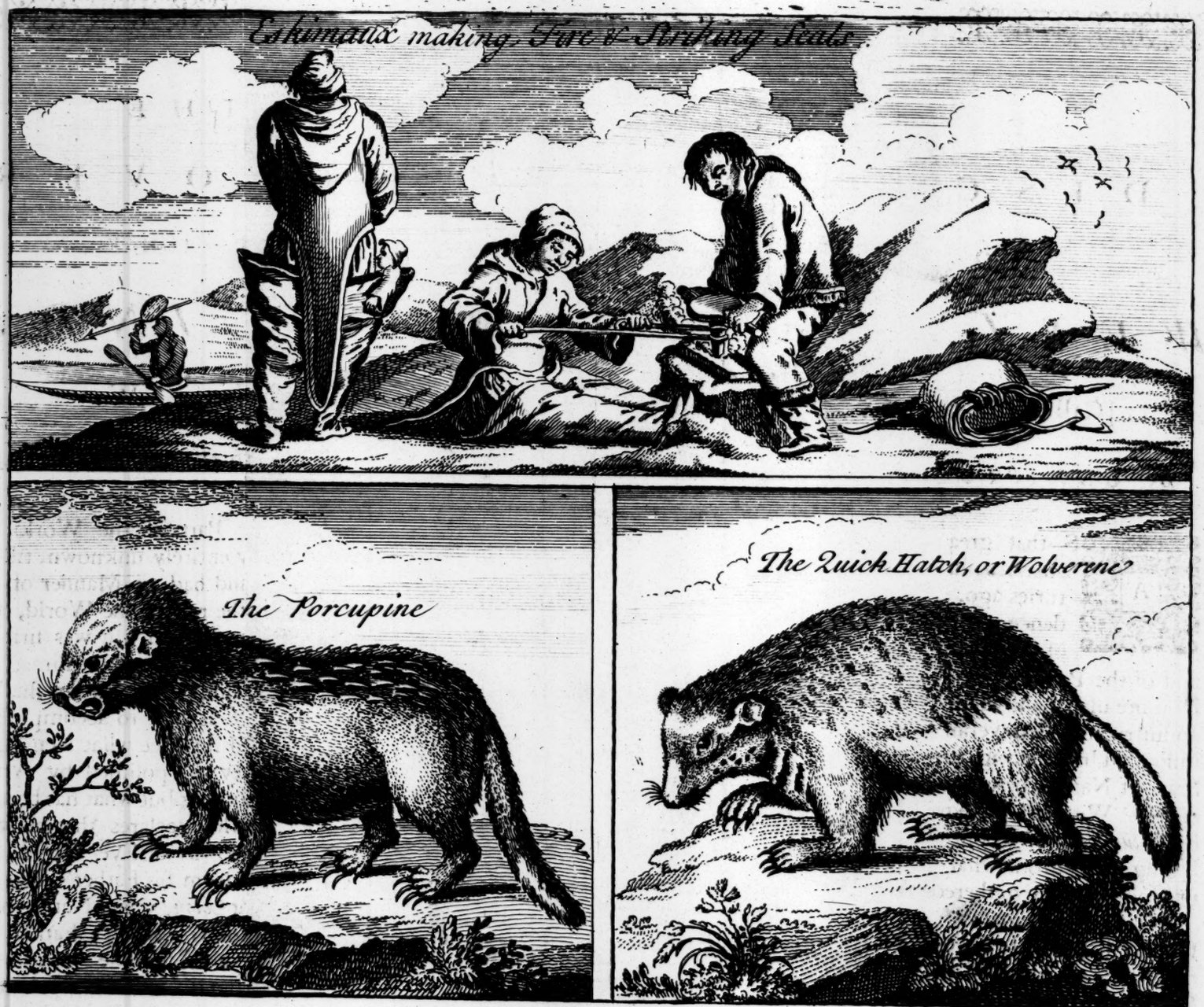
The great Variety of ſtrange Land and Sea-Animals; extraordinary Plants, Minerals, *&c.*

Adorn'd, occaſionally, with CUTS of the Habits of the ſeveral People, uncommon Animals, Ceremonies, Buildings, *&c.* all curiouſly engraved.

The FOURTH EDITION.

Printed for *R. Goadby*, in *Sherborne*; and ſold by *W. Owen*, Bookſeller, at *Temple-Bar*, *London*.

MDCCLII.


Eskimaux making Fire & Striking Seals
The Porcupine
The Quick Hatch, or Wolverene

THE DISCOVERY OF THE *WEST-INDIES*

[Call'd the NEW WORLD.]

By *CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.*

AS that great Part of the World, now called *America*, lay entirely unknown, till a few Centuries ago, and had no Manner of Correſpondence with the reſt of the World, an Account of the Manner in which it was firſt diſcover'd, and of the People that inhabited it that Time, muſt needs be quite uſeful and entertaining, as by it we ſhall learn that Induſtry and Perſeverance is able to accompliſh the moſt difficult Undertaking, and ſhall ſee what Mankind are in a State of Nature before they are poliſhed by Arts and Sciences. We ſhall relate nothing but what has been publiſhed by *Columbus*'s own Son, who declares that he wrote every Thing either from what he was an Eye-Witneſs of himſelf, or from what he gathered from his Father's own Papers.

Chriſtopher Columbus, or *Colon*, was a Native of ſome obſcure Village in the State of *Genoa*; his Father, and ſeveral of his Anceſtors, Sea-faring People; not in ſuch mean Circumſtances, however, but *Columbus* was put to School at *Pavia*, where he was taught Arithmetick, Navigation,

Aſtronomy, Drawing, and Painting, at leaſt ſufficient to draw a Landſkip, or deſcribe the Situation of a Place: From School he went to Sea, and was in ſeveral Engagements with the *Turks* and *Venetians*, and other Nations; in one of which, the Ship he was in being burnt near the Coaſt of *Portugal*, he had the good Fortune to eſcape to Shore upon a Plank, and coming to *Liſbon*, found ſeveral of his Countrymen and Acquaintance ſettled in that City, with whom he reſided ſome Time, and afterwards made ſeveral Voyages with the *Portugueſe* to the North and South, and particularly to *Guinea* on the Coaſt of *Africa*. While he was in the Service of the *Portugueſe*, he married a Wife of ſome Quality and Fortune, whoſe Father had been concern'd in ſeveral Naval Enterprizes, and was Governor of *Porto Sancto*, one of the *Madeira* Iſlands; by which Means *Columbus* came into the Poſſeſſion of his Father-in-Law's Charts, Maps, and Journals, which gave him the firſt Hint, 'tis ſaid of making Diſcoveries to the Weſtward: And here it may be proper to deſcribe the Perſon of this great Diſcoverer.

His Son relates, that he was moderately tall, and long-viſaged; his Complexion a good red and white; that he had light Eyes; his Cheeks were ſomewhat full, but neither too fat nor too lean; that in his Youth he had fair Hair, which turned Grey before he was thirty Years of Age; that he was moderate in eating and drinking, affected a plain modeſt Garb or Dreſs; that he was naturally grave, but affable to Strangers, and pleaſant frequently among his Domeſticks; ſtrict and devout in religious Matters; and, though a Seaman, was never heard to ſwear or curſe; that he applied himſelf chiefly to the Study of Coſmography, Aſtronomy and Geometry; and, from his Youth, appear'd to have a more than ordinary Paſſion to underſtand the State of all Countries on the Face of the Globe, and to make new Diſcoveries, which probably was his Reaſon for ſettling at *Liſbon*, no Nation having puſh'd their Diſcoveries further than the *Portugueſe* at that Time. And here he was perpetually drawing Maps and Charts, in which he receiv'd great Encouragement from that enterpriſing People.

Columbus,

Columbus, 'tis ſaid, had three Inducements to believe that there lay a Continent in the *Atlantick* Ocean, not far to the Weſtward, and that this Continent was contiguous to, or rather Part of the *Eaſt-Indies*, under which Name was then comprehended even *China*, and all the Countries to the Eaſtward of the *Ganges*.

He obſerved, that *Marinus* had placed the *Eaſt-Indies* fifteen Hours to the Eaſtward of the Weſt Coaſt of *Africa* and *Europe*, (which was, however, a very groſs Miſtake,) and that as there could remain but nine Hours more between this Continent and that, in ſailing Weſtward, ſuppoſing that Space to be all Sea, which he hoped was a great Part of it Land, he concluded it would be no very long Voyage to the *Eaſt-Indies* by the Weſt: And this, by the Way, is the Reaſon why *America* was called the *Indies*, becauſe the firſt Diſcoverers propoſed to ſail to the *Eaſt-Indies* through the *Atlantick* or Weſtern Ocean; and when the Continent of *America* was firſt found out, they looked upon it to be Part of the Continent of *India*, till they diſcovered that the South Sea, or Pacifick Ocean, lay between *America* and *India*.

A ſecond Inducement for his attempting theſe Diſcoveries Weſtward, was the Opinions of ſeveral learned Men, both Antients and Moderns, that there was another Continent beyond the Weſtern Ocean, either very near or contiguous to the *Eaſt-Indies*, and that it was not very far diſtant from our's: But no Man confirmed *Columbus* more in the Opinion of a Continent that lay to the Weſtward, than Signior *Paul*, a Phyſician of *Florence*, with whom he held a conſtant Correſpondence while he reſided at *Liſbon*. This Phyſician in one of his Letters, relates how rich and populous a Country *China* or *Cathay* was, as they had learnt by ſome Ambaſſadors who came from thence to the Pope, and from Merchants that had traded thither by Land; that it was full of great Towns, yielded Gold, precious Stones, and Merchandize of incredible Value; and aſſures him, that the Voyage thither, through the *Atlantick* Ocean, by the Weſt, could not be farther than the Voyage from *Portugal* to *Guinea*, (which though it was a very groſs Error) gave

gave *Columbus* great Encouragement to attempt that Voyage. In ſhort, he computes the Diſtance between *Liſbon* and *China*, ſailing Weſtward, to be about five thouſand Miles, in which he was out two thirds: However, ſo far was he accidentally in the Right, that the Space between ours and the next Continent to the Weſtward, was much thereabouts, and gave *Columbus* a Notion that he ſhould meet with Land five or ſix thouſand Miles to the Weſtward.

A third Inducement to this great Man's undertaking this Diſcovery, was the Report of ſome Sea-faring Men, who had uſed thoſe Weſtern Seas. A *Portugueſe* Pilot, named *Martin Vicente*, informed *Columbus*, that being 450 Leagues off Cape St. *Vincent*, he took up a Piece of carved Wood, which he gueſſed came from ſome Iſland to the Weſtward, the Wind having long ſet that Way: And *Peter Corea*, who married his Wife's Siſter, aſſured him, that he ſaw a Piece of carved Wood drove by the Weſterly Winds on *Porto Sancto*, one of the *Madeira* Iſlands; and that there had been thick Canes driven upon thoſe Shores, ſuch as did not grow in this Part of the World; and when the Weſt-Winds blew, Pines were frequently driven on the *Azores*, or Weſtern Iſlands: Others that had ſailed to the Weſtward of the *Azores* ſome hundreds of Leagues, affirmed they had ſeen an Iſland in thoſe Seas. But his principal Encouragement to this Undertaking, was, according to ſome, the Sea Charts and Journals of a Pilot who died at his Houſe in *Liſbon*, that appeared to have diſcovered ſome Land far to the Weſtward; and indeed by his perſiſting ſo long in the Reſolution of ſailing in ſearch of a Country beyond the *Atlantick* Ocean, and applying to ſo many Princes and States for their Aſſiſtance, and his ſtipulating for no other Pay or Reward than the Government of the Lands and Seas he ſhould diſcover, one would be inclined to think *Columbus* had ſome Certainty, or at leaſt very high Probability, of his ſucceeding in this Attempt; otherwiſe, for a Man to venture to ſail ſo many thouſand Miles upon an Ocean till then eſteemed boundleſs, muſt have been deemed rather raſh Temerity, than Wiſdom. However, his Son rejects this Story of the Pilot's dying at his Houſe, and leaving

leaving him thoſe Intimations of a Country he had diſcoveed to the Weſtward, as derogatory to his Father's Honour, who he inſiſts was the firſt Diſcoverer of that new World; and no Doubt he was the firſt that diſcovered it to any Purpoſe, ſo as to plant Colonies and make Settlements there in theſe latter Ages, which is an Honour that might ſatisfy his Deſcendants. One would think however, that the Diſcovery was made at firſt by Accident, and indeed as thoſe Seas about the *Azores*, the *Canaries*, the *Cape Verd* Iſlands, and the Coaſt of *Guinea* were then conſtantly navigated by the *Portugueſe* and *Spaniards*, it is not improbable that ſome of their Ships ſhould have been driven a Fortnight or three Weeks Sail to the Weſtward of their deſtin'd Courſe, and diſcover'd either the Iſlands or Continent of *America*, as 'tis ſaid this Pilot did, who died at the Houſe of *Chriſtopher Columbus* in *Liſbon*.

But whatever were the Admiral's Motives to this Undertaking, he choſe, it ſeems, rather to apply to Sovereign Princes and States for their Aſſiſtance, than invite private Adventurers into this Project; foreſeeing, that if he ſhould himſelf, or in Partnerſhip with others, arrive at the rich Countries he propoſed to viſit, the Prince (whoſe Subjects they were) would claim the Sovereignty of ſuch Places, and diſpoſe of them as he ſaw fit; or other Princes might fit out Fleets after he had found the Way to this new World, and deprive him and his Fellow Adventurers of the Advantage of their Diſcovery. It was extreamly prudent therefore in him, to endeavour to engage ſome Foreign Prince in the Deſign; and, ſince he could not hope to obtain the Dominion of what he ſhould diſcover, to ſtipulate for the ſecond Place in thoſe happy Regions he propoſed to come to; *viz.* the Poſt of Viceroy by Land and Sea, which we find he always inſiſted on, and at length obtained a Patent for. He might, no Doubt, have been much ſooner fitted out by private Owners; but then, their Poſſeſſion poſſibly, when they ſucceeded in the Diſcovery, would have been more precarious, than their Voyage to this new World was at firſt thought to be. But to proceed, *Columbus*, having ſailed a long while in the *Portugueſe* Service, married and ſettled at *Liſ-*

bon

bon, and advanced his Fortune there, firſt propoſed the finding out a Way to the *Eaſt-Indies*, by the Weſtern Ocean, to King *John* of *Portugal*; and gave ſuch ſubſtantial Reaſons for the Attempt, that the King ſeemed to be convinced the Thing was feaſible, though he did not approve the Terms our Adventurer propoſed: Therefore, while the Affair was negotiating, King *John*, 'tis ſaid, privately diſpatched a Ship to the Weſtward, with Orders to find out if there were any ſuch Lands in thoſe Seas as *Columbus* ſuppoſed. But whether the Commander wanted Courage or Capacity for ſuch an Undertaking, it ſeems he returned without meeting any Thing to his Purpoſe, and laugh'd at the Conjectures of *Columbus*: At which he was ſo incenſed, that he left *Liſbon*, and went to *Spain*, diſpatching at the ſame Time his Brother *Bartholomew Columbus*, to *Henry* VII. King of *England*, with Charts and Maps, that might illuſtrate his Deſign: But his Brother being taken by Pirates, and not making the Diſpatch that was expected, *Columbus* opened his Deſign to their Majeſties *Ferdinand* and *Iſabella*, King and Queen of *Caſtile* and *Arragon*: And though his Brother *Bartholomew* afterwards reached *England*, and his Propoſals were accepted by King *Henry* VII. yet *Columbus* having concluded an Agreement with the Court of *Spain* before he was advertiſed of his Brother's Succeſs, *England* loſt both the Honour and Profit of this important Diſcovery.

This Affair, it ſeems, was many Years negotiating; and probably *Columbus* had meditated upon it, and weighed the Difficulties and Hazards of the Undertaking a great while before he communicated it to any Man; for he is acknowledged by all to have been a Man of Prudence and Temper; and poſſibly, if he had not obtained ſome Reputation for his Knowledge in Coſmography and Navigation, the Courts he had applied himſelf to, had treated him no better than they uſually do a common Projector; whereas we find he tells their Majeſties *Ferdinand* and *Iſabella*, King and Queen of *Caſtile* and *Arragon*, in one of his Letters, "I "have refuſed to take up with *France*, *England*, and *Por*- "*tugal*, as appears by the Letters I have received from "thoſe

" thoſe Princes, and which your Highneſſes may ſee in the " Hands of Dr. *Villalan*, that I may ſerve your High- " neſſes."

It appears from our own Hiſtories, that his Brother *Bartholomew* was at the Court of *England* in the Year 1480, and that he had before treated with the King of *Portugal*, if not with *Spain*; and I'm apt to think that his Propoſals were rejected by the *Spaniſh* Court at firſt, which occaſioned his applying to *England* and *France*; but Queen *Iſabella* encouraging the Scheme, by the Advice of *John Perez*, her Confeſſor, about the Year 1484, he ſeemed from that Time to have applied himſelf wholly to the *Spaniſh* Court. However, *Ferdinand* and *Iſabella* being yet engaged in the Wars with the *Moors* in *Spain*, he was ſtill delayed till the Year 1492; when a Supply of Money was provided, and *Columbus* entruſted with the equipping and fitting out three ſmall Ships for the Expedition, in the Harbour of *Palos*. He alſo obtained a Grant from their Majeſties to be Admiral of the Weſtern Seas, with the ſame Privilege as the Admirals of *Caſtile* and *Leon* enjoyed; that all Civil Employments, as well as Governments in the Continent, or World to be diſcovered, ſhould be wholly at his Diſpoſal; and beſides the Revenue of the Poſts of Admiral and Viceroy, he ſhould enjoy a tenth of all the Profits ariſing by future Conqueſts in thoſe yet unknown Lands.

And now *Columbus*, whom his Son from this Time, in his Relation calls Admiral, having equipped and victualled his three Ships, of which the Chief, called the St. *Mary*, he commanded in Perſon, and the other Two were commanded by the Captains *Martin Alvazo Pinzon*, and *Vincent Pinzon*, two Brothers. This little Squadron, mann'd only with 90 Men, and conſequently none of the Veſſels of any great Burthen, ſet Sail from *Palos* for the *Canaries* the 3d of *Auguſt*, 1492, and arrived in thoſe Iſlands the 12th. One of the Ships having received ſome Damage in this Paſſage, the Admiral remained there to refit and take in freſh Proviſions, till the firſt of *September*, when he ſet Sail again upon his grand Deſign, and departed from *Gran Canaria*, arriving the next Day at *Gomera*, where four Days

Days more were ſpent in laying in Proviſions, Wood, and Water; ſo that next Thurſday in the Morning, which was on the 6th of *September*, 1492, which may be accounted the firſt ſetting out upon the Voyage on the Ocean, the Admiral departed from *Gomera*, and ſtood away to the Weſtward, but made but little Way, by Reaſon of the Calm. On *Sunday*, about Day, he found himſelf nine Leagues Weſt of the Iſland *Ferro*, where they loſt Sight of Land, and many fearing it would be long before they ſhould ſee it again, ſigh'd and wept; but the Admiral, after comforting them with great Promiſes of Lands and Wealth, to raiſe their Hopes and leſſen the Fear they had conceived of the Length of the Way, though they ſailed eighteen Leagues that Day, he pretended by his Computation it was but fifteen, reſolving all his Voyage to keep ſhort in his Reckonings, that his Men might not think themſelves ſo far from *Spain* as they were, if he ſhould truly ſet down the Way he made, which he yet privately mark'd down. Continuing thus his Voyage, on *Wedneſday* the 12th of *September*, about Sun-ſetting, being about 150 Leagues Weſt of the Iſland *Ferro*, he diſcovered a large Body of the Maſt of a Tree of 120 Ton, which ſeemed to have been a long Time upon the Water. There, and ſomewhat further, the Current ſat ſtrong towards the North-Eaſt; but when he had ran fifty Leagues further Weſtward, on the 13th of *September* he found, that at Night-fall the Needle varied half a Point towards the North-Eaſt, and at break of Day half a Point more, by which he underſtood that the Needle did not point at the North Star, but at ſome other fixed and viſible Point. This Variation no Man had obſerved before, and therefore he had Occaſion to be ſurprized at it; but he was more amazed the third Day after, when he was almoſt one hundred Leagues further, for at Night the Needles varied about a Point to the North-Eaſt, and in the Morning they pointed upon the Star. On Saturday the 15th of *September*, being almoſt three hundred Leagues Weſt of *Ferro*, at Night they ſaw a wonderful Flaſh of Light fall from the Sky into the Sea, about four or five Leagues Diſtance from the Ships, towards the South-Weſt, though the Weather

was

was then fair, like *April*, the Wind favourable at North-East, the Sea ſtill, and the Current ſetting at North-East. The Men aboard the Caraval called *la Ninna*, told the Admiral they had the *Friday* before ſeen a Heron and another Sort of Bird, which the *Spaniards* call *Rabo de Junco*, which they were amazed at, thoſe being the firſt Birds they had ſeen: But they were more ſurpriſed the next Day, which was *Sunday*, at the great Abundance of Weeds between green and yellow, that appeared upon the Water, which ſeemed to be newly waſhed away from ſome Iſland or Rock. They ſaw enough of theſe Weeds the next Day, which made many affirm they were already near Land, eſpecially becauſe they ſaw a ſmall Lobſter alive among the Weeds, which they ſaid ſomewhat reſembled the Herb *Star-wort*, but that the Stalk and Branches were long, and it was all full of ſmall Seeds. Afterwards they obſerved that the Sea Water was but half as ſalt as before; beſides, that Night, abundance of *Tunny* Fiſhes followed them, running along, and ſticking ſo cloſe to them, that thoſe aboard the Caraval *Ninna*, killed one with a bearded Iron. Being now three hundred and ſixty Leagues Weſt of *Ferro*, they ſaw another of thoſe Birds the *Spaniards* call *Rabo de Junco*, becauſe of a long Feather their Tail conſiſts of, and in *Spaniſh*, *Rabo* ſignifies a Tail, as *Junco* is a Ruſh, ſo that *Rabo de Junco* imports Ruſh Tail. On *Tueſday* following, being the 12th of *September*, *Martin Alonzo Pinzon*, who was gone a-head with the Caraval called *Pinta*, which was an excellent Sailor, lay for the Admiral, and told him he had ſeen a great Number of Birds fly away Weſtward, for which Reaſon he hoped to find Land that Night, and he thought he ſaw the Land to the Northward, fifteen Leagues diſtant, that Day about Sun-ſetting, looking very dark and cloudy. But the Admiral knowing for certain it was no Land, would not loſe Time to diſcover it, as all his Men would have had him; for as much as he was not yet come to the Place where he expected by his Computation to find Land, therefore they took in their Top-ſails at Night, becauſe the Wind freſhen'd, having for eleven Days never abated one Handful of Sail, going ſtill before the Wind Weſtward.

All the Men aboard the Ships being unacquainted with that Voyage, and fearful of the Danger, becauſe far from any Relief, there were ſome that began to mutter, and ſeeing nothing but Sky and Water, carefully obſerved every Thing that appeared, at a greater Diſtance from Land than any had before: For which Reaſon I will relate all they made any Account of, and this only in the firſt Voyage; for I ſhall not mention leſſer Tokens, generally ſeen upon ſuch Occaſions. On the 19th of *September*, in the Morning, a Fowl called *Alcatraz*, which is a Sort of Sea Gull, flew over the Admiral's Ship, and others in the Afternoon, which made him conceive Hopes of Land, he imagining they would not fly very far from it. Upon theſe Hopes, as ſoon as the Wind abated, they ſounded with two hundred Fathom of Line; and though they found no Bottom, they found the Current now ſet South Weſt. On *Thurſday* the 22d, two Hours before Noon, two *Alcatrazes* came to the Ship, and another ſome Time after; beſides they took a Bird like a Heron, but that it was black, and had a white Tuft on the Head, the Feet like a Duck, as commonly Water Fowls have: They alſo caught a little Fiſh, and ſaw abundance of Weeds; and about Evening there came aboard three Land Fowls ſinging, but at Break of Day they flew away; which was ſome Comfort to them, conſidering that the other Fowls being large and uſed to the Water, might better go far from Land, but that theſe little ones could not come from any far diſtant Country. Three Hours after they ſaw another *Alcatraz*, and there appeared more Weeds than before towards the North, as far as they could ſee; which Things ſometimes were a Comfort to them, believing they might come from ſome near Land; and ſometimes they cauſed Dread, becauſe they were ſo thick, that in ſome Meaſure they ſtay'd the Ships; and Fear making Things worſe than they are, they apprehended that might befall them, which is fabulouſly reported of St. *Amaro* in the frozen Sea, who is ſaid not to ſuffer Ships to ſtir backwards or forwards; and therefore they ſteered away from the Shoals of Weeds as much as they could. But to return to Tokens: The next Day they ſaw a Whale, and

and on *Saturday* following, being the 22d of *September*, ſome ſmall Birds, and the Wind thoſe Days blew at South Weſt, ſometimes more, and ſometimes leſs Weſt; which, though contrary to their Voyage, the Admiral ſaid he looked upon as very good, and a Help to them, becauſe his Men continually muttering, among other Things that increaſed their Fear, ſaid this was one. That ſince the Wind was always right a-ſtern, they ſhould never in thoſe Seas have a Gale to carry them back; and though ſometimes they found the contrary, they alledged it was no ſettled Wind, and that not being ſtrong enough to ſwell the Sea, it would never carry them back ſo far as they had to ſail. Whatſoever the Admiral could ſay, telling them that the Reaſon was the Land's being now near, which did not ſuffer the Waves to riſe, and uſing the beſt Arguments he could, yet he affirms he ſtood in Need of God's particular Aſſiſtance, as *Moſes* did when he led the *Iſraelites* out of *Ægypt*, who forbore laying violent Hands on him, becauſe of the Prodigies God wrought by his Means. So ſays the Admiral, it happened to him in that Voyage; for upon *Sunday* following the Wind ſtarted at W. N. W. with a rowling Sea, as the Men wiſhed, and three Hours before Noon they ſaw a Turtle fly over the Ship, and about Evening, an *Alcatraz*, a River Fowl, and other white Birds, and ſome Crabs among the Weeds; and the next Day they 'ſpy'd another *Alcatraz*, and ſeveral ſmall Birds that came from the Weſt, and ſmall Fiſhes, whereof the Men of the other Veſſels ſtuck ſome with harping Irons, becauſe they would not bite at the Hook.

The more the aforeſaid Tokens were found vain, the more they took Occaſion to apprehend and mutter, caballing together, and ſaying, the Admiral (out of a fooliſh Fancy of his own) had deſigned to make himſelf a great Lord, at the Expence of their Lives and Danger; and ſince they had done their Duty in trying their Fortune, and had gone further from Land and any Succour than any others had done, they ought not to deſtroy themſelves, nor proceed in that Voyage, ſince if they did they ſhould have Cauſe to repent; for Proviſions would fall ſhort, and the Ships fail, which they knew were already ſo faulty, that it

would be hard to get back ſo far as they were gone, and that none would condemn them for ſo doing, but they would rather be look'd upon as brave Men, for going upon ſuch a Deſign, and venturing ſo far; and that the Admiral being a Foreigner, and having no Favour at Court, and ſo many wiſe and learned Men having condemned his Opinion, there would be no Body now to favour and defend him, and they ſhould ſooner find Credit if they accuſed him of Ignorance and Miſmanagement, than he, whatſoever he could ſay for himſelf. Nor did there want ſome who ſaid, that to end all Diſpute, in caſe he would not acquieſce with them, they might make ſhort, and throw him overboard, and give out, that as he was making his Obſervations, he dropped into the Sea, and no Man would go about to enquire into the Truth of it, which was the readieſt Way for them to return home and ſecure themſelves. Thus they went on from Day to Day, muttering, complaining, and conſulting together; nor was the Admiral without Apprehenſions of their Inconſtancy, and ill Intentions towards him: Therefore, ſometimes with good Words, and ſometimes with a full Reſolution to expoſe his Life, putting them in Mind of the Puniſhment due to them if they obſtructed the Voyage, he in ſome Meaſure quell'd their Apprehenſions, and ſuppreſſed their ill Deſigns. To confirm the Hope he gave them, he put them in Mind of the aforeſaid Signs and Tokens, aſſuring them they would ſoon find Land; which Signs they were ſo attentive to, that they thought every Hour a Year till they ſaw Land. On *Tueſday* the 25th of *September*, about Sun-ſetting, as the Admiral was diſcourſing with *Pinzon*, whoſe Ship was very near, the ſaid *Pinzon* on a ſudden cryed out, *Land, Land, Sir! Let not my good News miſcarry*; and ſhew'd him towards the South-Weſt, a Bulk which looked very like an Iſland, about twenty-five Leagues from the Ships. This was ſo pleaſing to the Men, that they returned Thanks to Almighty God; and the Admiral, (who had given no Credit to theſe Words) to pleaſe the Men, and that they ſhould not obſtruct his Voyage, ſtood that Way a great Part of the Night. Next Morning they perceived that what they had

ſeen

ſeen were only Clouds, which often look like Land; for which Reaſon, to the great Diſſatisfaction of moſt of the Sailors, they turned the Sterns of their Ships Weſtward, as they had always done, except when the Wind hindered, Continuing ſtill attentive to the Signs, they ſaw an *Alcatraz*, a *Rabo de Junco*, and other Birds, like thoſe before-mentioned. On *Thurſday* the 27th of *September*, in the Morning they ſaw another *Alcatraz* coming from the Weſt, and ſailing Eaſtward; an abundance of Fiſhes, with gilt Backs, appeared, whereof they ſtruck one with a Harping Iron. A *Rabo de Junco* flew by them, and they found that the Currents, for thoſe laſt Days, were not ſo regularly fix'd as they uſed to be before, but turned with the Tide, and there were not ſo many Weeds as before. On *Friday* following, all the Ships took ſome Fiſhes with gilt Backs, and on *Saturday* they ſaw a *Rabo de Junco*; which, though it is a Sea Fowl, does not reſt on it, but flies always in the Air, purſuing the *Alcatrazes*, till it makes them drop their Excrements for Fear, which it catches in the Air for its Nouriſhment; and thus it maintains itſelf on the Sea, and it is reported there are many of them about the Iſlands of *Cabo Verde*. Soon after they ſaw two more *Alcatrazes*, and abundance of flying Fiſhes, which are about a Span long, and have two little Wings like a Bat; they fly about a Pike high from the Water, and a Muſket-ſhot in Length, more or leſs, and they ſometimes drop upon the Ships. In the Afternoon they ſaw abundance of Weeds lying in Length North and South, as they had done before, beſides three *Alcatrazes*, and a *Rabo de Junco* that purſued them.

On *Sunday* Morning, four *Rabo de Junco's* came to the Ship; by reaſon of whoſe coming ſo together, it was thought the Land was nearer, eſpecially becauſe ſoon after there flew by four *Alcatrazes*, and abundance of Weeds were ſeen in a Line lying W. N. W. and E. S. E. and alſo a great Number of thoſe Fiſhes they call *Emperadores*, which have a very hard Skin, and are not fit to eat. How much ſoever the Admiral regarded theſe Tokens, yet he never forgot thoſe in the Heavens, and the Courſe of the Stars. He therefore obſerved in this Place, to his great Admiration,

on, that the *Charles Wain* at Night appeared in the Weſt Point, and in the Morning they were directly N. E. by which he gathered, that their whole Night's Courſe was but three Lines, or nine Hours, that is, ſo many Parts of 24; and this he made out every Night. He alſo perceiv'd, that at Night-fall the Compaſs varied a whole Point to the North-Weſt, and at Break of Day it came right with the Star. Theſe Things confounded the Pilots, till he told them the Cauſe of it was the Compaſs the Star took about the Pole, which was ſome Satisfaction to them; for this Variation made them apprehend ſome Danger in ſuch an unknown Diſtance from Home, and ſuch ſtrange Regions.

On *Monday* the firſt of *October*, after Sun-riſing, an *Alcatraz* came to the Ship, and two more about Ten in the Morning, and long Streams of Weeds lay from Eaſt to Weſt. That Day, in the Morning, the Pilot of the Admiral's Ship ſaid they were 578 Leagues Weſt of the Iſland of *Ferro*; the Admiral ſaid, by his Account, they were 584 Leagues; but in private he concluded it was 707, which is 129 Leagues more than the Pilot reckoned. The other two Ships differed very much in their Computation, for the Pilot of the Caraval *Ninna*, on *Wedneſday* following, after Noon ſaid they had ſailed 540 Leagues, and the other of the Caraval *Pinta*, ſaid 634. Adding all they had ſailed during thoſe three Days, they were ſtill much ſhort of Truth, for they went always before the Wind, and had run much more. But the Admiral, as has been ſaid, winked at this groſs Miſtake, that the Men might not be quite dejected, being ſo far from Home. The next Day, being the 2d of *October*, they ſaw abundance of Fiſh, catched a ſmall Tunny, and ſaw a white Bird, and many other ſmall ones, and the Weeds they ſaw were withered, and almoſt fallen to Powder. The next Day after, ſeeing no Birds, but ſome Fiſh, they miſtruſted they had left ſome Iſlands on both Hands, and were ſlipped between without diſcovering them, gueſſing that thoſe many Birds they had ſeen were paſſing from one Iſland to another. They were very earneſt to ſteer either one Way or to the other, to ſeek out thoſe Lands they imagined; but the Admiral would not conſent, being unwilling

to

loſe the fair Wind that carried him away to the Weſtward, which he accounted the ſureſt Courſe; and beſides, becauſe he thought it was a leſſening the Reputation of his Undertaking, to run from one Place to another, ſeeking that which he always affirmed he well knew where to find. For this Reaſon, the Men were ready to mutiny, continuing to mutter and conſpire againſt him; but it pleaſed GOD, as we find above, to aſſiſt him by the Means of freſh Tokens, for on *Thurſday* the 4th of *October*, after Noon, about forty Sparrows together, and two *Alcatrazes*, flew ſo near the Ships, that a Seaman kill'd one of them with a Stone; and before this they had ſeen another Bird like a *Rabo de Junco*, and another like a Swallow, and a great many flying Fiſhes fell into their Ships. Next Day there came a *Rabo de Junco* and an *Alcatraz* from the Weſtward, and an abundance of Sparrows were ſeen. On *Sunday* the 7th of *October*, about Sun-riſing, ſome Signs of Land appeared Weſtward, but being imperfect, no Man would ſpeak of it; not ſo much for the Shame that would follow of aſſerting what was not, as for fear of loſing thirty Crowns a Year their Catholick Majeſties had promiſed for Life to him that ſhould firſt diſcover Land; and to prevent their crying Land, Land, at every Turn, as they might do without ſufficient Cauſe, out of Covetouſneſs of that Allowance, it was ordered, that whoſoever ſaid he ſaw Land, if it was not made out in three Days after, ſhould loſe the Reward, though afterwards he ſhould prove the firſt Diſcoverer. All aboard the Admiral being thus forewarned, none of them durſt cry out Land; but thoſe in the Caraval *Ninna*, which was a better Sailer, and kept a Head, believing it to be certainly Land, fired a Gun, and put out the Colours in Token of Land. But the further they ſailed, the more their Joys vaniſhed, till that Appearance quite diſappeared, tho' it pleas'd GOD ſoon after to give them ſome Manner of Comfort, for they ſaw great Flights of great Fowl, and others of ſmall Land Birds, flying from the Weſt towards the South-Weſt, Therefore, the Admiral being now ſo far from *Spain*, and ſure that ſuch ſmall Birds would not go far from Land, he altered his Courſe, which till then was Weſt, and ſtood to

the

the South-Weſt, ſaying, that if he changed his Road, it was becauſe he deviated but little from his firſt Deſign, and becauſe he would follow the Example of the *Portugueſe*, who had diſcovered moſt of their Iſlands by Means of ſuch Birds, and the more, becauſe thoſe they ſaw followed almoſt the ſame Way he had always propoſed to himſelf to find Land, according to the Place they were then in, ſince (as they well knew he had often told them) he never expected to find Land till he was 750 Leagues to the Weſtward of the *Canaries*; within which Diſtance he had further ſaid he ſhould diſcover *Hiſpaniola*, which he then called *Cipango*, and there is no Doubt but he had found it, had not he known it was reported to lie in Length North to South: For which Reaſon he had not inclined more to the South to run upon it, and therefore that and others of the *Caribbee* Iſlands lay now on his Larboad Side, South of him, whither thoſe Birds were directing their Courſe. Being ſo near the Land, was the Reaſon they continually ſaw ſuch abundance of Birds; and on *Monday* the 8th of *October*, there came to the Ship twelve ſinging Birds of ſeveral Colours, and after flying a Turn about the Ship, they held on their Way. They alſo ſaw from the Ships, many other Birds, flying towards the South Weſt, and that ſame Night abundance of large Fowls were ſeen, and Flights of ſmall Birds coming from the Northward, and flying after the reſt: Beſides, they ſaw a good Number of *Tunny* Fiſh. In the Morning they ſpy'd a *Jay*, an *Alcatraz*, *Ducks*, and ſmall Birds, flying the ſame Way the others had done; and they perceived the Air to be freſh and odoriferous, as it is at *Seville* in *April*. But they were now ſo eager to ſee Land, that they had Faith in no Signs whatſoever; ſo that, tho' on *Wedneſday* the 10th of *October* they ſaw abundance of Birds paſs by both Day and Night, yet the Men did not ceaſe to complain, nor the Admiral to blame their Want of Courage; declaring to them, that right or wrong they muſt go on in diſcovering the *Indies* their Catholick Majeſties had ſent them to.

The Admiral being no longer able to withſtand ſo many as oppoſed him, it pleaſed GOD that on *Tueſday* the 11th of

of *October*, after Noon, the Men took Heart and rejoiced, having manifeſt Tokens that they were near Land; which were, that thoſe aboard the Admiral ſaw a green Ruſh ſwim by the Ship, and then a great green Fiſh of that Sort, that goes not far from the Rocks. Thoſe aboard the Caraval *Pinta*, ſaw a Cane and a Staff, and took up another Staff curiouſly wrought, and a ſmall Board, and abundance of Weeds freſh waſhed away from the Banks. Thoſe in the Caraval *Ninna* ſaw other ſuch-like Tokens, and a Branch of a Thorn full of red Berries, which ſeemed to be newly broke off. By theſe Tokens, and Reaſon itſelf, the Admiral being aſſured he was near Land, at Night (after Prayers) he made a Speech to all the Men in general, putting them in Mind how great a Mercy it was that GOD had brought them ſo long a Voyage, with ſuch fair Weather, and comforting them with Tokens, which every Day were plainer and plainer; therefore he prayed them to be very watchful that Night, ſince they well knew that in the firſt Article of the Inſtructions he gave each Ship at the *Canary* Iſlands, he ordained that when they had ſailed ſeven hundred Leagues to the Weſtward, without diſcovering Land, they ſhould lay by from Midnight till Day. Therefore, ſince they had not yet obtained their Deſires in diſcovering Land, they ſhould at leaſt expreſs their Zeal in being watchful. And for as much as he had moſt aſſured Hopes of finding Land that Night every one ſhould be in his Place; for beſides the Gratuity their Majeſties had promiſed of thirty Crowns a Year for Life to him that firſt ſaw Land, he would give him a Velvet Doublet. After this, about ten at Night, as the Admiral was in the great Cabin, he ſaw a Light aſhore, but ſaid it was ſo blind that he could not affirm it to be Land, though he called one *Peter Gutierres*, and bid him obſerve whether he ſaw the Light, who ſaid he did; but preſently they called one *Roderick Sanches*, of *Segovia*, to look that Way, but he could not ſee it, becauſe he came not up Time enough where it might be ſeen; nor did they ſee it afterwards above once or twice, which made them judge it might be a Candle or Torch belonging to ſome Fiſherman or Traveller, who had lifted it up, and let it fall

down; or perhaps that they were People going from one Houſe to another, becauſe it vaniſhed and ſuddenly appear'd again; ſo that few would gueſs but that they were near Land. Being now very much upon their Guard, they ſtill held on their Courſe, till about Two in the Morning the Caraval *Pinta*, which being an excellent Sailor, was far a-head, gave the Signal of Land, which was firſt diſcovered by a Sailor, whoſe Name was *Roderick de Triana*, being two Leagues from Shore. But the thirty Crowns a Year was not granted by their Catholick Majeſties to him, but to the Admiral, who had ſeen the Light in the midſt of Darkneſs, ſignifying the Spiritual Light he was then ſpreading in thoſe dark Regions. Being now near Land, all the Ships lay by, thinking it a long Time till Morning, that they might ſee what they had ſo long deſired.

Day appearing, they perceived it was an Iſland fifteen Leagues in Length, plain, without Hills, and full of green Trees and delicious Waters, with a great Lake in the Middle, inhabited by abundance of People, who ran down to the Shore aſtoniſhed, and admiring at the Sight of the Ships, believing them to be ſome living Creatures, and were impatient to know certainly what they were. Nor were the Chriſtians leſs haſty to know them, whoſe Curioſity was quickly ſatisfied, for they ſoon came to an Anchor: The Admiral went aſhore with his Boat well armed, and the Royal Standard diſplayed, as did the Captains of the other two Ships in their Boats, with their particular Colours of this Enterprize, which were a green Croſs with an *F.* on the one Side, and on the other the Names of *Ferdinand* and *Iſabella* (or *Elizabeth*) crowned. Having all given Thanks to GOD, kneeling on the Shore, and kiſſing the Ground with Tears of Joy, for the great Mercy received, the Admiral ſtood up, and called that Iſland St. *Salvador*. After that, he took Poſſeſſion for their Catholick Majeſties in the uſual Words, and with the Solemnity proper in thoſe Caſes; Abundance of the Natives that were come out, being preſent, and conſequently the Chriſtians admitted him as Admiral and Viceroy, and ſwore to obey him, as repreſenting their Highneſſes Perſons, and with ſuch Expreſſions of Joy, as became

The first Landing of Columbus at America?

became their mighty Succeſs, all of them begging his Pardon for all the Affronts they had done him through their Fear and Irreſolution. Abundance of the *Indians* being come down to this Rejoicing, and the Admiral perceiving they were peaceable, quiet, and very ſimple People, he gave them ſome red Caps, and Strings of Glaſs Beads, which they hung about their Necks, and other Things of ſmall Value, which they valued as if they had been Stone of high Price.

The Admiral being gone off in his Boats, the *Indians* followed him to them and to the Ships ſwimming, and others in their Canoes, carrying Parrots, Bottoms of ſpun Cotton, Javelins, and other ſuch Trifles, to barter for Glaſs Beads, Bells, and other Things of ſmall Value. Like People in their original Simplicity, they went naked as they were born, and a Woman that was among them had no other Cloathing. Moſt of them were young, not above thirty Years of Age, of a good Stature, their Hair lank, thick, very black and ſhort, being cut above their Ears, except ſome few who had let it grow down to their Shoulders, and had ty'd it with a ſtrong Thread about their Head, like Women's Treſſes. Their Countenances were pleaſant, and their Features good, but their too high Foreheads made them look ſomewhat wild. They were of a middle Stature, well ſhaped, plump, but of an Olive Colour, like the People of the *Canaries*, or Peaſants that are Sun-burned. Some were painted with black, ſome with white, and others with red; ſome only the Faces, others the whole Body, and others nothing but the Eyes and Noſe. They had no Weapons like our Men, nor Knowledge of them; for when the Chriſtians ſhew'd them a naked Sword, they took it ſimply by the Edge: Nor had they any Knowledge of Iron, and therefore they made their Javelins we mentioned, of Wands, with the Points hardened at the Fire, arming them with Fiſh Bone inſtead of Iron. Some of them having Scars of Wounds about them, and being aſked by Signs how they came by them, they anſwered by Signs, that People came from other Iſlands to take them away, and they received thoſe Wounds in their own De-

fence. They ſeemed ingenious, and of a voluble Tongue, for they eaſily repeated the Words they once heard. There were no Sort of Creatures there but Parrots, which they carried to barter among other Things we have ſpoke of, and in this Trade they continued till Night. Next Day, being the 13th of *October*, in the Morning, many of them came down to the Shore, and went aboard in their Boats called Canoes, which were made of one Piece, being the Body of a Tree hollowed like a Tray. The biggeſt of them were ſo large, that they contained forty or forty-five Men, and ſo leſs and leſs, till ſome would hold but one. They rowed with a Paddle like a Baker's Peal, or thoſe they uſe in dreſſing Hemp; true it is, that the Oars are not fixed on the Side with Pins to turn as our's are, but they dip them in the Water, and pull back as if they were digging. Theſe Canoes are ſo light and ſo artificially built, that if they overſet, they ſoon turn them right again ſwimming, and empty the Water by throwing the Veſſel from Side to Side like a Weaver's Shuttle, and when it is above half out, they lade out what remains with dry'd Calabaſhes cut in two, which they carry for that Purpoſe. That Day they brought ſuch Things to barter for, as they had the Day before, giving all they had for any ſmall Thing they could get. Jewels, or any Sort of Metal, were not ſeen among them, except ſome ſmall Plates of Gold, which hung at their Noſtrils; and being aſked whence they had that Gold, they anſwered by Signs, towards the South, where there was a King who had abundance of Pieces and Veſſels of Gold; expreſſing, that towards the South and South-Weſt, there were many other Iſlands and large Countries. Being very covetous of any Thing of our's, and being themſelves but poor, and having nothing to give in Exchange, as ſoon as they came on board, if they could lay their Hands on any Thing, though it were but a Piece of a broken earthen glazed Diſh or Porringer, they leaped into the Sea and ſwam aſhore; and if they brought any Thing aboard, they would give it for any trifling Thing of our's, or a Bit of broken Glaſs; ſo that ſome of them gave ſixteen Bottoms of Cotton for three ſmall Pieces of *Portugueſe* Braſs Coin, not worth

worth a Farthing: Theſe Bottoms weighed twenty-five Pounds, and the Cotton was very well ſpun. Thus they ſpent the Day, and at Night they all went aſhore. It is to be obſerved, that their Liberality in Dealing did not proceed from the great Value they put upon thoſe Things themſelves which they had of our Men, but becauſe they valued them as being our's, looking upon it as moſt certain, that our Men were come down from Heaven, and therefore they earneſtly deſired to have ſomething left them as a Memorial.

Next *Sunday*, being the 15th of *October*, the Admiral ran along the Coaſt of the Iſland, towards the North-Weſt, in his Boats, to diſcover ſomething about it; and that Way he went, he found a large Bay, or Harbour, capable of containing all the Ships in Chriſtendom. The People ſeeing him coaſt along, ran after along the Shore, crying out, and promiſing to give him Proviſions, calling others to ſee the People dropped from Heaven upon Earth, and lifted up their Hands to Heaven, as it were, giving Thanks for their coming. Many of them ſwimming, or in their Canoes, as beſt they could, came to the Boats, aſking by Signs whether they were come down from Heaven, and praying them to land and reſt themſelves. The Admiral gave them all Glaſs Beads, Pins, and other Trifles, rejoicing at their great Simplicity, till he came to a Peninſula, which made a good Port, and were a good Fort might be made. There he ſaw ſix Houſes of the *Indians*, with Gardens about them, as pleaſant as they are in *Spain* in *May*; but his Men being weary of rowing, and he plainly perceiving that was none of the Land he looked for, nor ſo beneficial as that he ſhould make any longer Stay there, he took ſeven of thoſe *Indians* to ſerve him as Interpreters; and returning to his Ships, ſailed for other Iſlands that could be diſcovered from the Peninſula, and appeared to be plain, green, and very populous, as the *Indians* themſelves affirmed. The next Day, being *Monday* the 16th of *October*, he came to one that was ſeven Leagues from the other, and called it St. *Mary of the Conception*. That Side of this Iſland next St. *Salvador*, extended North-Weſt five Leagues in Length, but

but the Admiral went to that Side which lies Eaſt and Weſt, and is above ten Leagues in Length; and being come to an Anchor towards the Weſt, landed to do as he had done in the other. Here the People of the Iſland ran together to ſee the Chriſtians, admiring as the others had done. The Admiral perceiving this was the ſame Thing as the laſt, the next Day, being *Tueſday*, ſailed Weſtward to another Iſland conſiderably bigger, and anchored upon the Coaſt of it, which runs North-Weſt and South-Eaſt, above twenty-eight Leagues. This was like the others, plain, had a fine Strand, and was called *Fernandina*. Before they came to this Iſland, and that of the *Conception*, they found a Man in a ſmall Canoe, who had a Piece of their Bread, and a Calabaſh of Water, and a little Earth like Vermillion, wherewith thoſe People paint their Bodies, as was ſaid before, and ſome dry Leaves which they value, as being of a ſweet Scent and wholeſome; and in a little Baſket he had a String of Beads of green Glaſs, and two ſmall Pieces of *Portugueſe* Money; by which it was gueſſed that he was coming from St. *Salvador*, that he had paſſed by the *Conception*, and was going to *Fernandina*, to carry News of the Chriſtians: But becauſe the Way was far, and he weary, he came to the Ships, was taken up with his Canoe, and courteouſly treated by the Admiral, deſigning as ſoon as he came to Land, to ſend him aſhore; which he did, that he might ſpread the News. The good Acccount he gave, cauſed the People of *Fernandina* to come aboard in their Canoes, to exchange the ſame Sort of Things the others had done before, for theſe People were like the reſt; and when the Boat went aſhore for Water, the *Indians* very readily ſhew'd where it was, and carried the ſmall Caſks full on their Shoulders, to fill the Hogſheads in the Boat. They ſeemed to be a wiſer and diſcreeter People than the firſt, and as ſuch bargain'd harder for what they exchanged, had Cotton Cloth in their Houſes, and Bed Cloaths; and the Women cover'd their Privities with ſhort hanging Cotton Cloths, and others with a Sort of Swathe. Among other notable Things they ſaw in that Iſland, were ſome Trees which ſeemed to be grafted, becauſe they had Leaves and Branches of four or five ſeveral Sorts,

and

and yet were natural. They alſo ſaw Fiſhes of ſeveral Shapes and fine Colours, but no Sort of Land Creatures but Lizards and Snakes. The better to diſcover the Iſland, they ſailed away North-Weſt, and came to an Anchor at the Mouth of a beautiful Harbour; at the Entrance whereof was a ſmall Iſland, and therefore they could not get in, there being but little Water; nor did they much care, becauſe they would not be far from a Town that appeared at a Diſtance; for in the biggeſt Iſland they had yet ſeen, they had not found above twelve or fifteen Houſes together, built like Tents, in which they ſaw no other Ornaments or Moveables, but what they carried to the Ships to exchange. Their Beds were like a Net, drawn together in the Nature of a Sling ty'd to two Poſts in their Houſes, in which they lie. Here they ſaw ſome Dogs like Maſtiffs, and others like Beagles, but none of them barked.

Finding nothing of Value in this Iſland *Fernandina*, on *Friday* the 19th of *October* they ſailed away to another, called *Saomotto*, to which he gave the Name of *Iſabella*, to proceed regularly in his Names; for the firſt which the *Indians* called *Guanabani*, he called St. *Salvador*, or St. *Saviour*, in Honour of GOD, who had ſhewed it and delivered him from many Dangers: The ſecond for his particular Devotion to the Conception of the Virgin *Mary*; and becauſe ſhe is the great Patroneſs of Chriſtians, he called it St. *Mary of the Conception*: The third he called *Fernandina*, in Honour of the Catholick Queen; and the next after it which was *Cuba*, he ſtiled *Joanna*, in Reſpect to Prince *John*, Heir of *Caſtile*, having in theſe Names regard to both Spirituals and Temporals. True it is, that as to Goodneſs, Extent, and Beauty, he ſaid this *Fernandina* far exceeded the others; for beſides that it abounded in delicious Waters, pleaſant Meadows and Trees, among which were many of *Aloes*, there were in it ſome Hills, which the others wanted, being very plain. The Admiral, enamoured with its Beauty, and to perform the Ceremony of taking Poſſeſſion, landed upon ſome Meadows as pleaſant and delightful as they are in *Spain* in *April*; and there was heard

the

the ſinging of Nightingales and other Birds ſo ſweet, that he could ſcarce depart. Nor were they only about the Trees, but flew through the Air in ſuch Swarms, that they darkened the Sun and moſt of them differed much from our Birds. There being abundance of Waters and Lakes, near to one of them they ſaw a Sort of Alligator ſeven Feet long, and about a Foot wide in the Belly; which being diſturbed by our Men, threw itſelf into the Lake, but it not being deep they killed it with their Spears, not without Dread and Admiration, becauſe of its fierce and frightful Look. Time afterwards made them look upon this as a Dainty, it being the beſt Food the *Indians* had; for as much as when that horrid Skin, and the Scales that cover it, are taken off, the Fleſh is very white and very delicious, the *Indians* call them *Yvanas*. Being very deſirous, to know more of that Country, and it being then late, they left that Creature till the next Day, when they killed another as they had done the firſt; and travelling up the Land, found a Town, the People whereof fled, carrying away as much of their Goods as they could. The Admiral would not ſuffer any Thing of what they had left to be taken away, leſt they ſhould look upon the Chriſtians as Thieves: Therefore their Fear being ſoon over, they came of their own Accord to the Ships to barter, as the others had done.

The Admiral having learned the Secrets of the Iſland *Iſabella*, its Product, and the Manners of the People, would loſe no more Time among thoſe Iſlands, becauſe they were many, and like one another, as the *Indians* ſaid. He therefore ſet Sail with a fair Wind for a very large Country, much applauded by them all, called *Cuba*, which lay towards the South, and on *Sunday* the 28th of *October* he came up with the Coaſt of it, and on the North Side. This Iſland at firſt Sight appeared to be better and richer than thoſe before named, as well by Reaſon of the Beauty of its Hills and Mountains, as for the Variety of Trees, the large Plains, and the Greatneſs and Extent of its Coaſts and Rivers. Therefore to get ſome Knowledge of its People, he came to an Anchor in a large River, where the Trees were very thick and tall, adorned with Fruit and Bloſſoms, differing from

from ours, and were there were abundance of Birds, the Place moſt delicious, for the Graſs was high, and nothing like ours; and though there were ſeveral Sorts of Herbs known to us, yet the great Variety made our Men not know them. Going to two Houſes that were not far off, they found the People were fled for Fear, and had left their Nets, and all other Fiſhing Tackle, and a Dog that did not bark. As the Admiral had ordered, nothing was touch'd, for it was enough for him at preſent to ſee what their Food and Neceſſaries were. Returning to their Ships they held on their Courſe Weſtward, and came to another River, which the Admiral called *de Mares*, or of Seas. This much exceeded the other, becauſe a Ship could turn it up, and the Banks were much inhabited; but the People ſeeing the Ships, fled towards the Mountains, which appear'd, and were high, round, and cover'd with Trees and pleaſant Plants, whither the *Indians* conveyed all they could carry away. The Admiral being diſappointed, by the People's Fear, of learning any thing of the Nature of the Iſland, and conſidering if he landed with many Men, it would increaſe their Terror, he reſolved to ſend two Chriſtians, with one of the *Indians* he brought from St. *Salvador*, and with one of that Country, who ventured to come aboard in his Canoo. Theſe he order'd to travel up into the Country, making much of the Natives they met by the Way, and that no Time might be loſt, while they were going, he ordered the Ship to be laid aſhore to careen her, where they obſerved that all the Fire they made was Maſtick, whereof there was plenty all the Country over. This Tree is in all Reſpects like our Maſtick Tree, but much bigger.

The Ship being repaired and ready to ſail, the Chriſtians returned with the two *Indians* on the fifth of *November*, ſaying, they had travelled twelve Leagues up the Land, and came to a Town of fifty pretty large Houſes, all of Timber, covered with Straw, and made after the Manner of Pavillions, like the others; that they contained about one thouſand People, becauſe all that were of one Family liv'd in a Houſe; that the principal Men of the Place came out to meet them, and led them by the Arms to their Town, giving

them one of thoſe great Houſes to lodge in, where they made them ſit down upon Seats made of one Piece, in ſtrange Shapes, and almoſt like ſome Creature that had ſhort Legs, and the Tail lifted up to lean againſt, which is as broad as the Seat, for the Conveniency of leaning, with a Head before, and the Eyes and Ears of Gold. Theſe Seats they call *Duchi:* Where the Chriſtians being ſeated, all the *Indians* ſat about them on the Ground, and then came one by one to kiſs their Hands and Feet, believing they came from Heaven; and they gave them ſome boiled Roots to eat, not unlike Cheſnuts in Taſte, earneſtly entreating them to ſtay there among them, or at leaſt to reſt themſelves five or ſix Days, becauſe the two *Indians* they took with them, gave thoſe People an excellent Character of the Chriſtians. Soon after many Women coming in to ſee them, the Men went out; and theſe, with no leſs Reſpect, kiſſed their Hands and Feet, offering them what they brought. When the Time came to return to their Ships, many *Indians* would go along with them, but they would admit only the King, his Son, and one Servant, whom the Admiral did much Honour to: And theſe Chriſtians told him, that in their Way out, and Return, they had found ſeveral Towns, where they were entertained with the ſame Courteſy, but that there were not in them above five Houſes together; beſides, that by the Way they met many People, who always carried a lighted Firebrand, to light Fire, and perfume themſelves with certain Herbs they carried along with them, and to roaſt ſome of thoſe Roots they gave them, for as much as that was their principal Food. They alſo ſaw very many Sorts of Trees and Plants, which were not to be ſeen about the Sea Coaſt, and a great Variety of Birds, far differing from our's, but that among them there were Partridges and Nightingales. As for four-footed Creatures, they had ſeen none but Dogs that did not bark; that there was a great deal of tilled Land, ſome ſow'd with thoſe Roots, a Sort of Beans, and a Sort of Grain they call *Maiz*, which was well taſted baked, or dried and made into Flour. They ſaw vaſt Quantities of Cotton, well ſpun, in Bottoms, inſomuch that in one Houſe only they

ſaw

ſaw above twelve thouſand five hundred Pounds of it. The Plants it comes from are not ſet, but grow naturally about the Fields, like Roſes, and open of themſelves, when they are ripe, but not all at the ſame Time; for upon one and the ſame Plant they had ſeen a little young Bud, another open, and a third coming ripe. Of theſe Plants the *Indians* afterwards carried great Quantities aboard the Ships, and gave a Baſket full for a Thong of Leather; yet none of them make Uſe of it to cloath themſelves, but only to make Nets for their Beds, which they call *Hamacas*, and in weaving Aprons for Women to cover their Nakedneſs. Being aſked whether they had Gold, Pearls, or Spice, they made Signs that there was great Plenty towards the Eaſt, in a Country they called *Bohio*, which is now called *Hiſpaniola*; but it is not yet certainly known what Place they meant.

The Admiral having this Account, and reſolving to ſtay no longer in that River, ordered ſome Natives of that Iſland to be taken, deſigning to carry ſome from all Parts into *Spain*, to give an Account of this Country; and accordingly twelve were ſeized, Men, Women, and Children, and this ſo peaceably and without any Diſturbance, that when they were ready to ſail with them, the Huſband of one of the Women, and Father of two Children that had been carried aboard, came to the Ships in a Canoe, deſiring he might be taken along with them, and not parted from his Wife and Children, which extreamly pleaſed the Admiral, who ordered he ſhould be received, and they all well uſed and made much of. The ſame Day, being the 13th of *November*, he came about to the Eaſtward, deſigning for the Iſland they called *Bohio*. The Wind blowing hard at North, he was forced to come to an Anchor again in the ſame Iſland of *Cuba*, among ſome high Iſlands, lying near a large Port, which he called *del Principe*, or the Princes Port, and the Sea, our Lady's. Theſe Iſlands lay ſo thick and and cloſe, that there was not above a Quarter of a League Diſtance between them at furtheſt, and but a Muſket Shot for the moſt Part. The Channels were ſo deep, and ſo well adorned with Trees and Greens, that it was very delightful ſailing among them; and among the Multitude of other Trees, there were

abundance of Maſtick, Aloes and Palm, the Trunk green and ſmooth, and other Plants of ſundry Sorts. And tho' theſe Iſlands were not inhabited, yet there appeared the Tokens of many Fires made by Fiſhermen, for as it afterwards appeared, the People of *Cuba* went together in great Numbers in their Canoes over to theſe Iſlands, and abundance more that lies hereabouts uninhabited, and live upon the Fiſh they catch, upon Birds, Crabs, and other Things they find upon the Earth; for the *Indians* generally eat abundance of filthy Things, ſuch as great Spiders, Worms that breed in rotten Wood, and other corrupt Places, and abundance of Fiſh almoſt raw; for as ſoon as taken before they roaſt it, they dig out the Eyes to eat, and many other ſuch Things they feed on, which beſides that they are naufeous, would kill any of us, ſhould we eat them. They follow this Fiſhing and Birding according to the Seaſon, ſometimes in one Iſland, ſometimes in another, as one that changes his Diet, being weary of the laſt. But to return to the Iſlands of our Lady's Sea; in one of them the Chriſtians, with their Swords, killed a Beaſt like a Badger, and in the Sea found much Mother of Pearl; and caſting their Nets, among many other Sorts of Fiſh they caught, one was like a Swine, all covered with a very hard Skin, no Part whereof was ſoft but the Tail. They alſo obſerved that in this Sea, and the Iſlands, the Tide ſwell'd and fell much lower than in other Places, where they had been till then, and their Tides were quite contrary to our's; for it was low Water when the Moon was S. W. and by S.

On *Monday* the 19th of *November*, the Admiral departed from the Princes Port in *Cuba*, and the Sea of our Lady, ſteering Eaſtward for the Iſland of *Bubio*, or *Hiſpaniola*, but the Wind being contrary, he was forced to ply two or three Days between the Iſland of *Iſabella*, which the *Indians* call *Somoto*, and the ſaid Princes Port, which lie almoſt North and South, about 25 Leagues diſtant, in which Sea he ſtill found long Traces of thoſe Weeds he had ſeen in the Ocean, and he perceived they ſwam along the Current, and never lay athwart it. During this Time *Martin Alonſo Pinzon* being informed by certain *Indians* he had concealed aboard his

his Caraval, that in the Iſland *Bohio*, which we ſaid was *Hiſpaniola*, there was great Plenty of Gold; Covetouſneſs blinding him, on *Wedneſday* the 21ſt of *November*, he went away from the Admiral without any ſtreſs of Weather, or any other Occaſion, for he could have come up to him before the Wind, but would not, and ſo making as much Way as poſſibly he could, his Veſſel being an excellent Sailer, he made forwards all *Thurſday*, whereas they had ſailed in Sight of one another all the Day before, and Night coming on he quite vaniſhed. Thus the Admiral was left only with two Ships, and the Weather not being fit for his Veſſels to ſail over to *Hiſpaniola*, he was forced to return to *Cuba*, to another Port not far from the Prince's, which he called St. *Catherines*, there to take in Wood and Water. In this Port he accidentally ſaw ſome Signs of Gold on ſome Stones in the River where they were watering, and up the Country there were Mountains full of ſuch tall Pine Trees, as would make Maſts for the biggeſt Ships. Nor was there any want of Wood for Planks, to build as many Ships as they would, and among them Oaks and others like thoſe in *Caſtile*. But perceiving that all the *Indians* directed him to *Hiſpaniola*, he run along the Coaſt 10 or 12 Leagues farther towards the South-Eaſt, meeting all the Way excellent Harbours, and many large Rivers. The Admiral ſays ſo much of the Delightfulneſs and Beauty of that Country, that I have thought fit here to ſet down his own Words, ſpeaking of the Mouth of a River, which makes an Harbour by him called *Puerto Sancto*, or Holy Harbour. Thus he ſays, "When I went with the Boats before me to the Mouth of the Harbour towards the South, I found a River, up whoſe Mouth a Gally could eaſily row, and the Way up it was ſuch, that it was not to be diſcovered but cloſe by; the Beauty of it invited me to go up a Boat's length, where we found from 5 to 8 Fathom Water; and proceeding I went a conſiderable Way up the River in the Boats; becauſe, as well the Beauty and Delightfulneſs of the River, and the Clearneſs of the Water, through which I could ſee the Sand at the Bottom; as the abundance of Palm Trees of ſeveral Sorts, the fineſt and higheſt I had yet met with;

the

the other infinite Number of large green Trees, the Birds and the Verdure of the Plain, tempted me to fix there for ever. This Country, Moſt Serene Princes, is ſo wonderfully fine, and as far exceeds all other Beauty and Delightfulneſs, as the Day in Brightneſs exceeds the Night. Therefore I often told my Companions, that though I ſhould ever ſo much endeavour to give your Highneſſes a perfect Account of it, my Tongue and Pen would always fall ſhort of the Truth. And to ſay the Truth I was aſtoniſhed to ſee ſo much Beauty and know not how to expreſs it. The Admiral going on with his Boats, ſaw a Canoo among the Trees in the Port, drawn upon Land under a Bower, which Canoo was made of the Body of one Tree, and as big as a twelve Oar Barge, and in ſome Houſes hard by, they found a Ball of Wax, and a Man's Scull in two Baſkets hanging at a Poſt. The ſame they afterwards found in another Houſe which made our Men judge, they were the Sculls of the Founders of thoſe Houſes. No People appeared to receive any Information of, for as ſoon as ever they ſaw the Chriſtians, they fled from their Houſes to other Parts. Afterwards they found another Canoo about 70 Foot long, that would carry 50 Perſons, made like the other we ſpoke of before.

The Admiral having ſailed 106 Leagues Eaſtward along the Coaſt of *Cuba*, came to the Eaſt Point of it, which he called *Alpha*, and on *Wedneſday* the 5th of *December*, ſtruck off to ſail over to *Hiſpaniola*, diſtant 16 Leagues from *Cuba*, Eaſtward, and by Reaſon of ſome Currents, could not reach it till the next Day, when he put into Port St. *Nicholas*, ſo call'd by him in Memory of that Saint, whoſe Feſtival was that Day. This Port is large, deep, ſafe, and encompaſs'd with many tall Trees, but the Country is more Rocky, and the Trees are leſs, that is, like thoſe of *Caſtile*; among which there were ſmall Oaks, Mirtle and other Shrubs, and a pleaſant River run along a Plain towards the Port, all about which there were large Canoos like 15 Oar Barges. The Admiral not being able to meet with any of thoſe People, run along the Coaſt Northward till he came to a Port which he called *Conception*, which lies almoſt due South

South of a ſmall Iſland about the bigneſs of *Gran Canaria*, which was afterwards called *Tortuga*. Perceiving that this Iſland *Bohio* was very large, and that the Land and Trees were like thoſe of *Spain*; and that at one Draught of a Net they had taken ſeveral Fiſhes like thoſe of *Spain*, as Soles, Salmon, Pilchards, Crabs, and ſome others, therefore on *Sunday* the 9th of *December*, they gave it the Name of *Eſpannola*, or as call'd in *Engliſh*, *Hiſpaniola*. All of them being very deſirous to enquire into the Nature of this Iſland; whilſt the Men were Fiſhing on the Shore, three Chriſtians travelled along the Mountains, and lighted on a Company of *Indians*, as naked as thoſe they had ſeen before, who ſeeing the Chriſtians draw near them, in a great Fright, ran into the thickeſt of the Wood, as having no Cloaths to hinder them. The Chriſtians to get ſome Information ran after them, but could only overtake a young Woman, who had a Plate of Gold hanging at her Noſe. She was carried to the Ships, where the Admiral gave her ſeveral Baubles, as Bells and Glaſs, and then ſent her aſhore without the leaſt Diſguſt offered her, ordering three *Indians* of thoſe he brought from the other Iſlands to go with her, and three Chriſtians, to the Town where ſhe dwelt. The next Day he ſent eleven Men aſhore well arm'd, who having travelled four Leagues, found a Sort of Town or Village of above 1000 Houſes ſcattered about a Valley, the Inhabitants whereof ſeeing the Chriſtians, all fled to the Woods. But the *Indian* Guide whom our Men brought from St. *Salvador*, went after them, and ſaid ſuch Things to them of the Chriſtians, affirming they were People come from Heaven, that he perſuaded them to turn back quietly and without any Fear. Afterwards full of Aſtoniſhment, they would lay their Hands on our Men's Heads by Way of Honour, brought them to eat, and gave them all they deſired, without aſking any Return, praying them to ſtay that night in their Village. The Chriſtians would not accept of the Invitation, but returned to their Ships, carrying the News that the Country was very pleaſant, abounding in their Proviſions; that the People were whiter and handſomer than any they had yet ſeen in the other Iſlands, and that they were tractable and courteous,

courteous, and told them the Country were the Gold was found, lay farther Eaſtward.

The Admiral hearing this Account ſet ſail immediately, though the Wind was contrary; and on *Sunday* following, being the 15th of *December*, as he was plying between *Hiſpaniola* and *Tortuga*, he found one *Indian* alone in a little Canoe, which they all wondered was not ſwallowed by the Sea, the Wind and Waves were ſo high, He took him into the Ship, carried him to *Hiſpaniola*, and ſet him aſhore with ſeveral Gifts. He told the *Indians* how kindly he had been uſed, and ſpoke ſo well of the Chriſtians, that abundance of them came preſently aboard; but they brought nothing of Value, except ſome ſmall Grains of Gold hanging at their Ears and Noſtrils: And being aſk'd whence they had that Gold, they made Signs there was a great deal, higher up. The next Day there came a great Canoe from the Iſland *Tortuga*, which was near the Place where the Admiral lay at an Anchor, with forty Men in it, at ſuch Time as the *Cacique*, or Lord of that Part of *Hiſpaniola*, was upon the Shore, bartering a Plate of Gold he had brought. When he and his Men ſaw the Canoe, they all ſet themſelves down upon the Ground, as a Sign they would not fight, Immediately almoſt all thoſe in the Canoe landed, againſt whom the *Cacique* of *Hiſpaniola* got up alone, and with threatening Words made them return to their Canoe. Then he threw Water after them, and taking up Stones off the Sand, caſt them into the Sea towards the Canoe. But when they were all in a ſubmiſſive Manner returned to their Canoe, he took up a Stone and delivered it to one of the Admiral's Officers, to throw it at thoſe in the Canoe, to expreſs that he took the Admiral's Part againſt the *Indians*; but the Officer did not throw, ſeeing they preſently went off in their Canoe. After this, diſcourſing about the Affairs of that Iſland, which the Admiral had called *Tortuga*, he affirmed there was more Gold in it than in *Hiſpaniola*, and that in *Bohio* there was more than in any other, which was about fifteen Days Journey from the Place where they were.

On *Tueſday*, the eighteenth of *December*, the King that came the Day before, where the Canoe of *Tortuga* was, and who

who lived five Leagues from the Place where the Ships lay, came in the Morning to the Town near the Sea, ſome of the *Spaniards* at the ſame Time being there by the Admiral's Order, to ſee whether they brought any more Gold. Theſe ſeeing the King come, went to acquaint the Admiral, ſaying he brought above two hundred Men along with him, and that he came not a Foot, but was carried on a Sort of Palanquine by four Men, with great Reſpect, though he was very young. The King being at a ſmall Diſtance from the Ships, having reſted a little, drew near with all his Men: Concerning which, the Admiral himſelf writes thus:

"There is no doubt but your Highneſſes had been very "much pleaſed to have ſeen his Gravity, and the Reſpect "his People paid him, though all naked. When he came "aboard, and underſtood I was under Deck, being then at "Dinner, he ſurprized me, ſitting down by me, without "giving me Time to go out to receive him, or riſe from "Table. When he came down, he made Signs to all his "Followers to ſtay above, which they did with great Re"ſpect, ſitting down upon the Deck, except two antient "Men that ſeemed to be his Counſellors, that ſat down at "his Feet. They ſaid this Man was a *Cacique*. I ordered "ſuch Meat as I was eating, to be brought him: They juſt "taſted of every Thing, and ſent the reſt to their Men, "who all eat of it. The ſame they did as to drinking, for "they only kiſſed the Cup, and gave it about. They were "all wonderful grave, and ſpoke but few Words, and thoſe "they uttered, by what I could gather, were very delibe"rate and ſtaid. The two old Men obſerved the King's "Mouth, and ſpoke for and to him. After eating, one of "his Gentlemen with great Reſpect brought him a Girdle, "not unlike thoſe uſed in *Caſtile*, though differently "wrought; which he took in his Hand, and gave me, "with two Pieces of wrought Gold very thin. Of which "Gold I believe there is little here, and I gueſſed that Place "was near to where they took it, which produced very "much. I believing he would like a Carpet or Counter"pain that lay on my Bed, gave it him, together with "ſome fine Amber Beads I had about my Neck, with a

" Pair of red Shoes, and a Bottle of Orange Flower Wa-
" ter, with which he was wonderfully pleased, and both he
" and his Counsellors expressed much Concern because
" they did not understand me, nor I them, though I made
" out, that if I wanted any Thing, all the Island was at my
" Command. I presently brought out a Letter Case, in
" which I carried a Gold Medal, weighing four Ducats, on
" which your Highnesses Effigies are cut, and shewed it
" him, saying over again, that your Highnesses were mighty
" Princes, and possessed the best Part of the World, and
" shewed him the Royal Standard, and the other of the
" Cross, which he made great Account of. Therefore,
" turning to his Counsellors, he said your Highnesses were
" certainly mighty Princes, since you had sent me so far as
" from Heaven thither, without any Fear. Much more
" passed between us, which I did not understand, but per-
" ceived they admired at every Thing they saw; but it
" being then late, and he desiring to be gone, I sent him
" ashore very honourably in my Boat, and caused several
" Guns to be fired; and he being ashore, got into his Pa-
" lanquine, attended by above two hundred Men, and a
" Son of his was carried on a Man of Note's Shoulders.
" He ordered all the Spaniards that were ashore to have
" Meat given them, and to be very courteously used. Af-
" terwards a Sailor that met him on the Way told me, that
" every one of the Things I had given him, were carried
" before him by a Man of great Worth, and that his Son
" went not along with him on the Road, but at some Di-
" stance behind him, with as many more Attendants as he
" had, and a Brother of his on Foot, with near as many
" more, two great Men leading him under the Arms, to
" whom I had given some small Matters when he came
" aboard after his Brother."

The Admiral continuing the Relation as above, says
" That on *Monday* the twenty-fourth of *December*, the
" Weather was very calm, without hardly any Wind, but
" so much as carried him from St. *Thomas*'s Sea to *Punta*,
" *Santta*, or the *Holy Cape*, off which he lay by about a
" League, and about Eleven of the Clock at Night he

" went

" went to take his Reſt, for he had not ſlept in two Days " and a Night; and the Weather being calm, the Seaman " that was at the Helm, left it to a Land Man, which (ſays " the Admiral) I had forbid during the whole Voyage, bid- " ding them whether the Wind blew or not, never to leave " the Helm to a Land Man: And, to ſay the Truth, I " thought myſelf ſafe from Flats and Rocks, for that *Sun-* " *day* I ſent my Boats to the King, they went at leaſt three " Leagues and a half beyond the ſaid *Punta Santa*, and " the Seamen had viewed all the Coaſt, and the Shoals that " lie three Leagues E. S. E. of that Cape, and obſerved " which Way to ſail, which I had not done during the " Voyage; and it pleaſing our Lord, that at Midnight, ſee- " ing me gone to Bed, and we being in a dead Calm, and " the Sea as ſtill as the Water in a Diſh, all the Men went " to reſt, leaving the Helm to a Land Man. Thus it came " to paſs, that the Current eaſily carried away the Ship upon " one of thoſe Shoals; which, though it was Night, made " ſuch a roaring Noiſe, that they may be heard and diſ- " covered a League off. Then the Fellow who felt the " Rudder ſtrike, and heard the Noiſe, began to cry out, and " I hearing it, got up immediately, for none had yet per- " ceived that we were a-ground. Preſently the Maſter, " whoſe Watch it was, came out, and I ordered him and " other Sailors, to take the Boat, and carry out an Anchor " a-ſtern; whereupon he and others leap'd into the Boat, " and I believing they would have done as I ordered, they " row'd away, flying with the Boat to the other Caraval, " which was half a League off. I then perceiving they " ran away with the Boat, that the Water ebb'd, and the " Ship was in Danger, cauſed the Maſts to be cut down, " and lighted her as much as I could, to ſee to get her off " but the Water ſtill ebbing, the Caraval could not budge, " but turning athwart the Streams, the Seams opened, " and all below Deck was full of Water. Mean while the " Boat returned from the Caraval to relieve me, for the Men " aboard perceiving the Boat fled, would not receive it, " which obliged it to return to the Ship. No Hopes of " ſaving the Ship appearing, I went away to the Caraval to

" ſave the Men; and becauſe the Wind blew from the " Land, and great Part of the Night was ſpent, and yet " we knew not which Way to get from among thoſe Flats, " I lay by with the Caraval till Day appeared, and then I " drew towards Land within the Shoals, having firſt ſent " *James de Arana*, the Provoſt, and *Peter Gutierres*, your " Highneſſes Secretary, to acquaint the King with what " had happened, telling him, that as I was going to viſit " him in his own Port, as he had deſired the laſt *Saturday*, " I had loſt my Ship oppoſite to his Town, a League and a " half from it, upon a Flat. The King underſtanding it, " with Tears in his Eyes expreſſed much Grief for our " Loſs, and immediately ſent aboard all the People in the " Place, with many large Canoes: So they and we began " to unload, and in a ſhort Time carried off all that was " upon Deck. The Aſſiſtance this King gave me was " great; and afterwards he himſelf, with his Brothers and " Kindred, took all poſſible Care both aboard and aſhore " that all Things might be done orderly; and from Time " to Time he ſent ſome of his Kindred weeping, to beg of " me not to be dejected, for he would give me all he had. " I do aſſure your Highneſſes, better Order could not have " been taken in any Part of of *Caſtile*, to ſecure our Things, " for we loſt not the Value of a Pin, for he cauſed all our " Cloaths to be laid together near his Palace, where he kept " them till the Houſes were voided, which he had appointed " for us. He placed armed Men to keep them, who ſtood " there all Day and all Night, and all the People lamented, " as if the Loſs had concerned them much: ſo loving, " tractable, and free from Covetouſneſs they are, that I " ſwear to your Highneſſes there are no better People, nor " a better Country in the World. They love their Neigh- " bour as themſelves, and their Converſation is the ſweeteſt " in the Univerſe, being pleaſant and always ſmiling. " True it is, both Men and Women go as naked as they " were born; yet your Highneſſes may believe me, they " have very commendable Cuſtoms, and the King is ſerv'd " with great State, and he is ſo ſtaid, that it is a great Sa- " tisfaction, to ſee him, as it is to think what good Me-

" mories

" mories theſe People have, and how deſirous they are to " know every Thing, which moves them to aſk many " Queſtions, and to enquire into the Cauſe and Effects of " every Thing."

On *Wedneſday* the 26th of *December*, the chief King of that Country came aboard the Admiral's Caraval, and expreſſing much Grief and Sorrow, comforted him and offered all he would have, and ſaying he had already given the Chriſtians three Houſes to lay up all they got out of the Ship, and that he had given them many more, had they ſtood in Need of them. In the mean while a Canoe came with ſome *Indians* from another Iſland, bringing ſome Plates of Gold to exchange for Bells, which they valued above any Thing. Beſides, the Seamen came from the Shore, ſaying abundance of *Indians* reſorted from other Places to the Town who brought ſeveral Things in Gold, and gave them for Points, and other Things of ſmall Value, offering to bring much more, if the Chriſtians would. Which the great *Cacique* perceiving, was pleaſing to the Admiral, he told him he would cauſe a great Quantity to be brought from *Cibao*, a Place that yielded much Gold. Being aſhore he invited the Admiral to eat *Axis* and *Cazabi*, which is their principal Diet, and gave him ſome Vizor Maſks, with the Eyes, Noſe and Ears of Gold, and other pretty Things, which they hung about their Necks. Then complaining of the *Caribbes*, who carried away his Men to make Slaves and eat them, he was much comforted when the Admiral ſhew'd him our Weapons, ſaying, he would defend him with them. He was much aſtoniſhed at our Cannon, which ſo terrified them, that they fell down as if they were dead, when they heard the Report. The Admiral therefore finding ſo much Kindneſs among thoſe People, and ſuch Signs of Gold, almoſt forgot the Grief conceived for the Loſs of his Ship, thinking God had permitted it, that he might fix a Colony there, and leave Chriſtians to trade, and get further Knowledge of the People and Country, learning the Language, and converſing with the Natives, that when he returned from *Spain* with Succours, he might have ſome Body to direct him in his Affairs, for peopling

peopling and ſubduing that Country. To this he was the more inclined, becauſe many voluntarily offered themſelves to ſtay and inhabit there. For this Reaſon he reſolved to build a Tower with the Timber of the Ship that was wreck'd, whereof he loſt no Part, but made Uſe of it all. To forward his Deſign, the next Day being *Thurſday* the 27th of *December*, News was brought that the Caraval *Pinta* was in a River towards the Eaſt Point of the Iſland. To be aſſured of it, the *Cacique*, whoſe Name was *Guacanagri* ſent a Canoe with ſome *Indians*, who carried a Chriſtian thither: He having gone twenty Leagues along the Coaſt, returned without any News of it, which was the Reaſon that no Credit was given to another *Indian*, who ſaid he had ſeen her ſome Days before. Nevertheleſs, the Admiral did not alter his Reſolution of leaving ſome Chriſtians in that Place, who were all ſtill more ſenſible of the Goodneſs and Wealth of the Country, the *Indians* bringing Maſks and other Things of Gold to give them, and telling them of ſeveral Provinces in the Iſland where it was found. The Admiral being now ready to depart, and diſcourſing with the King concerning the *Carribbes*, or *Canibals*, of whom they complained, and were in great Dread, therefore to pleaſe him with leaving ſome Chriſtians there, and at the ſame Time make him afraid of our Arms, he cauſed a Gun to be fired againſt the Side of the Ship, which ſhot quite through it, and the Bullet fell into the Water, which not a little terrify'd the *Cacique*: Beſides, he ſhew'd him all our other Weapons, and how they offended with them, and defended themſelves telling him, that ſince ſuch Weapons were left to defend him, he need not to fear the *Caribbes*, for the Chriſtians would deſtroy them all, and he would leave them for his Guard, and return himſelf to *Caſtile* for Jewels and other Things to give him. Then he particularly recommended to him *James de Arana*, Son to *Rodrick de Arana* of *Cordova*, of whom Mention has been made before. To him, and *Peter Gutierres*, and *Roderick de Eſkovedo*, he left the Government of the Fort, and Command of thirty-ſix Men, with abundance of Commodities, Proviſion, Arms and Cannon, and the Boat that belonged to the Ship, with Carpenters,

penters, Caulkers, and other Neceſſaries for ſettling there, alſo a Surgeon, Gunner, and ſuch like Perſons. This done, he prepared with all poſſible Speed to return directly to *Caſtile*, without making any more Diſcoveries, fearing, ſince he had but one Ship left, leſt ſome other Misfortune might befall him, which might hinder their Catholick Majeſties coming to the Knowledge of thoſe Kingdoms he had newly acquired for them.

On *Friday* the 4th of *January*, at Sun-riſing, the Admiral ſet ſail, with the Boats a-head, ſtanding North-Weſt, to get out of ſhoal Water that was about the Port where he left the Chriſtians, by him called the Port of the *Nativity*, becauſe on *Chriſtmas* Day he had landed, eſcaping the Danger of the Sea, and began to build that Colony.

Having ſailed Eaſt of *Monte Chriſto*, with contrary Winds, on *Sunday* the 6th of *January*, in the Morning, a Sailor from the round Top diſcovered the Caraval *Pinta* that was ſailing Weſtward, right before the Wind. As ſoon as it came up with the Admiral, *Martin Alonzo Pinzon*, the Captain, coming aboard the Admiral's Caraval, began to ſhew ſome Reaſons, and give Excuſes for his leaving of him, ſaying it had happened againſt his Will. The Admiral, though he very well knew the contrary, and was ſatisfied of the Man's evil Inclinations, remembering his bold Manner of proceeding before in the Voyage, yet connived at him, and bore with all, for Fear of ruining his Undertaking; which might eaſily have been done, becauſe moſt of his Crew were *Martin Alonzo*'s Countrymen, and ſeveral of them his Relations. And the Truth is, that when he forſook the Admiral, which was at *Cuba*, he went away with a Deſign to ſail to the Iſland *Bohio*, becauſe the *Indians* aboard his Caraval told him there was abundance of Gold there. When he was there, and found nothing of what had been told him, he was returning towards *Hiſpaniola*, where other *Indians* had told him there was much Gold: And thus he had ſpent twenty Days in ſailing not above fifteen Leagues Eaſt of the *Nativity*, to a River which the Admiral called *Grace*; and there *Martin Alonzo* had lain ſixteen Days, and had got Gold enough, as the Admiral had done

done at the *Nativity*, giving Things of ſmall Value for it. Of this Gold he diſtributed one half among his Crew, to gain and pleaſe them, that he as Captain might keep the reſt, and afterwards he would perſuade the Admiral that he knew nothing of all this. He now following on his Way to come to an Anchor at *Monte Chriſto*, the Weather not permitting him to proceed further, he went in his Boat up a River, South-Weſt of the Mount, where in the Sand he diſcovered Signs of Gold Duſt, and therefore called it the *River of Gold*. This River lies ſeventeen Leagues Eaſt of the *Nativity*.

On *Sunday*, the 13th of *January*, being near the Cape called *Enamorado*, or the *Lover*'s *Cape*, the Admiral ſent the Boat aſhore, where our Men found ſome *Indians* with fierce Countenances on the Shore, with Bows and Arrows, who ſeemed to be ready to engage, but at the ſame Time were in a Conſternation; however, having ſome Conference with them, they bought two of their Bows and ſome Arrows, and with much Difficulty prevailed to have one of them go aboard the Admiral. Their Speech was ſuitable to their Fierceneſs, which appeared greater than any People they had yet met with, for their Faces were all daubed over with Charcoal, it being the Cuſtom of all thoſe People to paint themſelves, ſome black, ſome red, and ſome white, ſome one Way and ſome another; their Hair was very long, and hung in a Bag made of Parrots Feathers. One of them ſtanding before the Admiral, as naked as he was born, (as all the others there, till then diſcovered, were,) he ſaid in a lofty Tone, they all went ſo in thoſe Parts. The Admiral thinking this was one of the *Caribees*, and that the Bay parted them from *Hiſpaniola*, he aſked of him where the *Caribees* dwelt; who pointed with his Finger, in another Iſland Eaſtward, and that there were Pieces of *Guanin*, as big as half the Stern of the Caraval, and that the Iſland *Mantinino* was all inhabited by Women, with whom the *Caribees* went and lay at a certain Time of the Year, and if afterwards they brought forth Sons, they gave them to the Fathers to carry away. Having anſwered to all the Queſtions put to them, partly by Signs, and partly by that little the *Indians* of

of St. *Salvador* could underſtand of their Language, the Admiral gave them ſomething to eat, and ſome Baubles, as Glaſs Beads, and green and red Cloth; which done, he ſent them aſhore, that they ſhould cauſe Gold to be brought if the others had any. The Boat being aſhore, they found on the Shore among the Trees fifty-five of them, all naked, with long Hair, as the Women in *Spain* wear it, and behind on the Crown of the Head, they had Plumes of Parrot's or other Bird's Feathers, and all of them armed with Bows and Arrows. When our Men landed, the *Indian* that had been aboard, made the others lay down their Bows and Arrows, and a great Cudgel they carry inſtead of a Sword; for, as has been ſaid, they have no Iron at all. When they came to the Boat, the Chriſtians ſtept aſhore, and having begun to trade for Bows and Arrows by Order of the Admiral, the *Indians* who had already ſold two, not only refuſed to ſell any more, but with Scorn made as if they would ſeize the Chriſtians, and ran to their Bows and Arrows where they had left them, taking up with them Ropes to bind our Men; They being upon their Guard, and ſeeing them come in that Fury, though they were but ſeven, fell courageouſly upon them, and cut one with a Sword on the Buttock, and ſhot another with an Arrow in the Breaſt. The *Indians*, aſtoniſhed at the Reſolution of our Men, and the Wounds our Weapons made, fled, moſt of them leaving their Bows and Arrows; and many of them had been killed, had not the Pilot of the Caraval, who commanded the Boat, protected them. The Admiral was not at all diſpleaſed at this Skirmiſh, imagining theſe were the *Caribbes* all the other *Indians* ſo much dreaded, or that at leaſt they bordered on them, they being a bold and reſolute People, as appeared by their Aſpects, Arms and Actions, and he hoped the Iſlanders hearing how ſeven Chriſtians had behaved themſelves againſt fifty-five fierce *Indians* of that Country, they would the more reſpect and honour our Men that were left behind at the *Nativity*, and would not dare to offend them. Afterwards, about Evening, they made a Smoak at Land, to ſhow their Courage; wherefore the Boat went again to ſee what they would have, but they could never be brought to

venture themſelves, and ſo the Boat returned. The Bows were of Yew, almoſt as big as thoſe in *France* and *England*; the Arrows of ſmall Twigs growing out of the Ends of the Canes, which are maſſive and very ſtraight, about the Length of a Man's Arm and a half; the Head is made of a ſmall Stick hardened at the Fire, about a Quarter of a Yard and half long, at the End whereof they fix a Fiſh's Tooth, or Bone, and poiſon it: For this Reaſon the Admiral gave that Gulph the Name of *Golpho de Flechas*, that is, *Gulph of Arrows*; whereas the *Indians* called it *Samana*. There appeared a great deal of fine Cotton and *Axi*, which is the Pepper they uſe, and is very hot, ſome of it long, and ſome round.

On the 14th of *February*, there aroſe ſo terrible a Storm, that the Caraval *Pinta* was ſeparated from the Admiral, and the Admiral's Ship was in the greateſt Danger of being loſt. How great his Diſtreſs was, and yet what Preſence of Mind he had in the Midſt of it, to make the King of *Spain* acquainted with the Diſcoveries he had made, whatever might befall himſelf, may be gathered from what he wrote down in his Journal at the Time; which was as follows:

" I had been leſs concerned for the Tempeſt, had I alone " been in Danger, for I know I owe my Life to the Su- " preme Creator, and becauſe I have been at other Times " ſo near Death, that only the leaſt Part was wanting to " compleat it: But what infinitely grieved and troubled " me, was the Conſideration, that as it had pleaſed our Lord " to give me Faith and Aſſurance to go upon this Under- " taking, wherein I had now been ſucceſsful, ſo now (that " thoſe who oppoſed it were to be convinced, and your " Highneſſes ſerved by me with Honour and Increaſe of " your mighty State) his Divine Majeſty ſhould pleaſe to " obſtruct all this by my Death; which had yet been more " tolerable, had it not been attended with the Loſs of all " thoſe Men I had carried with me, upon Promiſe of hap- " py Succeſs. They ſeeing themſelves in that Affliction, " did not only curſe their ſetting out, but the Fear and " Awe my Perſuaſions infuſed into them, to diſſuade their " Return when outward bound, as they had ſeveral Times

" reſolved

" reſolved to do: But above all my Sorrow was double,
" when I remembered two Sons I had left at School at *Cordo-*
" *va*, deſtitute of Friends, in a ſtrange Country, before I had
" done, or at leaſt could be known to have done, any Ser-
" vice, which might be believed to incline your Highneſſes
" to remember them. And though on the one Side I com-
" forted myſelf with the Faith that our Lord would not
" permit a Thing which was ſo much for the Exaltation of
" his Church, to be left imperfect, when I had with ſo
" much Oppoſition and Trouble almoſt brought it to Per-
" fection, yet, on the other Side, I conſidered it was his
" Will, that becauſe of my Demerits he would not permit
" me to obtain ſuch Honour in this World, but ſnatch'd it
" from me. Being in this inward Confuſion, I remember'd
" your Highneſſes good Fortune; which, though I were
" dead, and the Ship loſt, might find ſome Means that a
" Conqueſt ſo near atchieved ſhould not be loſt, and that it
" was poſſible the Succeſs of my Voyage ſhould by ſome
" Means or other come to your Knowledge. For this
" Reaſon, as briefly as the Time would permit, I writ upon
" Parchment, that I had diſcovered thoſe Lands I had pro-
" miſed, as alſo in how many Days, and what Way I had
" done it, the Goodneſs of thoſe Lands, the Nature of the
" Inhabitants and how your Highneſſes Subjects were left
" in Poſſeſſion of all I had diſcovered; which Writing
" folded and ſealed, I ſuperſcribed to your Highneſſes,
" promiſing in Writing upon it a thouſand Ducats to him
" that ſhould deliver it ſealed to you; to the End, that if
" any Foreigners found it, the promiſed Reward might
" prevail with them not to give that Intelligence to another.
" Then I cauſed a great Caſk to be brought to me, and ha-
" ving wrapped the Writing in oyl'd Cloath, and then put it
" into a Cake of Wax, I dropped it into the Caſk, and ha-
" ving ſtopped the Bung cloſe, caſt it into the Sea, all the
" Men fancying it was ſome Act of Devotion: And ap-
" prehending that might perhaps never be taken up, and
" the Ship ſtill ſailing nearer to *Spain*, I made another
" Packet like the firſt, and placed it at the Top of the

" Poop, to the End that when the Ship ſunk, the Caſk
" might take his Chance, remaining ſtill above Water.

But after two Days ſailing in ſuch extream Danger, he reached one of the *Azores* Iſlands belonging to the *Portugueſe*. where he came to an Anchor; but the Inhabitants of it endeavouring to ſeize his Ship, he ſet ſail again from thence on the 24 of *February*, and on the 3d of *March* met with another violent Tempeſt, which ſplit all their Sails, ſo that they were forced to run on with bare Maſts through a mighty Sea, high Winds, and frightful Thunder: But on the next Day they found themſelves off the Rock of *Liſbon*, and the Admiral, though unwilling, was forced to put in there, being ſo much ſhattered with the Storm, and acordingly came to an Anchor in the River of *Liſbon* on the 4th of *March*. Here great Numbers of *Portugueſe* came aboard his Ship to ſee the *Indians*, and make Enquiries about his Voyage; ſome of them rejoicing for the Diſcovery of a new World, and others murmuring that they had loſt that Diſcovery through the King's Incredulity. The Day following the King of *Portugal* ſent the Admiral all Sorts of Refreſhments, and at the ſame Time wrote to the Admiral, congratulating his happy Arrival, and deſiring he would come to ſee him: The Admiral was doubtful what to do in this Caſe, but at laſt conſented to go to *Valparaiſo*, nine Leagues from *Liſbon*, where the King then was.

Here the King ordered all the Nobility of his Court to go out to meet him, and being come into his Preſence, did him great Honour, commanding him to put on his Cap and ſit down, and having, with a chearful Countenance, heard the Particulars of his proſperous Voyage, offered him all he ſtood in need of, for the Service of their Catholick Majeſties, tho' he thought, that for as much as he had been a Captain in *Portugal*, that Conqueſt belong'd to him. To which the Admiral anſwered, that he knew of no ſuch Agreement, and that he had ſtrictly obſerved his Orders, which were not to go the Mines of *Portugal* nor to *Guinea*. The King ſaid, all was well, and he doubted not but Juſtice would be done. Having ſpent a long Time in this ſort of Diſcourſe, the King command the Prior of *Crato*,

the

the greateſt Man then about him, to entertain the Admiral, and ſhow him all Civility and Reſpect, which was done accordingly.

On *Wedneſday* the 13th of *March*, two Hours after Day, the Admiral ſet ſail for *Seville*, and on Friday following at Noon, arrived at *Saltes*, and came to an Anchor in the Port of *Palos*, whence he had ſet out on the 3d of *Auguſt* the foregoing Year, 1492, ſeven Months and eleven Days before his Return. He was there received by all the People in Proceſſion, giving Thanks to God for his proſperous Succeſs, which, it was hoped, would redound ſo much to the Propagation of Chriſtianity, and Increaſe of their Catholick Majeſties Dominions; all the Inabitants of that Place looking upon it as a great Matter that the Admiral ſet out from hence, and that moſt of the Men he had with him belonged to it, though many of them, through *Pinzon*'s Fault, had been mutinous and diſobedient. It happened that when the Admiral came to *Palos*, *Pinzon* was arrived at *Galicia*, and deſigned to go by himſelf to *Barcelona*, to carry the News to their Catholick Majeſties, who ſent him Orders not to go thither without the Admiral, with whom he had been ſent to diſcover: At which he was ſo concerned and offended, that he returned indiſpoſed to his Native Country; where, within a few Days, he died for Grief: But before he got to *Palos*, the Admiral ſet out for *Seville*, deſigning to go thence for *Barcelona*, where their Catholick Majeſties were; and he was forced to ſtay a little by the Way, though but never ſo little, to the ſo great Admiration of the People whereſoever he went, that they ran from all the neighbouring Towns, down to the Roads to ſee him, the *Indians*, and other Things he brought. Thus holding on his Way he got to *Barcelona* about the middle of *April*, having before ſent their Highneſſes an Account of the happy Succeſs of his Voyage, which was extraordinary pleaſing to them, and they ordered him a moſt ſolemn Reception, as to a Man that had done them ſuch ſingular Service. All the Court and City went out to meet him; and their Catholick Majeſties ſat in Publick, with great State, on rich Chairs, under a Canopy of Cloth of Cold; and when he

he went to kiss their Hands, they stood up to him as to a great Lord, made a Difficulty to give him their Hands, and caused him to sit down. Having given a brief Account of his Voyage, thy gave him Leave to retire to his Apartment, whither he was attended by all the Court; and he was so highly honoured and favoured by their Highnesses, that when the King rode about *Barcelona*, the Admiral was on one Side of him, and the *Infante Fortuna* on the other; whereas before, none went by his Majesty but the said *Infante*, who was his near Kinsman.

Orders were given at *Barcelona*, with great Care and Expedition, for the Admiral's Return to *Hispaniola*, as well to relieve those that were left there, as to enlarge the Colony and subdue the Island, with the rest that were and should be discovered. To make their Title to them the stronger, their Catholick Majesties, by the Advice of the Admiral, procured the Pope's Approbation and Consent for the Conquest of the said *Indies*, which Pope *Alexander* the sixth, who then governed the Church, readily granted; not only for what was already, but for all that should be discovered Westward, till it should come to the East, where any Christian Prince was then actually in Possession, forbidding all Persons in general to intrude within those Bounds. The same his Holiness confirmed the next Year, in very significant Terms: And their Catholick Majesties being sensible that the Admiral had been the Cause of all this Favour granted by the Pope, and that his Discovery had entitled them to the Possession of all those Parts, they were pleased he should be immediately gratified at *Barcelona*, on the 28th of *May*, and therefore granted him a new Privilege, or rather an Exposition and Explanation of what he had before, confirming to him all they had granted before, and in plain Terms declared how far the Bounds of his Admiralship and Vice-Royship extended, being over all that which his Holiness had granted them, thus ratifying what they had given him before.

All Things necessary for the peopling those Countries being provided, the Admiral departed from *Barcelona* for *Seville* in *June*, and being come thither, so diligently sollicited

the

the fitting out of the Fleet their Catholick Majeſties had ordered him to provide, that in a ſhort Time ſeventeen Ships, between great and ſmall, were made ready, well ſtored with Proviſions, and with all Things thought neceſſary for peopling of thoſe Countries, as Handicrafts of all Sorts, Labourers, Countrymen to till the Land: Beſides, the Fame of Gold and other Rarities in thoſe Countries, had drawn together ſo many Gentlemen and other Perſons of Worth, that it was neceſſary to leſſen the Number, and not to allow ſo many to go abroad, at leaſt till it appeared in ſome Meaſure how Things would ſucceed in thoſe Parts, and till Things were a little ſettled: Yet was it impoſſible ſo much to confine the Number of People that went abroad, but that it amounted to fifteen hundred of all Sorts; among whom ſome carried Horſes, Aſſes, and other Beaſts, which were afterwards of great Uſe and Advantage to the Planters in thoſe Countries. Being thus furniſhed, the Admiral weighed Anchor in the Road of *Cadiz*, where the Fleet had been fitted, on *Wedneſday* the 25th of *September*, 1493, an Hour before Sun-riſing, and ſtood South-Weſt for the *Canary* Iſlands, deſigning there to take in ſome neceſſary Refreſhments.

On *Monday* the 7th of *October*, the Admiral continued his Voyage towards the *Indies*, having firſt delivered a Commiſſion ſhut up and ſealed, to every Ship, commanding them not to open it, unleſs they were ſeparated from him by Streſs of Weather; for he in thoſe Letters giving an Account of the Courſe they were to ſteer, to come to the Town of the *Nativity* in *Hiſpaniola*, would not have that Courſe known to any without great Need. Thus ſailing with a fair Gale till *Thurſday* the 24th of *October*, when being four hundred Leagues Weſt of *Gomera*, he yet met with none of the Weeds he had ſeen the firſt Voyage, when he was out but two hundred fifty Leagues, to the great Aſtoniſhment of them all: That Day and the next a Swallow flew about the Fleet. On *Saturday* at Night, the Body of St. *Elmo* was ſeen, with ſeven lighted Candles on the Round-Top, and there followed mighty Rains, and frightful Thunder; that is, the Lights were ſeen, which the Sea-

men

Seamen affirm to be the Body of St. *Elmo*, and they sung Litanies and Prayers to him, looking upon it as most certain, that in those Storms where he appears there can be no Danger.

On *Saturday* the 2d of *November*, at Night, the Admiral perceiving a great Alteration in the Sky and Winds, and taking Notice of the mighty Rains, he concluded for certain that he was near some Land, and for this Reason caus'd most of the Sails to be furled, and ordered all to be upon the Watch; nor without Cause, for that same Night, as Day began to break, they spy'd Land seven Leagues to the Westward, which was a high mountainous Island, and he called it *Dominica*, because discovered upon *Sunday* Morning. A while after he saw another Island North-East of *Dominica*, and then another, and another after that, more Northward: For the Mercy God had been pleased to bestow on them, all the Men assembling in the Poop, sung the *Salve Regina*, and other Prayers and Hyms very devoutly, giving Thanks to God for that in twenty Days, after departing from *Gomera*, they had made that Land, judging the Distance between them to be be between 750 and 800 Leagues. And finding no convenient Place to come to an Anchor on the East Side of the Island *Dominica*, they stood over to another Island which the Admiral called *Marigalante*, that being his Ship's Name. Here landing, he with all necessary Solemnity again confirmed the Possession he had in his first Voyage taken of all the Islands and Continent of the *West-Indies* for their Catholick Majesties.

On *Monday* the 4th of *November*, the Admiral sailed from the Island *Marigalante* Northwards, by another great Island, which he called St. *Mary of Guadalupe*, for his own Devotion, and at the Request of the Friars of the House of that Name, to whom he had made a Promise to call some Island by the Name of their Monastery. Before he came to it, at two Leagues Distance, they discovered a very high Rock, ending in a Point, whence gushed out a Stream of Water as thick as a large Barrel; which falling, made such a Noise, that it was heard aboard the Ships, though many affirmed it was only a white Vein in the Rock, and that

that the Water was ſo white and frothy by Reaſon of its ſteep Fall. Going aſhore in the Boat to view a Sort of Town they ſaw from the Shore, they found no Body there, the People being fled to the Woods, except ſome Children, to whoſe Arms they ty'd ſome Baubles, to allure their Fathers when they returned. In the Houſes they found Geeſe like our's, and abundance of Parrots with red, green, blue, and white Feathers, as big as common Cocks: They alſo found Pompions, and a Sort of Fruit which look'd like our green Pine Apples, but much bigger, and within full of ſolid Meat, like a Melon, and much ſweeter both in Taſte and Smell, which grew on long Stalks like Lillies or Aloes, wild about the Fields, and are better than thoſe that are brought up by Art, as afterwards appeared. They alſo ſaw other Sorts of Fruits and Herbs differing from our's; Beds and Cotton Nets, that is Hammacks, Bows and Arrows, and other ſuch Things, of which our Men took none, that the *Indians* might be leſs afraid of the Chriſtians.

The next Day, which was *Tueſday* the 5th of *November*, the Admiral again ſent two Boats aſhore, to endeavour to take ſome Body that might give him an Account of the Country, and inform him how far off, and which Way *Hiſpaniola* lay. Each of the Boats brought back a Youth, who agreed in ſaying they were not of that Iſland, but of another called *Borriquen*, now St. *John*, and that the Inhabitants of that Iſland *Guadalupe* were *Caribbees* or *Canibals*, and had taken them Priſoners from their own Iſland. Soon after the Boats returning to Shore, to take up ſome Chriſtians they had left there, found ſix Women with them, who had fled to them from the *Caribbees*, and came of their own Accord aboard the Ships. The Admiral, to allure the Iſlanders, would not keep them aboard, but gave them ſome Glaſs Beads and Bells, and made them be ſet aſhore againſt their Wills. This was not done unadviſedly, for as ſoon as they landed, the *Caribbees* in the Sight of the Chriſtians took away all the Admiral had given them. Therefore, either through the Hatred they bore the *Caribbees*, or for the Fear they had conceived of thoſe People, a while after, when the Boats returned for Wood and Water, the ſaid Wo-

men got into them, begging of the Seamen to carry them aboard the Ships, and giving them to understand by Signs, that those People did eat Men, and make Slaves of them, and therefore they would not stay with them; so that the Men yielding to their Intreaties, carried them back to the Ships, with two Children and a young Man that had made his Escape from the *Caribbees*, thinking it safer to put themselves into the Hands of People they never saw, and such Strangers to their Nation, than to remain among those they knew to be wicked and cruel, and who had eaten their Husbands and Children; but they said they did not kill and eat the Women, but kept them as Slaves. One of the Women told them, that towards the South there were many Islands, some inhabited, others not, which both she and the other Women severally called *Giamachi*, *Cairvaco*, *Huino*, *Buriari*, *Arubeira*, *Sixibei*. But the Continent which they said was very great, both they and the People of *Hispaniola* called *Zuanta*, because in former Times Canoes had come from that Land, to barter with abundance of Lads, of whom they said there were two thirds in an Island not far distant; and they also said, that a King of that Country whither they fled, was gone with ten great Canoes and three hundred Men, to make Incursions into the neighbouring Islands, and take People to eat.

The Admiral sent Captain *Hojeda*, with forty Men, to pry into the Nature of the Country, where he found Mastick, Aloes, Sandal, Ginger, Frankincense, and some Trees in Taste and Smell like Cinnamon, abundance of Cotton, and many Falcons, and saw two of them pursuing the other Birds; they also saw Kites, Herons, Daws, Turtles, Partridges, Geese, and Nightingales.

In the Houses they found a great deal of Cotton spun and unspun, Looms to weave, abundance of Men's Skulls hung up, and Baskets full of Men's Bones. These Houses they saw, were the best, and more plentifully stored with Provisions, and other Things necessary for the Use of the *Indians*, than any others the Admiral saw in the Islands at his first Voyage.

On

On *Sunday* the 10th of *November*, the Admiral weighed Anchor, and ſailed with the whole Fleet along the Coaſt of the Iſland *Guadalupe*, towards the North-Weſt, for *Hiſpaniola*, and came to the Iſland *Monſerrate*, calling it by that Name, becauſe of its Height, and underſtood by the *Indians* he had with him, that the *Caribbees* had unpeopled it, devouring the Inhabitants. Thence he proceeded to St. *Mary Redonda*, ſo called becauſe it is ſo round and upright, that there ſeems to be no getting into it without Ladders, which the *Indians* called *Ocamaniro*. Next he came to St. *Maria la Antigua*, which is above twenty-eight Leagues in Extent. Still holding on his Courſe North-Weſt, there appeared ſeveral other Iſlands towards the North, and lying North-Weſt and South-Eaſt, all very high and full of Woods, in one of which they caſt Anchor, and called it St. *Martin*, where they took up Pieces of Coral, ſticking to the Anchor Flooks.

On *Friday* the 12th of *November*, the Admiral came up with the North Side of *Hiſpaniola*, and preſently ſent aſhore at *Samana* one of the *Indians* born in that Part, whom he brought out of *Spain*, being then converted to our Holy Faith, who offered to reduce all the *Indians* to ſubmit to the Chriſtians. The Admiral continuing his Voyage towards the Town of *Natal*, or the *Nativity*, when he came to Cape *Angel*, ſome *Indians* went aboard to barter their Commodities with the Chriſtians. Coming to an Anchor in the Port of *Monte Chriſto*, a Boat that went aſhore found near a River two dead Men; one of them ſeemed to be young, the other old, who had a Rope made of a certain Sort of Broom or ſuch like Furze that grows in *Spain*, called *Eſparto*, about his Neck, his Arms extended, and his Hands tied to a Piece of Wood, in the Form of a Croſs; but they could not diſcern whether they were Chriſtians or *Indians*, but looked upon it as an ill Omen. The next Day, being the 26th of *November*, the Admiral ſent aſhore in ſeveral Places: The *Indians* came very friendly and boldly to talk with the Chriſtians, and touching our Men's Shirts and Doublets, ſaid Shirt, Doublet in *Spaniſh*, to ſhow they knew how thoſe Things were called, which delivered the Admiral

from the Jealouſy he had conceived, on Account of the dead Men, judging that if thoſe People had wronged the Chriſtians left there, they had not come ſo boldly about the Ships.

On *Thurſday* the 28th of *November*, about Evening, the Admiral, with all his Fleet, came into the Port before the Town of *Navidad* or the *Nativity*, found it all burnt, and that Day no Body was ſeen all about there. Next Day, in the Morning, the Admiral landed very much concerned to ſee the Houſes and Fort burnt, and nothing left belonging to the Chriſtians, but only ragged Cloaths and ſuch like Things, as is uſual in a Place plundered and deſtroyed; and ſeeing no Body to enquire of, the Admiral went with ſome Boats up a River that was hard by. Whilſt he was going up it, he ordered the Well he had made in the Fort to be cleanſed, thinking to find Gold in it, becauſe at his going away, fearing what might happen, he commanded thoſe he left behind to throw all the Gold they could get into that Well; but nothing was found in it, and the Admiral, that Way he went up with his Boats, could lay hold of no *Indians*, becauſe they all fled from their Houſes to the Woods. Having therefore found nothing but ſome of the Chriſtians Cloaths, he returned to *Navidad*, where he ſaw eight of the Chriſtians, and three others, in the Fields near the Town, whom they knew to be Chriſtians by their Cloaths, and they ſeemed to have been dead about a Month. The Chriſtians going about to ſeek ſome other Tokens, or Writings of the Dead, a Brother of the Cacique *Guacanagari* came with ſome *Indians* to talk with the Admiral. Theſe could ſpeak ſome Words of *Spaniſh*, and knew the Names of all the Chriſtians that had been left there, and ſaid that thoſe *Spaniards* ſoon began to fall at Variance among themſelves, and to take every one what Gold and as many Women as they could; whereupon *Peter Gutierres* and *Eſcovedo* killed one *James*, and then they and nine others went away with their Women to a Cacique, whoſe Name was *Caunabo*, who was Lord of the Mines, and killed them all; then many Days after came with a great many Men to *Navidad*, where there was only *James de Arana*, with ten Men, who had

had remained with him to guard the Fort, all the reſt being diſperſed about the Iſland. The Cacique *Caunabo* coming up by Night, fired the Houſes where the Chriſtians lived, with their Women, for fear whereof they fled to the Sea, where eight of them were drowned, and three died aſhore, whom they ſhew'd; that *Guacanagari* himſelf, fighting with *Caunabo* in Defence of the Chriſtians, was wounded and fled.

This Account agreed with that given by other Chriſtians, ſent by the Admiral to learn more of the Country, who went to a Town where *Guacanagari* lay ill of a Wound, which he ſaid had hindered him from waiting on the Admiral, and giving him an Account of what was become of the Chriſtians, among whom he ſaid, ſoon after the Admiral returned for *Spain*, there began to be Diſſenſion, and every one would barter Gold for himſelf, and take what Women he thought fit; and not ſatisfied with what *Guacanagari* gave and allowed to be given them, they divided into ſeveral Parcels, and diſperſed ſome one Way and ſome another, and that ſome *Biſcainers* joining together, went where they were all killed: And this was the Truth of what had happened, which they might tell the Admiral, deſiring him by thoſe ſame Chriſtians, that he would come and ſee him, becauſe he was in ſuch a Condition that he could not leave his Houſe. The Admiral did ſo, going the next Day to viſit him, and he with great Signs of Sorrow, told him all that had happened, as has been related above, and that he and his Men had been all wounded in Defence of the Chriſtians, as appeared by their Wounds, which were not given by Chriſtian Arms, but with *Aragayas*, or wooden Swords, and Arrows pointed with Fiſh Bones. The Diſcourſe being over, he preſented the Admiral with eight Strings of ſmall Beads, made of white, green and red Stones, a String of Gold Beads, and a Regal Crown of Gold, and three little Calabaſhes full of Gold Sand, all which might be about four Marks Weight in Gold, each Mark being half a Pound. The Admiral, in Return, gave him abundance of our Baubles, which might be worth three Royals, or Eighteenpence, and were valued by him at above a thouſand. Tho' he

he was very ill, he would needs go with the Admiral to ſee the Fleet, where he was courteouſly entertained, and much pleaſed to ſee the Horſes, of which the Chriſtians had before given him an Account.

The Admiral having obſerved other Parts of the Iſland more convenient for building a Town, and the ſettling a Colony, than that where he built the firſt Fort, returned with his Fleet further Eaſtward; and near a Mountain he had named *Monte Chriſto*, finding a commodious Harbour near the Mouth of a River, and a Rock that was a good natural Fortification, he laid out the Plan of a Town, to which he gave the Name of *Iſabella*, being the Name of the Queen of *Caſtile*.

He found the Soil ſo fruitful here, that Melons grew up and were ripe within two Months after the Seed was put into the Ground: They gathered Ears of Wheat in about two Months after it had been ſown, and Vetches ſprung up above Ground in three Days, and the 25th Day they eat of them. The Stones of Fruit ſet in the Ground ſprouted out in ſeven Days, and Vine Branches ſhot out in the ſame Time, and in twenty-five Days after, they gathered green Grapes: The Sugar Canes budded in ſeven Days, and yet the Climate was rather cold than hot: The Waters there were likewiſe very cold, but very fine.

The Admiral having ſent a Party of Men to diſcover the Country of *Ciboa*, from whence moſt of the Gold was brought, and receiving Advice that it was generally a rocky Country, pretty well repleniſhed with Rivers, in whoſe Sands were found a pretty deal of Gold Duſt, he reſolv'd to go in Perſon, in order to build a Fort there that might command the Natives, having firſt ſent twelve of his Ships back to *Spain*, and ſo diſpoſed of the reſt as to prevent a Mutiny in his Abſence: For the Adventurers, having flattered themſelves that they ſhould immediately poſſeſs Mountains of Gold, when they found there was a great deal of Labour and Fatigue to be undergone, in building Forts and Towns, and making Diſcoveries, before they muſt expect to accompliſh their Ends, they formed a Conſpiracy againſt the Admiral, and had even laid a Deſign to run away

away with the remaining Ships, and return to *Spain*: But *Columbus* having diſcovered the Plot, and ſo diſpoſed Things as to prevent a Mutiny for the future, he ſet out for the Country of *Ciboa*, with a ſtrong Party of Men, and ſome Horſes and Mules.

In his Way thither, the People of the Towns fled to the Mountains, but fortified their Houſes, barring their Doors with ſome Canes, as if that were a great Defence to hinder any Body from coming in; for according to their Cuſtom, no Man dares break in at the Door he finds ſo barred, for as much as they have no wooden Doors, or other Means to ſhut themſelves in, it ſeems theſe Bars are ſufficient.

He found the Country rough and ſtony, full of Gravel, plentiful of Graſs, and watered by ſeveral Rivers, in which Gold is found. The further they went into this Country, the more uncouth they found it, and encumbered with Mountains, on the Tops whereof there appeared Grains of Gold Sand; for, as the Admiral ſaid, the great Rains carry it down from the Tops of the Mountains to the Rivers in ſmall Sand.

This Province is as big as *Portugal*, and there are in it abundance of Mines, and Gold in the Brooks, but for the moſt Part there are very few Trees, and thoſe along the Banks of Rivers, and are moſt of them Pines and Palms of ſeveral Sorts.

Here he erected a Fortreſs, to which he gave the Name of St. *Thomas*, in which he left a Garriſon of four hundred Men, and upwards, aud then returned to his Ships in the Harbour of *Iſabella*.

In breaking Ground to lay the Foundation of this Caſtle of St. *Thomas*, and cutting a Rock to make the Ditches, when they were got two Fathom below the Stone, they found Neſts made of Hay and Straw, and inſtead of Eggs, three or four round Stones, as big as Oranges, as artificially made, as if they had been Cannon Balls; and in the River that runs at the Foot of that Hill the Caſtle now ſtands upon, they found Stones of ſeveral Colours, ſome of them large, of pure Marble, and others of Jaſper.

In

In this Expedition the Admiral obſerves that the Natives were under the greateſt Conſternation when they ſaw their Horſes; and, though the *Indians* would ſometimes venture to engage their Foot, a ſingle Horſeman might drive hundreds of them before him, They did not think themſelves ſecure, even when there was a deep River between them and the Horſe; for they imagined the Creature could fly, and they were ſo afraid of being devoured by them, that they durſt not go into any Houſe where a Horſe ſtood.

The Admiral having put the Town of *Iſabella* and the Fort of St. *Thomas* in a Poſture of Defence, and left a ſufficient Body of Troops in the Country, to keep the Natives in Awe, determined to go upon new Diſcoveries: Whereupon he nominated a Council of his principal Officers to take the Government of the Iſland upon them in his Abſence, in which his Brother, *James Columbus*, was to preſide, and then ſet ſail to the Weſtward with three Ships for *Cuba*, not knowing yet whether it was an Iſland, or Part of the Continent. In this Voyage he met with ſeveral good Harbours and Rivers, and found the Country to be very fruitful. He alſo diſcovered the Iſland of *Jamaica* to the Southward of *Cuba*; which he commends as a more populous pleaſant and fruitful Country, than either *Cuba* or *Hiſpaniola*; and relates, that it was inhabited by a warlike People, who attacked his Men with their Bows and Arrows; but that having wounded ſix or ſeven of them with their Croſs Bows, they fled, and the next Day came down in a peaceful Manner to traffick with him; that having ſtaid here ſome Days, and repaired his Ship, which was leaky, he ſet ſail again for *Cuba*, and in his Way thither met with a great Number of ſmall Iſlands, ſome of them ſcarce above the Surface of the Sea, which made it very dangerous ſailing: In one Day they counted one hundred and ſixty Iſlands, all parted by deep Channels, which the Ship ſailed through.

In ſome of theſe Iſlands they ſaw abundance of Cranes, in Shape and Bigneſs like thoſe of *Europe*, but as red as Scarlet. In others abundance of Tortoiſes, that lay their Eggs (which are not unlike a Hen's, but the Shells are very

very hard) in Holes they make in the Sand, and covering them, leave them till the Heat of the Sun hatches the young Tortoiſes. There were likewiſe an infinite Number of little Birds that ſang ſweetly; and the very Air was as ſweet as if there had been ſo many Roſes and Perfumes. In one of the Channels that ran between theſe Iſlands, they ſpy'd a Canoe of *Indian* Fiſhermen, who very quietly, without the leaſt Concern, expected the Boat which was making towards them, and being come near, made a Sign to them in it, till they had done fiſhing. Their Manner of fiſhing was ſo ſtrange and new to our Men, that they were willing to comply with them: It was thus; They had ty'd ſome ſmall Fiſhes they call *Reves*, by the Tail, which run themſelves againſt other Fiſh, and with a certain Roughneſs they have from the Head to the Middle of the Back, they ſtick ſo faſt to the next Fiſh they meet, that when the *Indians* perceive it, drawing their Line they draw them both together; and it was a Tortoiſe our Men ſaw ſo taken by thoſe Fiſhermen, that Fiſh clinging about the Neck of it, where they generally faſten, being by that Means ſafe from the other Fiſh biting them, and they have ſeen them faſten upon vaſt Sharks.

Sailing on in this Manner between theſe ſmall Iſlands, they came again to *Cuba*, and one of the Seamen going aſhore, found thirty *Indians* armed with Spears and Staves, among whom was one clad with a white Coat, or Veſt, down to his Knees, and two that carried him were cloathed in Veſts, which reached down to their Feet, and were all white; but the *Indians* perceiving the Sailor, they all ran away with the greateſt Speed they could make: There were ſuch Flights of Crows in a Morning, going from the Seaward to the Iſland, that they darkened the Sun, and a great abundance of Pigeons, and other Sorts of Birds; and one Day there came ſuch Swarms of Butterflies, that they darkened the Air, and laſted till Night, when a great Rain carried them away. Sailing on, they came into a Sea ſo patched with green and white, that it looked like one entire Sand; but there was two Fathom Water, along which they ſailed ſeven Leagues, till they came into another Sea as white as Milk,

which the Admiral much admired at, as the Water was very thick. This Sea dazzled the Eyes of all that beheld it, and seemed to be all a Shoal, and yet there was about three Fathom Water; but when they had sailed about four Leagues upon that Sea, they came into another Sea as black as Ink: They often met with great Difficulty in sailing through narrow Channels and Shoals; besides which, they were extreamly troubled every Day about Sun-set, with prodigious Showers of Rain, and when they drew nearer to *Cuba*, they were on a sudden assaulted by such a violent Rain and Storm, as bore the Admiral's Ship under Water; but it pleased GOD, they immediately struck all their Sails, and dropped their best Anchors; but they took in so much Water at the Deck, that the Men were not able to pump it out, especially in the Condition they were in, being much spent for Want of Provisions, as they were reduced to the Allowance of a Pound of rotten Bisket a Day, and about half a Pint of Wine.

The Admiral, in his Journal, speaks thus concerning it: "I myself am at the same Allowance; GOD grant it may "be to his Honour, and for your Highnesses Service, for I "shall never again, for my own Benefit, expose myself to "such Sufferings and Dangers, never a Day passing but I "see we are upon the Brink of Death."

In this Distress they arrived at *Cape Cruz*, on the Island of *Cuba*, where they were friendly entertained by the *Indians*, who brought them abundance of their Bread (which they call *Cazabi*, and is made of Roots grated) a great deal of Fish, Store of Fruit, and such other Food as they had.

The Wind being contrary for *Hispaniola*, they stood over again for *Jamaica*, and sailed along Westward, close under the Shore, the Country all along most delightful and fruitful, with excellent Harbours at every League's Distance, and all the Coast full of Towns; the Inhabitants whereof following the Ships in their Canoes, brought such Provisions as they eat, which was much better liked by the Admiral and his People, than what they found in the other Islands. The Admiral had a great Mind to make some Stay at *Jamaica*, to inform himself fully of the Nature of the

the Iſland; but the great Want of Ship Proviſions, and the Leakineſs of the Veſſels, would not permit him; therefore, as ſoon as the Weather was a little fair, he ſailed away Eaſtward, ſtanding over directly for *Hiſpaniola*.

In a few Days they made *Hiſpaniola*, and coaſting it along, diſcovered a delightful Country, ſo peopled, that it ſeemed to be one continued Town for a League in Length. Sending the Boats for Water to a Place where a great Town appeared, the *Indians* came out againſt them with Bows and poiſoned Arrows, and with Ropes in their Hands, making Signs that they would bind the Chriſtians: But as ſoon as the Boats came aſhore, the *Indians* laid down their Arms, and offered to bring Bread and Water, and all they had. Going hence, they ſaw in the Sea a Fiſh as big as a Whale, which, on its Neck, had a Shell like a Tortoiſe, and bore its Head, which was as big as a Hogſhead, above Water; its Tail like a Tunny Fiſh, very long, and two large Fins on the Sides. Soon after this, the Admiral was taken with a dangerous Diſeaſe, which deprived him of all his Senſes and Memory, ſo that all the Men aboard reſolved to deſiſt from the Deſign the Admiral had in Hand of diſcovering all the Iſlands of the *Caribbees*, and return immediately to *Iſabella*, where he lay ſick five Months, which was attributed to the great Fatigue he had undergone during the Voyage; for ſometimes he had not ſlept three Hours in eight Days, which ſeems almoſt impoſſible, had not he declared it himſelf, and his Men been Witneſſes of the Truth of it.

The Admiral had the Pleaſure of finding at *Hiſpaniola* his Brother, *Bartholomew Columbus*, who, as we ſaid before, had been ſent to treat with the King of *England* about the Diſcovery of the *Indies*. He returning to *Spain* with the Grant of his Demands, underſtood at *Paris*, by *Charles* King of *France*, that the Admiral his Brother had diſcovered the *Indies*, and he ſupplied him with one hundred Crowns to proceed on his Journey. Upon this News, he made all the Haſte he could to overtake the Admiral in *Spain*; yet, when he came to *Seville*, his Brother was ſet out for the *Indies* with ſeventeen Sail: Therefore, to fulfil the Orders he had left him at the Beginning of the Year

1494, he went away to their Majeſties at *Valladolid*. As ſoon as he came thither, their Majeſties ſent for him, and ſent him away to *Hiſpaniola* with three Ships.

The Admiral having the Aſſiſtance and Advice of his Brother, took ſome Reſt, and lived in Quiet, though on the other Side he met with Trouble enough, as well from his Sickneſs, as becauſe he found almoſt all the *Indians* had revolted, through the Fault of *D. Peter Margarite*; to whom the Admiral, at his Departure to make Diſcoveries, had given the Command of the flying Army that was to keep the Country in Subjection. He aſpiring to the ſole Command of the Iſland, refuſed to obey the Council the Admiral entruſted with the Government, but finding he could not obtain his Ends, left the Country, and tranſported himſelf to *Spain*. Whereupon his Troops diſperſed themſelves, and, committing great Outrages, ſeveral of the Caciques of the Iſland aſſembled their Forces in their Defence, and cut off a great many of the *Spaniards*; but the Admiral being returned, aſſembled his ſcattered Forces, and with the Aſſiſtance of the Cacique *Guacanagari*, his faithful Ally, ſubdu'd all the Country under the Obedience of his Catholick Majeſty, though one of the *Indian* Armies that oppoſed him conſiſted of an hundred thouſand Men; and all the Admiral's Troops, that took the Field, amounted to no more than two hundred Foot, twenty Horſe, and twenty great Dogs. But the Admiral dividing his Forces, that he might attack this great Multitude (which were ſcattered about the Plains) in two Places at once, thinking (as it proved) that the Terror of hearing the Noiſe in ſeveral Places would put them to Flight the ſooner, he broke them with the firſt Diſcharge of the Croſs Bows and Muſkets, and the Horſe and Dogs falling upon them in a furious Manner, that they might not rally, they fled, ſome one Way and ſome another. Great Numbers were killed, and a compleat Victory obtained.

Certain it is, that the Inhabitants of *Hiſpaniola* were ſubdued in this ſecond Voyage of *Columbus*, who impoſed a Tribute on them; and having taken *Caunabo*, the moſt powerful

powerful Cacique or Prince of the Iſland, Priſoner, ſent him to *Spain*. This Cacique acknowledged that it was he that deſtroyed the firſt *Spaniſh* Fort, called the *Nativity*, and put to the Sword above twenty of the Garriſon the Admiral had left there.

The Tribute the Natives of *Ciboa* (where the Gold was found) agreed to pay the *Spaniards*, was a large Horſe Bell full of Gold Duſt for every Head above fourteen Years of Age, once a Quarter; and the reſt were to pay twenty-five Pounds of Cotton per Head every three Months.

The People of the Iſland being brought under, and converſing more freely with the Chriſtians, many other Particulars and the Secrets of their Religion were found out, but particularly that there were Mines of Copper, Azure, and Amber; as alſo Ebony, Cedar, Frankincenſe, and other rich Gums and Spice of ſeveral Sorts, but wild, which being cultivated, might be brought to Perfection; as for Inſtance, Cinnamon of good Colour, but bitter, Ginger, long Pepper, abundance of Mulberry Trees, for making of Silk, which bear Leaves all the Year, and many other uſeful Trees and Plants not known in our Parts.

The Admiral could diſcover neither Idolatry nor any other Sect among them, though every one of their Kings, who are very many, as well in *Hiſpaniola* as in all the other Iſlands and Continent, has a Houſe apart from the Town, in which there is nothing at all but ſome wooden Images carved, by them called *Cemi*'s; nor is there any Thing done in thoſe Houſes but what is for the Service of thoſe *Cemi*'s, they repairing to perform certain Services, and pray there, as we do to our Churches. In theſe Houſes they have a handſome round Table, made like a Diſh, on which is ſome Powder, which they lay on the Head of the *Cemi*'s, with a certain Ceremony; then through a Cane that has three Branches, clapped to their Noſe, they ſnuff up this Powder: The Words they ſay, none of our People underſtand. This Powder puts them beſides themſelves, as if they were drunk. They alſo give the Image a Name, and the Admiral believ'd it was their Father's, or Grandfather's, or both, for they have more than one, and ſome above ten,

all

all in Memory of their Forefathers, as was ſaid before. The Admiral has heard them commend one above another, and has ſeen them to have more Devotion, and ſhew more Reſpect to one than another, as the *Spaniards* do in Proceſſions, in Time of Need; and the People and Caciques boaſt among themſelves of having the beſt *Cemi*'s. When they go to theſe their *Cemi*'s, they ſhun the Chriſtians, and will not let them go into thoſe Houſes, and if they ſuſpect they will come, they take away their *Cemi*'s, and hide them in the Woods, for Fear they ſhould be taken from them; and what is moſt ridiculous, they uſed to ſteal one another's *Cemi*'s. It happened once, that the Chriſtians on a ſudden ruſhed into the Houſe with them, and preſently the *Cemi* cried out, ſpeaking in their Language, by which it appeared to be artificially made, for it being hollow, they had applied a Trunk to it, which anſwered to a dark Corner of the Houſe covered with Boughs and Leaves, where a Man was concealed, who ſpoke what the Cacique ordered him. The *Spaniards* therefore, reflecting on what it might be, kicked down the *Cemi*, and found as has been ſaid; and the Cacique ſeeing they had diſcovered his Practice, earneſtly begg'd of them not to ſpeak of it to his Subjects, or the other *Indians*, becauſe he kept them in Obedience by that Policy.

When theſe *Indians* die, they have ſeveral Ways of performing their Obſequies, but the Manner of burying their Caciques is thus: They open and dry him at the Fire, that he may keep whole; of others they take only the Head; others they bury in a Grot, or Den, and lay a Calabaſh of Water and Bread on his Head; others they burn in the Houſe where they die, and when they are at the laſt Gaſp, they ſuffer them not to die, but ſtrangle them, and this is done to Caciques. Others are turned out of the Houſe, and others put them into a Hamack, which is their Bed, laying Bread and Water by their Head, never returning to ſee them any more. Some that are dangerouſly ill, are carried to the Cacique, who tells them whether they are to be ſtrangled or not, and what he ſays is done. The Admiral ſays he took Pains to find out what it was they believed, and whether they knew what became of them after they were dead, and

eſpecially he enquired of *Caunabo*, who was the chiefeſt King in *Hiſpaniola*, a Man in Years, Knowing, and of a moſt piercing Wit. He and the reſt anſwered, that they go to a certain Vale, which every great Cacique ſuppoſes to be in his Country, where they affirm they find their Parents and all their Predeceſſors, and that they eat, have Women, and give themſelves up to Pleaſures and Paſtimes.

The Admiral having ſettled the Government of the Iſland, and built three Fortreſſes, beſides that of *Iſabella*, to preſerve his Conqueſt, thought fit to return to *Spain*; for he found ſo many ill Offices had been done him by his Enemies, that the Court of *Spain* neglected to ſend him any further Reinforcements, to enable him to extend his Diſcoveries.

The Admiral arriving in *Spain*, attended their Catholick Majeſties at *Burgos*, preſenting them with ſeveral Things he brought as Samples from the *Indies*, as well Birds and Beaſts, as Trees, Plants, Inſtruments, and other Things the *Indians* uſe for their Service and Devotion; alſo ſeveral Girdles and Maſks, with Eyes and Ears of Plates of Gold, beſides much Gold Sand, groſs and ſmall, as Nature produced it; ſome Grains as big as Vetches, ſome as Beans, and ſome as Pigeons Eggs, which was graciouſly received, and looked upon as a ſure Earneſt of the future vaſt Wealth they received from thence; for in Proceſs of Time, Pieces of Gold were found there, that weighed above 30 Pounds.

The Admiral, after near two Years Attendance at the Court of *Spain*, having at length procured ſix Ships, ſet ſail on the 30th of *May*, 1498, for *America* again, and in his Way touched at the *Maderas*. He afterwards made the Iſland of *Ferro*, the moſt Weſterly of the *Canaries*, from whence he detached three of his Ships directly for *Hiſpaniola*, and with the other three bent his Courſe towards the Iſlands of *Cape Verd*: From hence he held on his Courſe South-Weſt, in Expectation of finding the Continent, till he came into five Degrees North Latitude; but meeting here with Calms, and ſuch exceſſive hot Weather, that had it not rained ſometimes, and the Sun been clouded, he believed they would have been burnt alive together

together with the Ships, he was deterred from sailing any further to the South, and bent his Course to the North-West, till he came into seven Degrees North Latitude, and then he steered due West; which Course having continued some Days, he discovered a large Island on the first of *August*, to which he gave the Name of the *Trinity*, which lies near the Mouth of the River *Orbonoko*, in *South-America*; and in a Day or two after, he made the Continent of *Paria*, or *Guiana*, now called *New-Andaluſia*, lying about seven Degrees South of *Barbadoes*.

The Admiral going on Shore on the 5th of *August*, bartered away some Trifles with the Natives of *Paria*, and observed they were rather whiter than those of *Hiſpaniola*; that the Men wore their Hair long, and had little Aprons and Caps of Cotton Linnen; that the Women wore little Gold Plates and Chains of Pearl about their Necks, but had no Aprons or Covering for their Nudities; and that they were generally a harmless inoffensive People, not *Canibals*, as some represent them. Enquiring of them where they got the Pearls, they made Signs to shew it was in the Oyster Shells, which were taken Westward of the Land of *Paria*, and beyond it towards the North.

The Admiral having spent about a Fortnight upon the Coast of *Paria*, in getting what Intelligence he could of that Continent, set sail directly for *Hiſpaniola*, and arrived at St. *Domingo*, a Town that his Brother (and Lieutenant) had built on the South Side of the Island, and so named in Memory of their Father *Dominic*, on the 30th of *August*, 1498. The continual Labour and Watchings the Admiral had endured in attempting to discover the Continent, made the Sight of *Hiſpaniola* very acceptable to him, where he hoped to have enjoyed some Ease and Satisfaction, after numberless Hazards and Fatigues; but, to his great Mortification, he found the Island in the utmost Distraction; for he here found those he had left were at Variance amongst themselves; at the Head of which Mutiny, was one *Francis Roldan*, who had been been left there as Chief Justice by the Admiral, but during his Absence had endeavoured to expel his Brother from the Island. Having with much

Difficulty

Difficulty reconciled theſe Differences, he applied himſelf to the digging of the Gold Mines, and found ſuch a Plenty of that Metal, that one Man frequently got five Marks of Gold in a Day's Time; but he was ſoon interrupted from this, by freſh Inſurrections among his People: And though by his excellent Conduct he found Means to maintain his Authority in the Iſland, and diſtreſs his Enemies there, yet they appeared to be too hard for him in the Court of *Spain*, by the malicious Stories they tranſmitted thither; ſo that the King ſent over a *Spaniſh* Knight, named *Bovadilla*, to *Hiſpaniola*, giving him even Power to apprehend the Admiral, and ſend him to *Spain*, if he thought fit; ſending at the ſame Time a Letter to the Admiral himſelf, commanding him to obey this new Governor. *Columbus* accordingly, on his Arrival, ſubmitted to him, though he was in a Condition to have defended himſelf.

The *Spaniſh* Knight made the moſt of his Commiſſion; he immediately took Poſſeſſion of the Admiral's Palaces, and all his Effects, and clapping him and his Brother in Irons, ſent them both Priſoners to *Spain*: The Captain of the Ship, indeed, aſhamed to ſee this great Man in Fetters, offered to knock off his Irons; which the Admiral would not permit, ſaying, that ſince their Catholick Majeſties by their Letter directed him to perform whatever the new Governor did in their Name command him to do, (in Virtue of which Authority and Commiſſion he had put him in Irons,) he would have none but their Highneſſes themſelves to do their Pleaſure themſelves, and he was reſolved to keep thoſe Fetters as Relicts, and a Memorial of the Reward of his many Services; and accordingly he did, for he always kept them in his Room, and ordered them to be buried with his Body.

However, their Catholick Majeſties no ſooner heard of the Admiral's Arrival, but they ſent Orders to releaſe him, and invite him to Court, aſſuring him that *Bovadilla* had exceeded his Commiſſion, and that his Eſtate ſhould be reſtored, and he ſhould be continued in the Command of all he had diſcovered in the New World; for it evidently appeared that the Complaints that had been brought againſt

him, proceeded either from Self-Interest, or Malice: But notwithstanding the Admiral was innocent, and had the Titles of Admiral and Viceroy of the *Indies* continued to him, he appears to have been actually deprived of his Government of *Hispaniola*, and another was sent thither in his Room, that would be more acceptable to the *Spaniards*, as well as the *Indians*, as was supposed, and bring more Treasure into their Majesties Coffers; which the Admiral so much resented, that he had determined to retire, and lead a private Life, without attempting any further Discoveries; for he reflected, that if what he had done for the *Spanish* Nation could not induce them to use him well, nothing that he could do hereafter would. But the King, either considering what Dishonour the laying the Admiral aside might reflect upon him, or imagining he might make yet more profitable Discoveries, persuaded *Columbus* to put to Sea again, vested with the like Powers he had conferred on him in his former Voyages.

Accordingly the Admiral set Sail from *Cadiz* with four Ships, from 50 to 70 Ton, and 140 Men, on the 9th of *May*, 1502; and, touching at the *Canaries* on the 20th of the same Month, where he took in Wood and Water, he sailed from thence the 24th, and arrived at *Martinico*, one of the *Caribbee* Islands, the 15th of *June*, and the latter End of the same Month came before St. *Domingo*, in *Hispaniola:* But the Admiral was not suffered to enter that Port, though most of his Estate and Effects lay thereabouts, and he had represented to the *Spanish* Governor, that one of his Ships was much damaged, and he apprehended a Storm. From whence, 'tis too plain, that the Court of *Spain* had given Orders that he should never more reside in *Hispaniola*, which he had conquered for them. The Admiral, however, had the good Fortune to get into a little Creek in the Island, where he weathered a very terrible Storm; in which *Bovadilla*, his great Enemy, and fourteen Ships laden with Treasure, and bound for *Spain*, perished.

The Admiral, after the Storm was over, left the Coast of *Hispaniola*, and sailing to the Westward, passed by the South Side of the Island of *Jamaica*; from whence continuing

nuing his Courſe, he arrived at the Iſland of *Guayana*, in the Gulph of *Honduras*, where he met with a Canoe as long as a Galley, and eight Foot wide, made of one Tree; which being laden with ſuch Merchandize as the neighbouring Continent afforded, and having twenty-five Men, and ſeveral Women and Children on board, bound for the Coaſt of *Mexico*, he made them Priſoners: He found on board the Canoe ſeveral large Pieces of Cotton Linnen, Quilts, and quilted Waiſtcoats, without Sleeves, finely wrought, and dy'd of ſeveral Colours. The Women on board the Canoe, wrapped themſelves up in Pieces of Cotton Linnen, or had Cloths of the Bigneſs of Handkerchiefs to cover their Nudities: There were found alſo on board the Canoe, wooden Swords, edged with Flints, and Hatchets made of Copper; they had alſo Bells, Plates, and Crucibles of Copper to melt their Metal in.

Their Proviſions were Maize, or *Indian* Corn, ſeveral Sorts of Roots, and Cacao Nuts, of which Chocolate is made.

The Admiral having taken out of the Canoe ſuch Things as he liked, and given the *Indians* ſuch *European* Goods in Return, as were moſt acceptable to them, he diſmiſſed the Canoe, and all the People in it, except one old Man he detained to inform him of the State of the neighbouring Continent, and to ſerve him for an Interpreter among the Natives. The *Indians*, who were already on board the Admiral, it ſeems did not perfectly underſtand the Language of thoſe on the Continent, that were taken in the Canoe; but learned, however, thus much from them, that North-Weſt of the Province of *Honduras*, (on which Coaſt the *Spaniards* lay at this Time,) there lived a potent Prince, (afterwards found to be the Emperor of *Mexico*) and that to the South-Eaſt of *Honduras* was a narrow Strait, that led to a vaſt Ocean, (afterwards known by the Name of the South-Sea) which the Admiral determined to ſearch out, rightly conjecturing that over that Sea he ſhould find a Way to the Treaſures and Spices of the *Eaſt-Indies*: But the Misfortune was, that the ſame Word which ſignified a Strait by Sea, might be, and really ought to have been, on

that Occaſion, interpreted an Iſthmus by Land; and if he had underſtood theſe *Indians* right, they would have inform'd him that there was a narrow Neck of Land, afterwards called the *Iſthmus* of *Darien*, that ſeparated the North and South Seas, or the Atlantick from the Pacifick Ocean. This Miſtake cauſed the Admiral an infinite deal of Trouble and Fatigue; for upon this Intelligence he returned to the Eaſtward, in order to find out the imaginary Strait, labouring againſt the Trade Winds and Currents, which conſtantly ſit to the Weſtward in the North Sea. As he ſailed to the Eaſtward along the Coaſt of *Honduras*, his People frequently went on Shore and traffick'd with the Natives, exchanging Bells, glittering Beads and Toys, for thin Gold Plates: And here they were furniſhed with Water and freſh Proviſions, ſuch as Veniſon, Geeſe, Hens, Fiſh, and Beans, like Kidney-Beans. Moſt of theſe People went naked, only their Heads were covered with a Piece of Cotton Linnen, as were alſo their Nudities; and ſome of them had ſhort quilted Waiſtcoats of Cotton, which ſerved them for Armour, as well as Cloathing, and would defend them againſt a Stroke of their wooden Swords: Thoſe that were naked, had the Figures of Beaſts, Birds, Caſtles, *&c.* painted on their Arms and Bodies; and on rejoicing Days, when they would be very fine, they painted their Faces red or black, or marked themſelves with long Strokes of various Colours, which made them look very deformed in the Eyes of the *Spaniards*, how agreeable ſoever they might appear to one another: They adorned their Necks, Ears and Noſes, with thin Gold Plates, and thoſe hung at their Ears ſtretched them to ſuch a prodigious Size, that the Admiral gave the Coaſt of *Honduras* the Name of *De las Orejas*, or the Country of Ears.

The Admiral ſailed along this Coaſt to the Eaſtward, till he came to the Cape, which he named *Gracias a Dios*, or Thanks be to God; becauſe he was no longer obliged to ſtruggle againſt the Winds and Currents; for here the Coaſt bending to the South, he continued his Voyage without any Difficulty, by the Aſſiſtance of Eaſterly Trade Winds. The Admiral found the People here very jealous

that

that the *Spaniards* had ſome Deſign upon their Country, and they came down armed, in great Numbers, with Bows and Arrows, Spears and Clubs, as if they intended to diſpute their landing: But afterwards, finding the *Spaniards* only wanted to trade with them, they became more tractable, and exchanged Cotton Linnen, and Plates of Gold, for ſome *European* Toys. But, it happen'd, one of the Admiral's People taking out a Pen and Ink, and beginning to write down his Obſervations of the People and Country, the Natives immediately fled, and left all the Things behind them they had received of the *Spaniards*: From whence the Admiral conceived they thought they ſhould be bewitched, if they converſed any longer with his Men. It is remarkable alſo, that here the *Spaniards* met with ſeveral dead Bodies embalmed, and wrapped in Cotton Sheets, and ſo perfectly dry, that they had no Manner of ill Scent. Theſe were repoſited in Tombs, in a large wooden Houſe or Temple, and over each Tomb was laid a Board, with the Figures of Beaſts carved on it; and, on ſome, the Figures of the Perſons deceaſed, adorned with Beads, Gold Plates, *&c.*

Among other Creatures that the Country here produced, was a Kind of Cat of a greeniſh Colour, as big as a ſmall Greyhound, but a longer Tail; which is ſo ſtrong, that whatſoever they clap it about, is as it were tied with a Rope. Theſe run about the Trees like Squirrels, leaping from one to the other; and when they leap, they do not only hold Fruit with their Claws, but their Tail too, by which they often hang, either to reſt them, or ſport.

Continuing their Voyage, and being come to a River called *Guaiga*, the Admiral commanded the Boats to go aſhore; which, as they were doing, they ſaw above one hundred *Indians* on the Strand, who aſſaulted them furiouſly, running up to the Middle into the Water, brandiſhing their Spears, blowing Horns, and beating a Drum in Warlike Manner, to defend their Country, throwing the Salt Water towards the Chriſtians, chewing Herbs, and ſpurting it towards them. Our Men not ſtirring, endeavoured to appeaſe them, as they did, for at laſt they drew near to exchange the Gold Plates they had about their Necks,

Necks, ſome for two, and ſome for three Horſe Bells; by which Means we got ſixteen Gold Plates, with one hundred and fifty Ducats.

On the ſecond of *November*, the Admiral continuing his Voyage to the Eaſtward, came to a large commodious Harbour, to which he gave the Name of *Porto Bello*, which it retains to this Day: It lies in the Province of *Terra-firma Proper*, in ten Degrees North Latitude. Here he met with a great many *Indian* Houſes well inhabited; and, on the Iſlands near the Shore, he found a great deal of *Indian* Corn, and other Refreſhments; from whence he gave thoſe Iſlands the Name of the *Baſtimento's*. or the Iſlands of Proviſion. Here the Admiral, underſtanding that there were Gold Mines in the Province of *Veragua*, which lies to the Weſtward of *Terra-firma*, he returned again to that Coaſt.

Between *Porto Bello* and *Veragua*, they met with contrary and boiſterous Winds, attended with ſuch Thunder and Lightening, that the Men durſt not open their Eyes, the Ships ſeemed to be juſt ſinking, and the Sky to come down. Sometimes the Thunder was ſo continued, that it was concluded ſome Ship fired its Cannon to deſire Aſſiſtance. Another Time there would fall ſuch Storms of Rain, that it would laſt violently for two or three Days, inſomuch that it looked like another univerſal Deluge.

Beſides all theſe Terrors, there occurred another no leſs dangerous and wonderful, which was a Spout ariſing from the Sea, on *Tueſday* the 13th of *December*; which, if they had not diſſolved by ſaying the Goſpel of St. *John*, it had certainly ſunk whatſoever it fell upon; for, as has been ſaid, it draws the Water up to the Clouds like a Pillar, and thicker than a Butt, twiſting it about like a Whirlwind. The Ships being now almoſt ſhattered to Pieces with the Tempeſt, and the Men quite ſpent with Labour, a Day or two's Calm gave them ſome Reſpite, and brought ſuch Multitudes of Sharks about the Ships, that they were dreadful to behold; which, if they lay hold of a Man's Arm or Leg, cut it off like a Razor, for they have two Rows of Teeth in the Manner of a Saw. A Tortoiſe was taken out of the Belly of one

one of theſe Sharks, and it afterwards liv'd aboard the Ship; but out of another was taken the whole Head of one of his own Kind, we having cut it off and thrown it into the Water, as not good to eat, no more than they are themſelves, and that Shark had ſwallowed it, and to us it ſeemed contrary to Reaſon, that one Creature ſhould ſwallow the Head of another of its own Bigneſs, though it is not to be admired, becauſe their Mouth reaches almoſt to their Belly, and the Head is ſhaped like an Olive.

At *Veragua* they found a plentiful Country, the Fields in ſome Places, for ſix Leagues together, being full of Maize, or *Indian* Corn: They obſerved that the Inhabitants here, when they talked to one another, or eat, turned their Backs to each other, and that they were always chewing a dry Herb, and ſometimes they took a Sort of Powder with it; they were likewiſe very jealous of their Women: They caught Pilchards, and other ſmall Fiſh, by raiſing a Partition of Palm Tree Leaves, two Yards high, in the Middle of their Canoes from Stem to Stem, and then plying about the Rivers, they make a Noiſe and beat the Shore with their Oars; on which the Pilchards, in their Fright, leap up, and ſtriking the Partition, fall down into the Canoe: They had a Sort of red and white Wine, made of Maize, mixed with Spice, and likewiſe another Wine made of the Pith of a Sort of Palm Trees.

The Admiral being reſolved to ſettle a Colony here, ten or twelve Houſes were built and thatched, and ſtocked with all Sorts of Proviſions, Ammunitions, *&c.* the Admiral's Brother and eighty Men being appointed to remain there; but underſtanding that *Quibio*, the Cacique of the Place, intended to ſet Fire to the Houſes, and deſtroy the Men, becauſe all the *Indians* were againſt their ſettling there, it was therefore thought proper to make him Priſoner with all their chief Men, and ſend them into *Spain:* The Admiral's Brother, therefore, with a few Men, went to his Houſe, ſeizing him and thirty more, (among which were his Wives and Children) without any Reſiſtance; but in carrying him down the River *Veragua*, *Quibio* the Cacique complaining that his Hands were too hard bound, one of the

Sailors

Sailors looſed him from the Seat of the Boat, to which he was tied, and held the Rope in his Hand; but *Quibio* obſerving he did not mind him, threw himſelf into the Water with ſo much Force, that the Sailor was obliged to let go the Rope, leſt he might pull him after. It being Night, they could not then diſtinguiſh whether he got to Shore, though they afterwards learnt he got ſafe there.

The Admiral now reſolving to return to *Hiſpaniola*, ſailed out of the River with great Difficulty, becauſe of the Shallowneſs of the Water, and lay upon the Coaſt, waiting for a fair Wind; which, when *Quibio* and the *Indians* perceived, knowing the Ships could not then come up the River again, they fell on the Colony with great Shouts, caſting Javelins at thoſe they ſaw, and at the very Houſes, which being only covered with Palm Tree Leaves, were eaſily pierced through; whereby one Man was killed, and ſeveral wounded; but the Admiral's Brother ſallying out, and encouraging his Men, they beat the *Indians* back into the Woods.

A Boat that the Admiral had ſent to take in freſh Water, was likewiſe attacked by them on a ſudden, and all the Men to the Number of twelve kill'd, except one, who made his Eſcape by diving under Water till he got to Shore.

The Admiral, in the mean Time, waited in great Suſpenſe at the Mouth of the River, wondering what had detained his Boat; but the Weather was ſo bad, that he could not by any Means ſend another to enquire about that, or to get any News from the Colony; and, to add to his Trouble, the Sons and Kindred of *Quibio*, whom they kept Priſoners on board the Ship *Bermuda*, to carry them to *Spain*, found Means to eſcape thus: At Night they were kept under Hatches, and the Scuttle being ſo high that they could not reach it, the Watch forgot to faſten it with a Chain as they uſed to do, eſpecially becauſe ſome Seamen lay upon it. The Priſoners therefore, one Night, gathering the Stones that were in the Hold under the Scuttle, and raiſing themſelves on them, ſet their Shoulders againſt it, and forced it open, tumbling thoſe that lay on it over and over, and ſome of the principal Men leaping out, caſt themſelves into the

Sea;

Sea. The Seamen taking the Alarm, many of them could not get out; and the Scuttle being faſtened with the Chain, better Care was taken; but thoſe that remained, in Deſpair becauſe they could not get off with their Companions, hanged themſelves with the Ropes they could come at, and ſo were found the next Morning, their Feet and Knees dragging upon the Bottom of the Hold, the Place not being high enough for them to hang, without touching; ſo that all the Priſoners aboard that Ship eſcaped or died. Tho' this Loſs was not material to the Ships, yet, beſides that, it encreaſed the Number of Misfortunes, it was feared it might be hurtful to thoſe aſhore: Becauſe *Quibo* would willingly have made Peace with them, to get his Children, and now there being no Hoſtage left, there was cauſe to ſuſpect he would make War with the greater Fury. Being thus afflicted amidſt ſo many Troubles and Diſaſters, having nothing to truſt to but our Anchors and Cables, without knowing any Thing from Shore, there wanted not thoſe who ſaid, that ſince thoſe *Indians*, only to obtain their Liberty, had ventured to leap into the Sea above a League from Shore, they, to ſave themſelves, and ſo many more, would be content to ſwim aſhore, provided that Boat which remained would carry them as far as where the Waves did not break. I ſay one Boat remained, which was that of the Ship *Bermuda*, for that of the *Biſcaina* we ſaid before was loſt in the Fray, ſo that they had only that one Boat at preſent among the three Ships. The Admiral hearing theſe Seamen's honeſt Propoſal, allowed of it, and ſo the Boat carried them within a Muſket-ſhot of the Land, not being able to go nearer without great Danger, becauſe of the great Waves that broke on it. There one *Peter de Ledeſma*, a Pilot of *Seville*, threw himſelf into the Water, and with a good Heart got to Shore, where he learnt the Condition our Men were in, and how they all unanimouſly ſaid they would not upon any Account remain there in that forlorn Condition, and therefore deſired the Admiral not to ſail till he had taken them off, for to leave them there was ſacrificing of them.

The Admiral underſtanding the Rout, the Confuſion, and Deſpair thoſe aſhore were in, he reſolved to ſtay and bring them off, though not without great Danger, becauſe his Ships lay in an open Road, out of all Shelter, and without Hopes of eſcaping, had the Weather grown more boiſterous. But it pleaſed GOD in eight Days he continued there, the Weather mended ſo much, that thoſe aſhore with their Boat, and large Canoes faſt bound together, that they might not overſet, began to gather their Goods; and every one ſtriving to be none of the laſt, they uſed ſuch Diligence, that in two Days nothing was left aſhore but the Hulk of the Ship, which, by Reaſon of the Worms, was unfit for Service.

The Admiral ſet Sail with the three remaining Ships, in a miſerable ſhatter'd Condition, and arriv'd again at *Porto Bello*; where he was forced to leave another of his Ships, ſhe was ſo diſabled by the tempeſtuous Weather they had on this Coaſt, or the Worm; from *Porto Bello*, he directed his Courſe North, 'till he made the great Iſland of *Cuba*, and on *Midſummer-day* they arrived at *Jamaica*, their Ships ſo leaky, that they found it almoſt impoſſible to keep them above Water till they got to Shore. Whereupon they run them both a-ground in a ſmall Creek cloſe together, about a Muſket-ſhot from the Land, where they ſupported and ſhored up the Ships with Timber, and liv'd on board them above a Year, trafficking with the Country People for Proviſions; but they did not care to lie on Shore, for fear of being ſurprized and deſtroyed by the Natives, if any Quarrel ſhould happen between them and the Spaniards.

In the mean Time, the Admiral ſent over ſome of his Crew to *Hiſpaniola*, in open Canoes, to get Ships to carry him and his Company off. This was a very hazardous Enterprize; for theſe Canoes, which are only ſmall Boats made out of Trunks of Trees, were to paſs the Ocean about fifty Leagues, and are in Danger of being overſet by every little Storm, being, when loaded, not more than a Span above the Water, However, they arrived ſafe at *Hiſpaniola*; but the Governor, who was an Enemy to the Admiral, delay'd

ſending

ſending him Ships ſo long, that his People mutinied, and one half of them left him, and went on Shore on the Iſland, where they committed great Outrages, 'till the Admiral fought them, and reduced them to their Duty by Force, many of the *Spaniards* being killed on both Sides in the Engagement. At length, the Admiral's People having bought and fitted out a Ship, at his Charge, in the Iſland of *Hiſpaniola* (in which they had no Aſſiſtance from the Governor) they came back to *Jamaica*, and brought the Admiral off, after he had ſpent above a Year there in great Diſtreſs, and lain moſt of the Time Bed-rid with the Gout. The Admiral arrived at St. *Domingo*, in *Hiſpaniola*, the 13th of *Auguſt*, 1504; and, having ſettled his Affairs in that Iſland, where he had a good Eſtate, and Effects of Value, he returned to *Spain*, and arrived at the Port of St. *Lucar de Barrameda*, and thence to *Sevil*, where the Admiral took ſome Reſt after the Fatigues he had gone through; and in *May* 1505, ſet out for the Catholic King's Court, for the glorious Queen *Iſabel* had the Year before exchang'd this Life for a better, which was no ſmall Trouble to the Admiral, ſhe having always favoured and ſupported him, whereas, the Catholick King had proved unkind, and averſe to his Affairs; which plainly appeared by the Reception he gave him; for though to Appearance he ſhow'd him a favourable Aſpect, and pretended to reſtore him to his full Power, yet he would have ſtripped him of all he had, had not Shame hindered him; which, as has been ſaid, has great Power over noble Spirits, and the King himſelf, and Queen, had both engaged their Faith to him when he went upon his laſt Voyage. But the *Indies* daily more and more diſcovering what they were like to be; and the King perceiving how great a Share fell to the Admiral, by Virtue of the Articles granted him, he ſtrove to have the abſolute Dominion in himſelf, and to diſpoſe of all thoſe Employments which belonged to the Admiral, according to his own Will and Pleaſure. Hereupon he began to propoſe new Terms to him by way of Equivalent, which God would not permit to take Effect; becauſe juſt then King *Philip* the firſt came

to reign in *Spain*, and at the Time his Catholick Majeſty went from *Valladolid* to meet him, the Admiral much oppreſſed with the Gout, and troubled to ſee himſelf put by his Right, other Diſtempers coming on him, gave up his Soul to God upon *Aſcenſion-day*, being the 20th of *May* 1506, at the aforeſaid City of *Valladolid*, having devoutly received all the Sacraments of the Church, and ſaid theſe Words laſt, *Into thy Hands, O Lord, I commend my Spirit*; which through his infinite Mercy we do not queſtion but he has received into his Glory: To which may he admit us with him.

His Body was afterwards conveyed to *Sevil*, and there by the Catholick King's Order magnificently buried in the Cathedral, and an Epitaph in *Spaniſh* cut on his Tomb, in Remembrance of his renowned Actions, and Diſcovery of the *Indies*.

The Words are theſe,

A CASTILIA, YA LEON,
NUEVO MUNDO DIO COLON.

That is,

COLUMBUS *gave* CASTILE *and* LEON
a NEW WORLD.

Words well worth obſerving, becauſe the like cannot be found either among the Antients or Moderns.

From this Relation it appears, that the Admiral in Perſon diſcovered the *Lucayo's*, or *Bahama* Iſlands, the great Iſlands of *Cuba*, *Hiſpaniola*, and *Porto-Rico*, with ſeveral of the *Caribbee* Iſlands; that he afterwards diſcovered the Countries of *Paria* and *Guiana*, near the Mouth of the River *Oroonoko*, in *South-America*, and the Iſland of *Trinity*, which lies in ten Degrees North Latitude, before the Mouth of the ſaid River *Oroonoko*; that he alſo diſcovered, *Yucatan*,

tan, a Province of *Mexico*; the Bay of *Honduras*, and all that Coaſt which runs South-Eaſt from thence, as far as *Porto-Bello*, and the River or Gulph of *Darien*, and received ſome Intelligence of that vaſt Ocean, which has ſince obtained the Name of the *South-Seas*: So that all thoſe who afterwards extended the Diſcoveries of the Spaniards in the New World, only improved what the great *Columbus* had begun; and yet we find one of them, *viz. Americus Veſputius*, had the good Fortune to give his Name to that vaſt Continent, being from him called *America*.

F I N I S.

A N

ACCOUNT

OF THE

Iſland *FORMOSA*,

By GEORGE CANDIDIUS, *Miniſter of the Word of* God *in that Iſland.*

THIS Iſland is ſituate in the 22d Degree of Northern Latitude, its Circumference one hundred and thirty Leagues: It is very populous, and full of large and fair Villages, having no peculiar Language of their own, neither are the Inhabitants governed by any King or Prince, whom they acknowledge for their Sovereign, being conſtantly at War with one another. The Country abounds both in Cattle and Fiſh: There are alſo ſeveral Kinds of wild Beaſts here, among the reſt one with Horns like a Stag, called *Olavaugh* by the Inhabitants, ſome Tygers, and a certain Creature called

called by them *Tinney*, not unlike a Bear, but much bigger; its Skin is in high Eſteem among them.

The Country is very fertile, but is not much cultivated; moſt of their Trees grow wild, though there are ſome few that are planted and bear Fruits: There is alſo ſome Ginger and Cinamon there; and many are of Opinion that this Iſle is not deſtitute of Gold and Silver Mines.

Thus much of the Country in general: The Manners and Cuſtoms of all the Inhabitants, I will not pretend to enlarge upon at this Time, as being unknown hitherto, but will confine myſelf to thoſe whoſe Manners, Language, Cuſtoms and Religion, I am ſatisfied in, by my own Experience.

The Inhabitants appear at firſt Sight to be very wild and barbarous, the Men very tall and ſtrong limbed, beyond the Size of other Men; they are of a dark brown Complexion, like moſt of the other *Indians*; they go naked in Summer; their Women are low of Stature, but very ſtrong and fat; their Complexion inclining more to an Olive Colour: They wear Cloaths, and don't diſcover their Nakedneſs, unleſs when they waſh themſelves, which they do conſtantly twice a Day in warm Water.

This Nation is very good-natur'd, affable and faithful; they have always been courteous to us; they are not addicted to ſtealing, but if they meet with any ſtolen Goods they will not reſt ſatisfied till they have ſeen it reſtored to the right Owners.

Their chief Buſineſs is Agriculture; they ſow Rice, and though they have Plenty of very rich Grounds, yet they don't cultivate any more than they think will juſt ſuffice for their preſent Maintenance, ſo that ſometimes they happen to fall ſhort. The Women are to cultivate the Ground, and to do all the ſervile Labour; they uſe neither Horſe, Oxen, nor Plough: If the Rice happens to come up thicker in one Place than in another, they tranſplant it, which is not performed without a great deal of Labour and Pains: They know nothing of Scythes or Sickles, but make Uſe of an Inſtrument like a Knife, wherewith they cut their Corn Halm by Halm; neither do they threſh it,

but

but the Women hang in the Evening two or three ſmall Bundles over the Fire to dry, and riſe early in the Morning to ſtamp it for their Uſe the next Day, and this they repeat every Day throughout the Year. They ſow likewiſe another Seed not unlike our Beans; they plant Ginger, Sugar, Rice, and Water Lemons, and ſome other Fruits unknown to us.

The Men lead generally an idle Life, eſpecially the young ones, from the Age of eighteen till twenty-four; the old ones of fifty and ſixty Years are the only Perſons who are abroad with their Wives in the Fields, where they have ſmall Huts, in which they ſleep and dwell, and come ſcarce once in two Months to the Village.

Man and Wife do never habit here in one Houſe, but each live in a Houſe by themſelves: The Wife always eats, drinks, and ſleeps in her own Habitation, whither the Huſband has the Privilege to come in the Night-time; but he muſt be careful either not to come before they are all in Bed, or if he does come before, he muſt not come near the Fire to be ſeen by any Body, but to Bed he ſneaks; and if he wants any Thing, he dares not call, but by coughing or otherwiſe gives the Signal to his Wife, who ſteals to him as ſoon as the reſt of the Family are gone to ſleep. They make Uſe of no Pillows; their Bolſters are Pieces of Wood, and their under Beds the Skins of Stags or Deers. The next Morning, before Break of Day, the Huſband muſt retire again, and not appear near the Houſe in the Day-time, unleſs he is ſure his Wife is at Home alone, and then he muſt not venture in without deſiring firſt Admittance: If the Woman is in a good Humour, ſhe gives him Leave; if not, away he goes again. The Wife has her own Grounds and Family, and ſo has the Man; the Man does not provide for her, nor ſhe for him. The Children are kept by the Mothers till they are three Years old, and then they are ſent Home to the Father. But one Thing is very remarkable in them, that their Wives are forbidden to bring forth any live Children, till they are thirty-ſix or thirty-ſeven Years of Age; wherefore they are obliged to kill their Children in the Womb, which they do thus: One

of

of their Prieſteſſes is called in, who lays the Woman with Child upon a Bed, and ſqueezes her ſo long, till the Child is forced thus from her, which puts them into more violent Pains, than if they brought forth a Child according to the regular Courſe of Nature. They declare they do this, not for Want of Tenderneſs to them, but becauſe they are forc'd to it by their Prieſteſſes, who perſuade them that they cannot commit a greater Crime, than to bring Children into the World before the Age of thirty-ſix; by which Means many thouſands are loſt in a Year. I remember a certain Woman there, who told me herſelf, that ſhe had thus been forced to miſcarry ſixteen ſeveral Times, and ſhe was then big with the ſeventeenth, which ſhe promiſed ſhe would bring forth alive. When they are arrived to the Age of thirty-ſix or thirty-ſeven, they then firſt begin to bring Children into the World, as our Women do, and from that Age till fifty: And alſo from this Age of thirty-ſix, the Man and Wife cohabit together in the ſame Houſe, though at the ſame Time they are but ſeldom at Home, but live for the moſt Part abroad in the Fields, where they have little Huts made on Purpoſe to ſleep in.

All other Nations, as far as ever I knew, make Uſe of Men for their Prieſts, to ſacrifice and attend the other Rites belonging to their Divine Worſhip: Theſe People are the only one who have Women for their Prieſteſſes, whom they call *Inibs*. Their publick Service is performed by praying and ſacrificing; the laſt is performed with the Slaughter of a great Number of Hogs, by offering Rice and ſtrong Liquor in the Temples to their Gods; after which, one or two of their Prieſteſſes makes a long Oration to them, and whilſt they are talking, turn the Eyes in their Heads, and make many Exclamations, till their Gods (as they ſay) appear to them; at which Time they fall down upon the Floor in an Extaſy, like dead: Several Perſons are employed to recover them; which being done, at laſt they tremble as if they were in the greateſt Agony in the World, whilſt the People ſend forth miſerable Cries and Lamentations. After they have continued this for an Hour, the Prieſteſſes get on the Top of the Temple, and ſtrip themſelves ſtark naked there in the Preſence of the whole Congregation, who

are for the moſt Part Women: They ſhew their Nakedneſs to the Gods, pointing with their Fingers at, and clapping with their Hands upon it, whilſt they addreſs their Prayers to them in a long and tedious Harangue: The whole Ceremony is concluded with taking a large Doſe of their ſtrong Liquor. Theſe *Inibs*, or Prieſteſſes, are alſo ſent for ſometimes into private Houſes, where they perform certain Ceremonies belonging to their Function; they alſo pretend to baniſh the Devil, and to foretell Things to come: When they baniſh the Devil, they do it with their *Japoneſe* Scymeters, with a hideous Clamour, and doleful Noiſe, by which they ſay they frighten the Devil, who drowns himſelf in the next River.

The Paſtime of the Men is hunting and fighting: When they go Abroad a fighting, it is performed in the following Manner: If a Difference happens betwixt two or more Cantons, they denounce War to one another; which done, twenty or thirty join in Company, or more if they pleaſe, and row in one of their Boats near to the Place where they hope to meet with the Enemy, and ſtay there till Night, (for it is to be obſerved that their Wars are carried on by Treachery only) then they ſearch the Fields thereabouts, to ſee whether they can ſurprize ſome of them in their Field Cottages; where, as we ſaid before, thoſe advanced in Years ſleep moſt commonly: If they meet with any, they are ſure to kill them immediately, without any Reſpect to Age or Sex; afterwards they cut off their Heads, Arms and Legs; nay, ſometimes they cut the whole Carcaſe in Pieces, that every one may have a Share to carry Home to his Village: If they are in Haſte to get off, they take only the Head along with them; and if purſued, are ſometimes contented with the Hair, as a Token of Victory. If they happen to meet with no Body in the Field, they make up to the next Village, where they ſurprize the firſt Houſe they meet with, kill all that comes before them, and away they go with the Heads, Arms and Legs, before the Village can be raiſed; for they have a certain Signal to alarm the reſt, when an Enemy is at Hand, ſo that if they don't retire ſpeedily, they often pay for it with their Lives, before they can

can ſave themſelves by Flight. If they think themſelves ſtrong enough, they are the firſt who ſound the Alarm in the Village, to draw the Enemy into the open Field, where they fight it out ſtoutly, till one Party is worſted, which is commonly done as ſoon as a few Men are killed; for the Loſs of a Man is looked upon with them, as much as among us *Europeans*, the Loſs of an Army is.

After they have brought Home one or more Heads of their Enemies, nay if it be but a handful of Hair upon a Lance, they enter their Village in Triumph. The Head they fix on a Pike, which is thus expoſed to the Sight of all the Inhabitants, who dance and ſing to the Praiſe of their Gods; and wherever they paſs by, they are entertained with ſtrong Liquor. Afterwards the Head is carried to the Temple belonging to the Family of him who has gained the Victory, (for to ſixteen or eighteen Families there appertains a Temple, where all the young Folk ſleep at Nights,) there it is boiled all to Rags; the Bones are dry'd again, and dipped afterwards in ſtrong Liquors: They offer Sacrifices of Hogs to their Idols, and feaſt for fourteen Days without Intermiſſion. Theſe Heads, Weapons, Arms, or Legs of their ſlain Enemies, are as much eſteem'd among them, as in *Europe* Gold, Silver, and precious Stones. If a Fire happens to break out in one of their Houſes, they leave all, and take Care to ſave ſuch a Head; for he that can boaſt of ſuch a Victory, is reſpected by all, ſo that for the fourteen Days after, ſcarce any Body dares to approach him.

All theſe Villages in general acknowledge no Head, no more than each of them in particular is governed by any ſuperior Power. The only Thing which has any Reſemblance to a Civil State, is a Council of twelve Men; theſe are changed every two Years; they muſt be all of the ſame Age, and above forty Years old; and though they are ignorant of the Computation of Time, as uſed among us, yet they have certain Marks, whereby to diſtinguiſh their Ages. After the Expiration of the Term of two Years, thoſe who have been Members of this Council, cauſe ſome of their Hair to be pulled out on the Crown, and below both

the Temples, as a Token that they have born this Office. Their Authority is kept within very narrow Bounds, for they have no Authority of making a deciſive Decree, but in Matters of any Moment they are obliged to ſummon the whole Village to appear in a Temple, where they propoſe the Matter to the People, and endeavour with various Arguments (of which they treat with a great deal of Eloquence, even to Admiration) to perſuade them to what has been conſulted in the Council before-hand: If they accept of it, it is valid; if not, it has no Force. Their chief Authority conſiſts in this, *viz.* when their Prieſteſſes (for Prieſts they have none) think fit to enjoin any Thing to appeaſe the Anger of their Gods, to ſee it put in Execution, and to puniſh the Tranſgreſſors: But this Puniſhment does not extend to Impriſonment, much leſs to Death, but only to an inconſiderable Fine, perhaps of one of their Suits of Cloaths, of a Waiſtcoat, a Buck-ſkin, a ſmall Quantity of Rice, or a certain Meaſure of their ſtrongeſt Liquor. There is a certain Time in the Year appointed for the Men to go quite naked, elſe, they ſay, the Rice will not thrive for Want of Rain. Now, if it happens that a Member of this Council meets any one during that Time, who appears in his Cloaths, he has a Power to take them away, or to make him pay a Fine of a Buck-ſkin, or ſuch-like; for which Purpoſe they watch them towards the Evenings, and in the Mornings, in thoſe Places where they muſt needs paſs, going to and coming from the Village. Of this I ſaw once an Inſtance myſelf; for as I was coming one Day from the Village of *Sincan* to the Village of *Mattan*, I met with ſome who were returning Home out of the Fields: One of them having ſome Cloaths about him, and ſeeing at a good Diſtance ſome of thoſe Counſellors, deſired me to take his Cloaths till we were paſt them; which I accordingly did. As we came near to them, one was very preſſing with me to tell him to whom thoſe Cloaths I carried belonged; which I refuſed to tell, and ſo we went into the Village, where I reſtored them to the Owner, who was very thankful to me.

At certain Times of the Year they are allowed to wear Cloaths, but nothing made of Silk, unleſs they will run the Hazard of having it taken away by theſe Counſellors. If their Females are exceſſive in their Cloaths upon their Feſtivals, they have Power to puniſh them, or to cut their Cloaths in Pieces. Theſe Counſellors are alſo confined to certain Rules of Abſtinency; when the Rice begins to ripen, they muſt not drink to any Exceſs. They muſt not eat any Suet or Fat; for elſe, as they pretend, the Deer and wild Boars would conſume the Rice. If they happen to tranſgreſs in any of theſe Points, they are deſpiſed by the reſt.

There is no Puniſhment appointed here for Thieving, Fornication, Adultery, or Murder: In theſe Caſes every one is his own Judge, and gets the beſt Satisfaction he can. If any Thing be ſtolen, and the Thief diſcovered, he that has loſt his Goods, goes with his Friends to the other's Houſe, where he takes as much as he judges to be an Equivalent for what he has been robbed of; if the Thief makes any Reſiſtance, they fetch it out by Force. So, if any one finds another Man to have an amorous Commerce with his Wife, he makes himſelf Amends, by taking two or three of his Hogs. If any one be killed, the Thing is made up among the Friends of both Parties, who are commonly ſatisfied with ſome Hogs or Buck-ſkins, to diſcharge him who has committed the Fact.

Though there be no ſuch Thing as different Degrees of Dignity among them; nay, though their Language does not ſo much as afford a Word by which you might expreſs what is called by us *Maſter* or *Servant*, they are nevertheleſs not void of all Reſpect to one another: And it is very obſervable that they don't meaſure their Eſteem by Riches, but by the Age. If a young Man meets another pretty well advanced in Years, he goes out of his Way, and turns his Back to him till he be paſſed by; nay, if they happen to talk with one another, the younger will be ſure not to turn about till they have done. If an aged Perſon bids a young one to do a certain Thing, he never dares to refuſe it, though it were to go two or three Leagues. When old and young

People

People are mixed in Company, the latter never attempt to ſpeak; and at a Feaſt thoſe advanced in Age are always firſt ſerved.

Their Men are not at their own Liberty to marry when they pleaſe, no Man being allowed to marry before he comes to the Age of twenty-one. And though they have no certain Computation of Time, yet they have a Way of putting ſuch as are born in the ſame Year in one Claſs, which they call in their Tongue *Saar Caſſiuwang*; ſo that thoſe who don't belong to the ſame *Caſſiuwang*, muſt not marry with the reſt.

They have a Cuſtom of clipping the Hair of young People up to the Ears, till they are ſixteen or ſeventeen Years old; after which Time they give it full Liberty to grow, as the *Chineſe* do; and when it is come to a certain Length, they judge them fit for Marriage: But their Women are not reſtrained to any certain Time, but may marry when they are come to Maturity. Their Courtſhips they perform in the following Manner: If a young Man fancies a young Woman, he ſends his Mother, Aunt, Siſter, or ſome other Friend, to his Sweetheart's Habitation, who bring along with them the Preſents uſually offered upon ſuch Occaſions, to obtain her Parents or Friends Conſent; if they accept of them, the Buſineſs is done, and the young Man has free Admittance the next Night, without any further Ceremony.

Theſe Preſents differ in Value, according to the Perſons that give them: The richer Sort give commonly ſeven or eight Coats, with as many Shirts, three or four hundred Arm-rings twiſted, of Reed or Canes; ten or twelve other Rings, which they wear on their Fingers; theſe are made either of Metal or white Hartſhorn, four or five Inches in Circumference, and tied to their Fingers with red Dog's Hair; four or five Girdles made of coarſe Linnen Cloth, ten or twelve Waiſtcoats made of Dog's Hair, called in their Language *Etharno*, twenty or thirty *Chineſe* Waiſtcoats, each of which coſts about half a Florin, a Bundle of Dog's Hair, as much as a Man is able to carry, which is a Commodity mightily eſteemed among them, a Cap made in the Form

Form of a Miter, made of Straw and Dog's Hair, very artificially twiſted together, and four or five Pair of Breeches of Buck-ſkin: All which together, do not amount to above the Value of ten Pounds Sterling. This is for the Rich, but the poorer Sort come off for leſs.

Their Burials differ from all other Nations; for they neither bury them, nor burn them, as moſt of the *Pagans* do throughout the *Indies*. They lay the dead Carcaſe on a Table of about three Feet high from the Ground; round about which, at a convenient Diſtance, they make a moderate Fire, in order to dry by Degrees the Moiſture of the Corpſe: In the mean while they feaſt and dance, kill abundance of Hogs, and drink briſkly of their ſtrong Liquor. The Women have a very odd Way of dancing at this Time; for they take ſeveral Trunks of Trees hollowed out within; theſe they lay before the Mourning-Houſe, and four or five of them at a Time, (after they have been ſummoned together by Beat of Drum, made likewiſe of the Trunk of a hollow Tree) jumping upon it with their Backs turned to one another, they make a ſtrange Sort of a Noiſe, which ſerves them for their beſt Diverſion for about two Hours in a Day: This is continued ſucceſſively for nine Days; when the Corpſe being well dry'd, and waſh'd in the mean Time once a Day, it is wrapped up in Mats, and being laid up upon a pretty high Stage in one Corner of the Houſe erected for that Purpoſe, it continues there three whole Years; after which they take the Remnants, which are nothing but the Bones, and bury them in a certain Place of the Houſe.

I cannot forbear to mention here, how I once ſaw them myſelf handle one of their ſick Men, in the Canton of *Theoſany*: This Man being very ill, and complaining of a moſt violent Pain all over his Body, they ty'd a Rope about his Neck, and ſo drawing him up quite to the Cieling, let him fall again all on a ſudden to haſten his Death.

They are not acquainted with any Thing like Books or Writing, all that they know of this Kind being tranſmitted to them from their Anceſtors by Tradition. They believe the Immortality of the Soul; which, queſtionleſs, has introduced

introduced this Cuſtom among them, that as ſoon as any Perſon dies, they erect a ſmall Hut before the Entrance of the Houſe, adorned with green Boughs and Flags; in the Middle of it they put a Veſſel full of fair Water, with a Cup by it to fill it out; this is intended to purify the Soul from all Excrements: This is practiſed by every Body, but there is not one in a hundred who can give a Reaſon for it, unleſs it be a few of the antient and moſt underſtanding among them, who did alledge this Cuſtom for their Opinion of the Immortality of the Soul to me; and at the ſame Time they affirmed to me, that it was a very antient Tradition among them, that ſuch as had not lived well, would be precipitated in a deep Hole, full of Dirt and Filth, where they would be forced to undergo great Torments; but that ſuch as had led a good Life, would dwell in a very pleaſant and plentiful Country. Their Opinion is, that acroſs this great Hole there is a Bridge, which the Souls muſt paſs over before they can enter into this pleaſant Country; and that when thoſe that have not lived well, are likewiſe to paſs that Way, the ſaid Bridge gives a Turn, and precipitates them into the Hole. The Sins which they ſuppoſe to deſerve this Puniſhment, are far different from what is believed among Chriſtians as to this Point, as having not the leaſt Reference to the Ten Commandments; they conſiſt only in a Neglect of their Superſtitions, ſuch as to have neglected the certain Seaſons of the Year, when they were to go naked, or to abſtain from wearing of Silk; to have brought forth live Children before the Age of thirty-ſix; to have catched Fiſh or Oyſters out of Seaſon; to have deſpiſed the Obſervations made of the flying of the Birds, and ſuch like; though at the ſame Time they don't encourage Lyes, Murder or Thefts; yet they are not accounted Mortal Sins. When they are to confirm any Thing by a ſolemn Oath, they break a Piece of Straw Stalk betwixt them, which is looked upon as a Thing ſo ſacred, that they ſeldom forfeit it. Drunkenneſs, as well as Fornication, is accounted no Sin neither in Men or Women, though as to the laſt they are very cautious not to do

it

it in publick. And it is worth Obſervation, that a Stranger will find it a hard Taſk to perſuade a Woman here to lie with him; though at the ſame Time they are of Opinion (as I have heard them confeſs myſelf) that their Gods take a great deal of Pleaſure in Fornication; for which Reaſon it is, that Parents never take any Notice of it in their Children, but rather ſport with it, and look upon it as a Thing allowed to young People, they being not to marry till they have attained to the 21ſt Year of their Age.

They know nothing of the Reſurrection of the Body: Inſtead of one God, they acknowledge many, unto whom they offer their Prayers and Sacrifices. One of theſe Gods is called *Tamagiſanbach*, his Reſidence being in the South: He is reputed to make them handſome and vigorous: His Spouſe, they ſay, dwells in the Eaſt, being called *Taxanopada*. When a Storm of Thunder ariſes in the Eaſt, they ſay this Goddeſs is attending her Huſband, becauſe he ſends not Rain; and the Huſband being over perſuaded by his Spouſe, furniſhes them with wet Weather. Theſe are the two Favourite Gods of the Women. They have alſo another, whoſe Reſidence being in the North, is very hurtful to Mankind: They ſay, that after the God *Tamigiſanbach* has made them beautiful, this God renders them deformed by the *French* Pox, and ſuch-like Diſtempers; wherefore they adore him, for Fear he ſhould hurt them, and offer their Sacrifices to *Tamigiſanchan*, to bridle his Malice, he being the Supreme Governor of the reſt. They pray likewiſe to two other Gods, as often as they go into the War; one's Name is *Talafula*, the other's *Tapaliape*: Theſe two laſt are in greateſt Eſteem with the Men. Beſides theſe, they have ſeveral other Gods, too many to be named here.

Their Houſes are very ſtately and loſty, beyond what is to be obſerved in any other Part of the *Indies*, and are all built upon a ſmall Eminency; their Floors are of Cane; their Ornaments both within and without are the Heads of Boars and Stags; their Furniture is *Chineſe* Linnen, (which they exchange for Rice and Veniſon) Buck-ſkins, which paſs among them at the ſame Rate as Gold and Silver in *Europe*, ſome Inſtruments belonging to Agriculture, Lances,

Shields, Swords and Bows: But their beſt Ornaments were the Heads of their Enemies. Their eating Veſſels or Diſhes are all of Wood, not unlike our Hog Troughs; their Drinking Cups, ſome Earthen, ſome of Cane: All their Victuals are naſtily dreſſed, except Rice. They have neither ſet Feſtivals, nor any other Days appointed for their Devotions; beſides, that they meet at certain Times of the Year to be merry, when they dance with their Wives, who then appear in their beſt Apparel.

Their beſt Stuffs of Cloaths and other Ornaments are made of Dog's Hair, which are pulled out of the Dog's Skin, whilſt alive: Theſe they dye red, and of other Colours, and uſe them as the *Europeans* do Wooll.

F I N I S.

THE

PROCESSION of a **BRIDE** *going home to her* **HUSBAND**.

THE TRAVELS

Of his Excellency

E. YSBRANTS IDES,

Ambaſſador from the Czar *Peter* the *Great*, to the Emperor of *China*.

GIVING

A COPIOUS ACCOUNT of the *Religion*, *Government*, *Marriages*, *Dwellings*, *Diet*, *daily Occupations*, &c. of ſeveral Nations.

THE moſt illuſtrious Czars, *John* and *Peter Alexowitz*, having reſolved to ſend a ſplendid Embaſſy to the Great *Bogduichan*, or Sovereign of the famous Kingdom of *Kitai*, by *Europeans* commonly called *China*; this obliged me with a favourable Opportunity of travelling through Part of the famous, but hitherto unknown *Siberian* and *Kitaian* Countries, and informing myſelf by credible Witneſſes of the Remainder of thoſe Lands, as well as obtaining certain Knowledge of

ſeveral Things with which the World hath not been hitherto truly acquainted. For by God's paternal Providence, and the particular Favour of their Czariſh Majeſties, I obtained the great Honour of being diſpatched their Envoy to the *Chineſe* or *Kitaian* Court, furniſhed with ſufficient Credentials and other Neceſſaries.

The Preparation of my Retinue and Equipage took me up ſo much Time, that I did not ſet out before the 14th of *March*, 1692, when I went from *Moſcow* in a Slead. The Beginning of my Journey proved very uneaſy, by the violent Rain which accompanied us from *Moſcow* to *Vollogda*, and occaſioned ſuch an Inundation, that our Sleads almoſt ſwam over the remaining Ice of the Rivulets and Brooks, and deep Roads. However, by the Divine Aſſiſtance, though not without Difficulty, we reached the City of *Vollogda*, where I reſted three Days, in Expectation of better Weather, which happened according to my Wiſhes; for within two Days it froze ſo hard, and ſnow'd ſo violently, that all the Water was froze up in four and twenty Hours; ſo that we could eaſily paſs all the Rivulets and Ditches in our Sleads, without any Apprehenſion of Danger. The 22d of the ſame Month, I ſet forwards from *Vollogda* to *Suchina*, where I arrived on the 23d, and without ſtopping advanced to the City of *Great Uſtiga*, where the Rivers *Suchina* and *Irga* unite, and thereby compoſe the famous River *Dwina*; the Name of which imports a double River.

The Courſe of the *Suchina* is almoſt full North, through a fertile Country, and its Banks on each Side are adorned with well inhabited Villages, beſides *Totma*, an indifferent City, ſituated on its left Shore.

I came the 29th of *March* to *Solowitzjogda*, a very large City, inhabited by many conſiderable Merchants and curious Artificers, eſpecially in Silver, Copper, and Bone. Here are alſo a great many Salt Pits that yield vaſt Quantities of Salt.

The 1ſt of *April* we reached the Province of *Sirene*, or *Wolloſt Usgy*, whoſe Inhabitants ſpeak a Language that has not the leaſt Affinity with the *Muſcovite*, but is ſomewhat like the barbarous *Livonian* Language. The People do not

not live in Cities or Towns, but for the moſt Part in ſmall Villages, built in the large Woods. They generally live by Agriculture, except that Part of them which is employed in the Manufacture of *Grey Furs*.

This Country terminating in a great Foreſt, we were again infeſted with a violent Rain, and ſuch a Thaw, as in the Space of one Night ſwelled the Waters to that Degree, that I could not paſs them without great Difficulty. In this uneaſy Condition I remained four Days, during which Time I was obliged to ſtruggle with all the incident Inconveniencies; Our Sleads ſwam continually, and the Rivulets and Brooks on each Side of the Woods poured in upon us; ſo that, as though we had been in a Sea, we could neither proceed forwards, nor return backwards: Nor would the Ice of the great Rivers bear any longer. Notwithſtanding which, by the Help of Bridges and other proper Means, at laſt, on the 6th of *April*, I reached *Kaigorod*, an indifferent large, but very ſtrong City, on the River *Kama*.

From thence I deſigned to have ſet forwards immediately to *Solikamskoi*, the chief City of *Great Permia*, in order to proſecute my Journey to *Siberia*, over the Mountains of *Werchaturia*; but the Thaw at the End of Winter continuing, forced me to alter my Reſolution, and ſtay there ſeveral Weeks, till the opening of the River *Kama* favoured my Departure by Water.

After my Veſſel was equipped, aud the *Kama* free of the Ice, on the 23d of *April* we ſet forwards, and ſafely arrived on the 27th in the City of *Solikamskoi*.

Solikamskoi is a very fine, large, and rich City, where ſeveral very conſiderable Merchants reſide. Here are alſo many Salt-Works or Pits, and very near fifty *Saline* Springs, from twenty-five to thirty-five Ells deep; out of which great Quantities of Salt are taken and boiled, and thence ſhipped off in great Tide-Ships built for that Purpoſe; each of which will eaſily ſtow from one hundred to one hundred and twenty thouſand *Poeds*; that is, from one thouſand ſix hundred to two thouſand Ton, manned with about ſeven or eight hundred Sailors and Labourers, and furniſhed with Kitchins, Bagnio's, and all Sorts of Conveniencies. Theſe

Veſſels

Veſſels are from thirty-five to forty Ells long, and carry a Maſt; to which is fixed a Sail of thirty Fathom broad, which they make Uſe of to ſail up the River when the Wind is good; but when they go down, they only row, and that chiefly to keep the Ship's Head right, which the Rudder alone is not ſtrong enough to do. They are flat bottom'd, and have no Nails, or other Iron-Work in them, but are made entirely of Wood. They float along the *Kama* with the Tide, till it falls into the famous River *Wolga*, where they are forc'd to be towed up againſt the Tide, or ſail up if the Wind be favourable; but the Salt is unladen from *Kaſan* to *Niſna* on the *Wolga*, and at ſeveral convenient Places.

The 14th of *May* I ſet forwards from *Solikamskoi* by Water, and paſſed on the *Uſolkat*, a ſmall River about half a Mile from the City, again into the *Kama*: On which River we drove entirely out of *Europe* into *Aſia*. So on *Whitſunday* I went on Shore, and upon a high and beautiful green Hill eat my laſt Dinner in that Part of the World on the Graſs: And after I had drank a Glaſs of Wine, as a Farewell to dear *Europe*, I immediately returned on board, in order to proceed on our Voyage along the River.

Having thus entered the *Aſiatick* River *Suzawaia*, we found it far leſs agreeable than the beautiful *Kama*; which is a fine River, abounding with all Sorts of Fiſh, and from *Solikamskoi* to this Place adorned with very large Villages and Towns, ſeveral very expenſive Salt-Works, fertile Corn Grounds, fruitful Lands, ſpacious Fields, beautified with all Sorts of Flowers, Woods, *&c.* all wonderfully pleaſant: But though the Banks of the *Zawaja* which falls Weſtward into the *Kama*, are not leſs beautiful and fruitful, yet we found our paſſing this River very tedious; for by the high Water we made but a very ſmall Progreſs in ſeveral Days, being obliged to be towed along with a Line: However, at laſt, after twelve Days, and tireſome tugging againſt the Stream, we came to and touched at a pleaſant Shore on the 25th of *May*, amongſt the firſt *Siberian Tartars*, called *Wogulski*. I muſt acknowledge, that the well-peopled Countries on the Sides of this River, deſerve to be reckoned amongſt

amongſt the moſt charming in the World. And when in the Mornings or Evenings I ſtepped on Shore to divert myſelf, and went within Land towards the Hills, I every where found the moſt beautiful Flowers and Plants, which emitted a moſt agreeable fragrant Scent, and all Sorts of wild Beaſts running about in great Multitudes. But the *Wogulskian Tartars*, to which this River led us, are ſtupid Heathens, which induced me to pry more narrowly into their Religion, Manner of Living, and other Circumſtances; and for this End I went on Shore, and lodged a Night amongſt them.

Theſe are a People that have not much more to pretend to than a Human Face and Figure; they have but a very ſmall Share of Underſtanding, and in all other Particulars are very like Wolves and Dogs, for they eat all Manner of dead Carcaſes, whether of Horſes, Aſſes, Dogs or Cats, which die a natural Death; as well as Whales, Sea-Cows, Sea-Calves, or Horſes, *&c.* which are thrown upon the Shore by the Ice; nor do they take the Trouble of dreſſing theſe Meats, but devour them raw.

They make a very diſagreeable Figure all over, inſomuch that I may venture to affirm, that ſuch a ſhocking ill looked People are not to be found on the Surface of the whole Earth. Their Stature is ſhort and flat; they have broad Shoulders and Faces, flat and broad Noſes, great blubber hanging Lips, and frightful Eyes, like thoſe of the Linx. They are very brown all over; their Hair is diſhevelled, ſome of it being red or pale, but moſt of it is as black as Pitch; they have very little Beards; their Skin is brown and hard, and they are very ſwift Runners. The Roebucks which they uſe to draw their Sleads in Winter, are horned and ſhaped like Harts, but have crooked hanging Necks, like thoſe of Dromedaries; beſides which, what is obſerv'd of them is very particular, that they are as white as Snow in Winter, and greyiſh in Summer: They are fed with Moſs, which grows on the Ground in the Woods.

Theſe People are naturally robuſt, and have remarkably large Heads. Their whole Worſhip conſiſts in making an Offering once a Year; when they go in Crouds into the Woods, and kill one of each Species of the Beaſts, of all which

which they prefer the Horſe and Tyger as beſt; they flea off the Skins, hang up the Carcaſe on a Tree, and fall proſtrate on the Earth, and in their Way pray to it; after which they eat the Fleſh together, and return Home; which done, they are free from the Trouble of praying for that Year. *What Need of praying any oftner than once a Year?* ſay they. They are not able to give the leaſt Account of the Original or Import of their Faith, but only that their Forefathers did ſo, and they think good to follow their Example.

I aſked them concerning their Knowledge of GOD, and whether they did not believe that there was a God and Lord in Heaven above, that had created, preſerved and governed all Things, and gave Rain and fair Weather? To which they replied, we may very well believe that, for we ſee that the Sun and Moon, thoſe two bright Lights which we worſhip, and the Stars alſo, are in Heaven, and there is one which rules them. They would not in the leaſt hear of the Devil, becauſe he never appeared, or revealed himſelf to them. They acknowledge a Reſurrection of the Dead, but are ignorant what Sort of Rewards to expect, whether corporal or not. When any of them die, they bury the Carcaſe without any Grave Stone; and be it Man or Woman, all his or her beſt Apparel and Ornaments, beſides ſome Money, according to the Ability of the Deceaſed, are buried with the Corps, to the End that he may have ſome Cloaths on, and ſomething to ſpend at the Time of the Reſurrection. They cry over the dead Corps in a diſmal Manner, and the Huſband is obliged to continue a Widower a Year after the Death of his Wife.

They have no daily Practice of Religion, otherwiſe than that, like the *Perſians*, they worſhip the Sun and Moon, by bowing their Bodies Night and Morning; beſides which, they keep near and in their Tents Idols that hang on Trees; ſome of them are wooden Images, repreſenting Human Figures, others made of Iron, to which they ſhew ſome Reſpect: Their Tents are covered with Birch Barks ſewed together, and when they remove them, as they frequently do in Winter as well as Summer, they ſet up the Stakes round

with

with the Points together, and upon theſe they lay the Covering of the before-mentioned Bark over them, leaving a Hole at the Top for the Paſſage of the Smoke. Their Fire is made in the Middle of their Tents, round which they lie at Nights naked, both Men and Women. They lay their Children in Boxes or Cradles made of Birch Bark ſewed together, filled with Shavings of Trees, which are as ſoft as Wooll, and covered with Buck Skins.

They marry within the Degrees of Conſanguinity, without the leaſt Scruple, and buy one another's Daughters for Wives, giving for them Bucks and Hides; and, according to the Cuſtom of ſeveral Eaſtern Nations, they take as many Wives as they can keep. When they deſign a Merry-making, they ſtand in Couples oppoſite to each other, throw up one of their Legs, and mutually clap the Soles of their Feet ſo hard with their Hands, that it may be heard at a Diſtance. Inſtead of ſinging, they make a howling Noiſe like that of Bears; they neigh like Horſes, or chirrup like young Birds.

If a Dog dies, that in Huntiug or any other Way has been ſerviceable to them, they erect in Honour of him, a ſmall wooden Hut, on four Props of Earth; in which they lay the dead Dog, and ſuffer him to continue there as long as the Hut laſts. When a Woman is pregnant, and near her Delivery, ſhe is obliged to retire into a Hut in a Wood, erected for that Purpoſe, where ſhe is delivered; and the Huſband and ſhe are not permitted to come near each other for the Space of two Months after.

They have very few Marriage Ceremonies beſides treating the neareſt Relations; after which the Bridegroom goes to Bed to the Bride. Amongſt other Diſcourſe, I admoniſh'd them, that it was Time to acknowledge CHRIST, the *Saviour* of the World, and turn to him; which would ſecure their Temporal and Eternal Welfare. To this they anſwered, *As for what concerns Temporals, we daily ſee vaſt Numbers of poor* Ruſſians *that can hardly get a Piece of dry Bread, and nevertheleſs ſome of them believe in CHRIST; and as for the Eternal Things, they left them to themſelves:* And at the ſame Time declared, that they would live and

die in the Opinion of their Forefathers, whether right or wrong.

Their Habits are neither extravagant nor ridiculous. Their Dwellings are quadrangular wooden Rooms, like thoſe of the *Ruſſian* Peaſants; only inſtead of Ovens, they uſe Hearths, on which they burn Wood, and dreſs their Victuals. The Smoke-Hole, which is in the Roof, is covered with Ice, as ſoon as the Wood is burnt to a Coal, which keeps the Warmth in the Room, and the Light ſtrikes through the clear Ice. They have no Chairs, but inſtead of them a broad Bench round the Room, about an Ell high, and two Ells broad; on which they ſit like the *Perſians*, with their Legs acroſs under them, and ſleep on them at Night. They live on what their Bow and Arrows furniſhes them with. Their chiefeſt Game are *Elks*, whole Herds of which are found here; theſe they cut in Pieces, and hang in the Air round their Houſes to dry: If it happens to rain upon them, and they begin to ſtink abominably, they dry them again, and eat them as a Delicacy. They do not eat either Cocks, Hens, or Hogs. They have have a pleaſant Way of catching wild Beaſts; for they place a Sort of great Bows in the Woods, faſtening a String to them, to which they fix ſome Corn, or other Bait, leaving only a Place for the Game to enter, ſo that the *Elk*, or any other Beaſt that comes in there, cannot paſs by without touching this Snare; and when the Bow lets fly, the Arrows enter the fore Part of the Body, and he preſently falls down. They alſo dig great Pits in the Woods, which they cover with Reeds and Graſs, ſo that if any Beaſt comes thither, he falls in and is taken.

Theſe *Tartars* live in their Villages all along the River *Iuzawaia* to the Caſtle of *Utka*, and are under the Protection of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, to whom they pay Tribute, and live in Security and Peace. The Extent of Land, which they inhabit, reaches about eight hundred *German* Miles in the North Part of *Siberia*, and even to the North *Samojedes*.

Near this Coaſt, as far as *Weygats* and *Meſeem*, are all Sorts of Quadrupeds, particularly Wolves, Bears, Foxes, Harts, *&c.* The Fowls are Ducks, Partridges, *&c.* being Snow-white

Snow-white in Winter; which is ſo very ſevere, that about *Samojeda*, I have myſelf ſeen Rooks and Magpies fall down dead in their Flight, being killed by the piercing Froſt.

After leaving theſe Heathens, we arrived at the Caſtle of *Utka* on the firſt of *June*. This Place is a Frontier Fortification againſt the *Baſkirian* and *Uffimiſchian Tartars*.

On the twentieth of the ſame Month, ſetting forwards from *Utka* in Waggons drawn by Horſes, we paſſed the Caſtle of *Ajada*, and croſſed the River *Neuia*, which runs round it. After which, we proceeded by the River *Reeſch* to the Caſtle of *Arſamas*, and from thence to the Caſtle of *Neuianſkoi*, on the above-mentioned River *Neuia*. This Journey by Land to *Neuianſkoi* proved one of the pleaſanteſt in the World, ſince I met therein with moſt charming Fields, Woods, Brooks, and ſtanding Waters, as alſo extraordinary fertile and well tilled Grounds, perfectly well inhabited every where by *Ruſſians*, and furniſhed with all Neceſſaries at a very cheap Rate.

On the firſt of *July*, I arrived ſafe at *Toboleſk*: Which City is ſurrounded with a large Stone Cloyſter, with high Watch-Towers, which may paſs for a Fortification.

Toboleſk, *Tobolſka*, or *Tobolſkoi*, is the chief City of *Siberia*. This Province is every where very well peopled, as well by *Ruſſians* who depend on Huſbandry, as by all Sorts of Nations, particularly *Tartars* and Heathens, which pay Tribute to his *Czariſh* Majeſty. This City is defended by a ſtrong Garriſon; which, upon Order of the *Czars*, can bring nine thouſand Men into the Field: Beſides which, there are ſeveral thouſands of *Tartars*, who ſerve all on Horſeback, on Occaſion.

About an hundred Years ago, this City and the whole Province of *Siberia*, became ſubject to the *Czar*, by the following Accident: *Jeremak Timefeiewitz*, a very famous Robber in the Reign of *Czar Ilam Waſilewitz*, having plundered theſe and all the adjacent Countries, had greatly injured the Subjects of his *Czariſh* Majeſty: When he was purſued, he and his Companions fled up the River *Kama*, and from thence into the River *Iuzawaja*, which falls into the *Kama*, where lie the Lands of *Stroginoff*, famous for his

vaſt Eſtate and Iron Works, which take up the greateſt Part of the Shore, and ſtretch to the Length of ſeventy *German* Miles. It was this rich Man's Grandfather that he applied himſelf to for Protection, and begged his Inte[illegible] in obtaining his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Pardon, offering at the ſame Time, by Way of Atonement, to reduce the whole Province of *Siberia* to be ſubject to the *Czar*. Purſuant to which, he alſo obtained from the above-mentioned *Strogi-noff*, Aſſiſtance of Barks, Arms, and neceſſary Workmen: And thus provided and accompanied with his Fellow Robbers in light Barks, he paſſed up the River *Serebrenſkoy*, which runs by the North-Eaſt Part of the *Werchaturian* Hills, and falls into the *Iuzuwaja*; thence he conveyed his Equipage by Land to the River *Tagin*, on which he ſailed into the *Tura*, took the Fort of *Tumeen*, ſituate thereon, razed it to the Ground, and advanced up the River *Tobol* to *Tobolſka*, where then reſided a *Tartarian* Prince, aged about twelve Years, whoſe Name was *Altanai Kutzjumowitz*, whoſe Deſcendant is ſtill honoured with the Title of the *Siberian Czarewitz*. This City he likewiſe attacked and took with ſmall Loſs; after which, he carried the Prince Priſoner to *Moſcow*, and put the conquered City in a better Poſture of Defence.

After this Succeſs, he proceeded down the River *Jetiſch*; but was ſet upon in the Night by a Party of *Tartars*, not far from *Tobolſki*, who cut off a great many of his Men, and he himſelf endeavouring to ſtep from one Bark to another, leaped ſhort, and by Reaſon of his heavy Armour, ſunk to the Bottom: His Body was carried away by the Force of the Stream, and never found. In the mean while, *Stroginoff* had obtained the *Czar*'s Pardon for *Jeremak*, and ſeveral hundred *Muſcovite* Officers and Soldiers came and garriſoned the Places which he had taken; and from this Juncture the *Czar*'s Sovereignty over *Siberia* is to be dated.

The *Tartars* that live round *Tobolſka*, for ſeveral Miles, are all *Mahometans*. I being ſomewhat curious to ſee their religious Worſhip, the *Waiwode* went with me, and by Virtue of his Authority, gave me an Opportunity which they will not allow another Perſon. Their Metſchets, called

called by other Authors Moſques, or Churches, had large Windows round them, all which were ſet open: The Floor was covered with Tapiſtry, beſides which there was no other Ornament. All Perſons at their Entrance leave their Shoes or Slippers at the Door, and ſit themſelves down in Rows, with their Legs under them: The Chief Prieſt ſat there in a white Callico Habit, and a white *Turkiſh* Turbant on his Head. Then I obſerved one behind the People cry with a hoarſe loud Voice, and after he had ſaid ſomething to them, they all fell on their Knees; then the Prieſt utter'd ſome Words, and afterwards cried out, *Alla*, *Alla*, *Mahomet*, which the whole Aſſembly roared out after him three Times ſucceſſively, proſtrating themſelves on the Ground: This done, the Prieſt looked into both his Hands, as tho' he deſigned to read ſomething there, and repeated *Alla*, *Alla*, *Mahomet*: Then he looked firſt over his Right Shoulder, then over his Left, which all the People did after him; and ſo their ſhort Devotion was ended.

The Mufti, or Chief Prieſt, is an *Arabian*, whom they highly reverence; and they very much eſteem any Perſon that can read or write the *Arabick* Language. This Prieſt invited us to his Houſe, which was near the Metſchet, and treated us with a Diſh of Tea.

There are alſo in this *Calmackian* Country great Numbers of *Tartars* that are uſed for Slaves, as alſo ſome long impriſoned *Calmackian* Princes; all which are the Conſequences of Wars, which one Tribe of theſe barbarous Nations have carried on againſt another, and this in a deſart Country, more than wide enough for them all.

From the City of *Tobolſki*, I went to *Samaroſkoy-Jam*. In this Country are Numbers of great black Bears, Wolves, and red and grey Foxes. Here I am to relate what the Inhabitants told me as a Truth: That one Year, in the Harveſt-time, early in the Morning, an extraordinary large Bear broke into one of the Cow-Houſes in this Town, ſeized a Cow, held her faſt by the Shoulder with his two fore Feet, and carried her off, going on his hinder Feet only. Upon the lowing of the Cow, the Owner and ſeveral of the Neighbours came out, ſaw it, and all ran at the

Bear

Bear with Fire-Arms and Clubs; notwithſtanding which, he would not part with his Prey till they fired and killed the Cow.

Moſt of the Inhabitants here are *Ruſſian Jemſkicks*, who are in the Pay of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, for which they ſupply the *Waywodes* that are ordered this Way, and all other Perſons who travel on the *Czar*'s Affairs in *Siberia*, with free Carriages and Men to work; and are obliged to carry them by Water in Summer, and over the Ice in Winter, as far as *Surgut*, ſituate on the *Oby*, at a very reaſonable Price. Theſe People keep great Numbers of Dogs, which they make Uſe of to travel with in Winter, for it is utterly impoſſible to paſs this Country with Horſe Sleads, by Reaſon that ſometimes the Snow on the *Oby* is above a large Fathom deep, ſo that no Horſe could travel.

Theſe Dogs are yoaked two to each Narta, or Slead, which is for that Purpoſe made very light and thin, and carry from two to three hundred, *German* Weight. The Slead nor the Dogs are not hurt by the Snow, but both run very ſwiftly over, leaving a Trace only of the Depth of a Finger's Breadth. Some of theſe Dogs know before-hand whether there is like to be any Work for them, as we were vainly told; and if they are likely to be employed, they herd together in Crowds, and howl in a diſmal Manner, whence their Maſters draw their Preſages. If, when they are on the Way, they are inclined to hunt, the Maſter takes his Gun on his Shoulder, and puts on his long ſliding Shoes, with which he goes over the Ice, takes his Dogs with him, and ſtepping a little Way into the Wood, turns up all Manner of wild Game, perhaps a fine black Fox; and they divide what is taken fairly, for the Skins of the Game are the Maſter's, and the Fleſh belongs to his Dogs. Thus they make a very profitable Uſe of theſe Draught Dogs, which are middle ſized, ſharp-noſed, with long erected Ears, and carry their Tails crooked; ſome of which are very much like Wolves or Foxes, inſomuch, that as they lie aſleep in the Woods, they are ſometimes by Miſtake ſhot for one of thoſe two Species: To countenance which, it is alſo affirmed, as a Thing certain, that theſe Dogs mix their Strain by

by a promiſcuous Copulation with that of Wolves and Foxes; whence, as our Informers aſſerted, whenever a Courſing-Match happens among the Inhabitants, they find a great Number of both Species near the Villages, as has been frequently obſerved.

On the ſixth of *Auguſt* we reached the City of *Surgut*, ſituate on the Eaſtern Shore of the *Oby*: The Inland Country for ſome Diſtance Eaſtwards of *Surgut*, as alſo farther up the *Oby*, about or near the City of *Narun*, produces Sables, ſome of which are pale, and others as black as Pitch, the fineſt and largeſt Ermines in all *Siberia* and *Ruſſia*, and above all black Fox-Skins, which are the very fineſt and richeſt any where: Among the beſt of theſe Fox-Skins, which are reſerved for his *Czariſh* Majeſty, there are ſome which are valued from two to three hundred Rubles a Skin, that are ſo very black, that the blackeſt *Daurian* Sable is not comparable to them. Theſe Foxes are caught by Dogs; of which the Inhabitants related the following very remarkable Accident, in ſtrong Terms; but let the Reader believe as he pleaſes.

Laſt Year, near a Village adjacent to *Surgut*, by Day-Light, an extraordinary fine Fox diſcovered himſelf; upon Sight of which, a Boor let looſe his Dogs: The Fox was within Sight of the Peaſant, and the Dogs ſoon got up to him; but when this ſubtle Animal ſaw that it was impoſſible to eſcape the Hounds by Flight, he fawning ran to meet them, tumbled on his Back before them, and licked their Mouths, ran backwards and forwards, and played with them: The unexperienced Dogs, ſoftened by his fawning Treatment, did the ſly Fox no Manner of Hurt, but ſuffered him to eſcape into the Wood; ſo that the poor Peaſant having no Fire-Arms at Hand, notwithſtanding all his Vigilance, did for that Time looſe Sight of this rich Booty.

But two Days afterwards, the ſame Fox returned to the ſame Place; which the Peaſant was no ſooner aware of, but he took another, and his beſt Dog, with him, which was white haired; and full freight with freſh Hopes of this rich Game, he runs this Dog at the Fox; but the black Dogs flew towards him, and while he was fawning on them, the white

white Hound was ſo cunning as to fawn at firſt, but being come within Reach, he took a good Leap at him, and had certainly ſeized him, if he had not, by leaving a Piece of his Side behind him, ſprung nimbly from him, and eſcaped into a thick Wood, where it was in vain to look for him.

The Boor was at laſt, however, too hard for this ſubtle Fox, for he coloured his white Dog all over black, that the Fox (who was become ſhy of him) might not know him; which done, he went the third Time on this Courſe with his dy'd Dog, and was ſo fortunate that his Hound ſmelt him out; upon which, the Fox ſeeing the diſguiſed Dog, fawned on him without the leaſt Fear, taking him for one of the firſt black Hounds, with whom he deſigned to play again: And in this Poſture they approached each other; when the Dog, watching his Opportunity, graſped the careleſs Fox, and ſo caught this ſly Beaſt with his fine Skin, which proved very well worth the Peaſant's Trouble, he ſelling it for an hundred Rubles.

Here are great Numbers of thoſe which are called *Croſs-Foxes*, whoſe Skins are of a mixed Black and Grey, but very few perfect black. Red Foxes and Hyænas, as alſo Beavers, are very plenty in this Country; but the Hyænas are very miſchievous, and live on Prey. They, like the Linx's, place themſelves in the Trees, and lie very ſtill and cloſe, till a Hart, an Elk, a Doe or an Hare, runs under the Tree; from which they leap upon him, eat a Hole in his Body, and continue gnawing till the Beaſt, by Force of Pain, falls down, and conſequently comes to their Share. One of the *Waiwods* kept a Hyæna alive for his Diverſion, which he put into the Water, and let two Water Dogs looſe at him; but he immediately leaped upon the Head of one of them, and held him ſo long under Water, till he drowned him; after which, he ſwam to the other, whom he had treated in the ſame Manner, if he had not been interrupted by throwing Wood at him, till the Dog, taking his Opportunity, ſwam out.

But with Regard to the Beavers, which herd here in great Numbers, ſome very ſtrange Particulars are related as Truths, though they ſeem incredible; wherefore I take it to be

be worth my Pains to touch a little on their Properties, of which the following are all ſeriouſly averred to me. The greateſt Part of their Food being Fiſh, they harbour on the Shores of thoſe Rivers which abound moſt with Fiſh, and which are not much troubled with Paſſengers. In the Spring they not only herd together, but aſſemble themſelves into a Society, and pick out ſome, and ſeize others as Priſoners, whom they carry to their Holes, and oblige them to ſerve as Slaves. They fell Trees with their Teeth, carry them to their Dwellings, and there hack out their Wood to a certain Length, which they artificially fix together like Joyners-work, and Cheſts, and there they lay up ſeparately all their Summer Store of Proviſions: And about the Seaſon of this Preparation, the Time of the Female Beavers Bringing-forth approaches; upon which the Inhabitants told me improbable Things of their Practices: They ſay, that againſt that Juncture the whole Neighbourhood go together, and frequently gnaw a Tree of above an Ell Circumference, for the Length of above two Fathom, even to the inner Pith, till it falls down; that they are expert enough to bring it to their Holes by Water, and that they can rear it upright before the Entrance of their Holes ſo artificially, that the Tree ſtands perpendicularly in the Water above an Ell deep, and yet touches no Ground, and that ſo firm and immoveable in its Line or Centre, that though the Wind blows ever ſo hard, the Tree remains firm in its Place. All which ſeems unnatural, and yet all the *Siberians* that I ever diſcourſed with, unanimouſly affirmed it, and added ſeveral other Things concerning theſe Beaſts, which ſeem rather the Effects of Human Reaſon, than within the Compaſs of that Inſtinct which guides irrational Brutes.

Having paſſed ſeveral Miles up the *Oby*, Part of which we ſailed, and towed the reſt with a Line, on the thirteenth of *Auguſt* we paſſed by the Mouth of the *Wagga*, which riſeth out of the *Turganian* Mountains.

The Banks of the *Oby* to this Place, are inhabited by a People called *Oſtiacks*; who worſhip Terreſtrial Gods, but acknowledge, that according to Nature there muſt be a Lord in Heaven, that governs all; nevertheleſs, they do

not pay any Worſhip at all to him, but have their own Gods made of Wood and Earth, in ſeveral Human Shapes. Some of the richeſt amongſt them dreſs their Deities in ſilken Cloaths, made after the Faſhon of thoſe of the *Ruſſian* Women. All of them have theſe Idols placed in their Huts, which are made of Barks of Trees, ſewed together with Harts Guts. On one Side of the God hangs a Bunch of Human and Horſe Hair, and next that a wooden Veſſel with Milk Pap, with which they daily ſupply their Idols, and thruſt it into their Mouths with a Spoon made for that Purpoſe; but in as much as theſe Idols cannot ſwallow this their Milk Diet, it runs out again at both Sides of their Mouth, down their whole Bodies, in ſuch a filthy Manner, as is ſufficient to diſguſt one from eating that Food. When this nice God is to be worſhipped, or prayed to, his Adorers ſtand bolt upright, and toſs their Heads up and down, without bending their Backs in the leaſt; beſides which, they chirrup or whiſtle through their Lips, as we do when we call a Dog; and in theſe Fooleries conſiſt their Devotion.

They call their Gods *Saitan*, and might indeed very well ſay *Satan*. Once ſeveral *Oſtiacks* came on board the Ship in which I was, to ſell us Fiſh, and one of my Servants had a *Nurenburg* Bear in Clock-work, which, when wound up, drummed and turned his Head backward and forward, continually moving his Eyes till the Work was down. Our People ſet the Bear at Play a little; and as ſoon as ever the *Oſtiacks* ſaw it, all of them performed to it their cuſtomary religious Worſhip, and danced exceſſively to the Honour of the Bear, nodding their Heads, and whiſtling at a great Rate. They conſidered our Bear as a right *Saitan*, crying out, *What are our* Saitans *which we make? If we had ſuch a* Saitan, *we would hang him all over with Sables and black Fox Skins.* They alſo aſked, whether this Clock-Work was to be ſold; but I ordered it out of their Sight, to avoid adminiſtering any Occaſion to Idolatry.

As for what farther concerns theſe Heathens, they have as many Wives as they can maintain, and marry their near Relations without any Scruple. If a Relation dies, they cry

ery inceſſantly for ſeveral Days, covering their Heads, and kneeling on their Knees in their Huts, and will not ſuffer themſelves to be ſeen; but they carry the Corpſe on Poles to the Ground to be buried. They are a poor People, and live very miſerable in ſorry Huts. They might, indeed, live very happily and well, ſince all Parts near the *Oby* abound with great Quantities of rich Furs; beſides that, there is extraordinary good fiſhing in that River, in which are very fine Sturgeons, Jacks, *&c.* inſomuch that twenty great Sturgeons may be bought of them for three Penny-worth of Tobacco; but they are ſo horrid lazy, that they do not deſire to get any more than will barely ſuffice them annually for the Winter; for when they travel, they eat moſtly Fiſh, eſpecially when they are on the Water fiſhing, for then they live on nothing elſe. They are all of a middle Stature, moſt of them yelloviſh or red hair'd, and their Faces and Noſes diſagreeably broad: They are weak, and unable to labour hard, not at all inclined to Wars, and unfit for Military Exerciſes. Bows and Arrows are their Weapons, with which they ſhoot wild Beaſts, though they are not much addicted to this neither. Their Cloaths conſiſt of Sturgeon and other Fiſh Skins: They uſe neither Linnen nor Woollen; their Shoes and Stockings are faſtened together, and they wear a ſhort Coat with a Cape and Hood, which in Caſe of Rain they pull over their Heads. Their Shoes are alſo made of Fiſh Skins, and are ſewed faſt to their Stockings, but not cloſely; ſo that their Feet muſt neceſſarily be always wet. When they are upon the Water, notwithſtanding the Thinneſs of their Cloathing, they will bear extraordinary great Cold; for if it be but a common Winter, they are no better clad than has been mentioned; but if the Winter proves hard, thoſe who are thus clad, are compelled to put another Coat of the ſame Sort of Fiſh Skins over that; and they expreſs this ſevere Weather amongſt one another, by ſaying, *Do you like the Winter that forces one to wear two Coats of Skins?* They ſometimes go a hunting in the Winter with a ſingle Coat only, and their Breaſts bare, depending upon warming themſelves quickly with ſliding and running over the Ice in their Schaits or ſliding Shoes;

but if, as it ſeveral Times happens, they are overtaken by an extraordinary fierce Froſt, and it ſeems utterly improbable to eſcape it, or ſave their Lives, they with the utmoſt Haſte throw off their Fiſh Skin Coat, fling themſelves into the deep Snow, and voluntarily freeze to Death: The Reaſon why they pull off their Coat is, only that they may die the ſooner, and with leſs Pain.

The Women's Cloaths are almoſt like the Men's. The Men's greateſt Diverſion is Bear-hunting, to which Sport they gather together in Crowds, armed with no other Weapon than a ſharp Iron, like a large Knife, fixed to a Stick about a Fathom long. As ſoon as they have put up a Bear, they run at him with theſe ſhort Spears, and having killed him, they cut off his Head, ſtick it upon a Tree, run round it, and pay the profoundeſt Reſpect to it: After which, they run to the dead Body with repeated Cries, aſking the Bear, *Who killed you? The* Ruſſians, they anſwer themſelves: *Who cut off your Head? A* Ruſſian *Ax: Who cut up your Belly? A Knife which a* Ruſſian *made*; and more ſuch-like Queſtions. In a Word, the *Ruſſians* bear all the Blame, and they are entirely innocent of the Murder of the Bear.

They have a Sort of Petty Princes amongſt them, one of which is called *Kneſka*, or Prince *Kurza Muganak*, whoſe Authority extends over ſome hundreds of Huts; and he lays on and collects the Tribute which they are obliged to pay to the *Waiwodes* of his *Czariſh* Majeſty. This Potentate came with all his Princely Family and Servants on board me, paid his Compliments, and brought me a Parcel of freſh Fiſh as a Preſent; which I requited, by preſenting him with ſome Brandy and Tobacco, with which he went on Shore very well contented; but returned immediately, and invited me to his Princely Palace. I being very curious to ſee this great Lord in his ſumptuous Place of Reſidence, went thither, though I had no great Appetite to his Entertainment. Coming on Shore, the introductory Ceremonies were not very particular: He acted the Maſter of the Ceremonies himſelf, and without much Solemnity brought me to his magnificent Apartment; which, like the other

Huts

Huts of the *Oſtiacks*, was compoſed only of Barks of Trees, ſlightly ſewed together. I found here four of his Wives, two old and two young; one of the young ones had a red Cloth Coat on, and was ſet off with all Sorts of Glaſs Corals about her Neck and her Middle, and in the Curls of her Hair, which hung down on both Sides of her Head in two Rows; ſhe had alſo in her Ears great Thread-wrought Rings, with long Strings of Coral hanging at them. Each of theſe Princeſſes preſented me with a Barrel made of Birch Bark, ſewed together, and full of dry Fiſh; but the youngeſt gave me a Barrel of Sturgeon Fat, which was as yellow as Gold. After I had received theſe Preſents, I cauſed them to be treated with Brandy and Tobacco, which is a great Delicacy amongſt them. In this whole Princely Building, I ſaw no other Furniture than ſome Cradles and Cheſts, made of Barks of Trees ſewed together, in which the Bed-Cloaths lay, being of planed Wood Shavings, which yet were almoſt as ſoft as Feathers. Theſe Cradles ſtand at one End of the Hut, to avoid the Fire which is kindled in the Middle, and the Children lie naked in them. I alſo ſaw a Copper Kettle there, and ſome other Kettles compoſed of Barks of Trees ſewed together, in which they boil their Victuals on the live Coals or Embers, for in the Flame they cannot do it.

To ſmoke Tobacco, (to which all, both Men and Women, are very much addicted) inſtead of Pipes they uſe a Stone Kettle, in which they ſtick a Pipe made for that Purpoſe, and at two or three Drawings, (after they have taken ſome Water in their Mouths,) can ſuck out a whole Pipe; and they ſwallow the Smoke, after which they fall down and lie inſenſible, like dead Men, with diſtorted Eyes, both Hands and Feet trembling for about half an Hour: They foam at the Mouth ſo, that they fall into a Sort of Epilepſy, and we could not obſerve where the Smoke vented itſelf: And in this Manner ſeveral of them are loſt; for as they are upon the Water travelling, or ſitting by the Fire, ſome of theſe violent Smokers fall into the Water and are drowned, or into the Fire and are burned; but ſome, after they have ſucked in the Smoke, let it out at their Throats again;

again; and these are in a better Condition than the other, though some weaker Constitutions are sometimes suffocated even thus with the Smoke, which they let down into their Bodies.

It is further observable, that they are very angry, if any of their Relations, though long dead, are named or mentioned. They are utterly unacquainted with all Things before their own Life-time, and do not pretend to give any Relation of them; nor can they either write or read; and though they are very fond of Bread when they meet with it, they never trouble themselves with the Tillage of Land, or Culture of Gardens.

They have neither Temples nor Priests. Their Shipping or Boats, on the Outside, are Barks of Trees sewed together, and the Inside Ribs of very thin Wood; these are two or three Fathom long, and but an Ell broad, and yet they can secure themselves in them in great Storms till they get on Shore.

In Winter Time these *Ostiacks* live entirely under Ground, there being no other Entrance to their Caves, but a Hole left open on the Surface of the Earth, to let out the Smoke: If, as is frequent, a great Snow falls, it happens that (as according to their Custom, they lie asleep naked round the Fire) Part of their Body which lies a little Distance from the Fire, is covered two or three Fingers thick with Snow; when they perceive themselves cold, they turn about to the Fire, and bestow the best Place on the cold Part of their Body a little while, and so take no more Notice of it, being a very hardy People in Respect to the Variation of the Weather.

When an *Ostiack* is jealous of one of his Wives lying with another Man, he cuts some Hair from the under Part of a Bear's Skin, which he carries to the Man whom he suspects: If he is innocent, he then accepts it, but if he is guilty, they believe he dare not venture to touch it, but must acknowledge the Truth, and then amicably makes up the Business with the Husband, and the Wife is sold; for if any should presume to be so rash as to take the Hair, though he was guilty, they tell us they are assured that the Bear's

Bear's Skin from whence that Hair was cut off, will again become a living Bear, which, after the Expiration of three Years, will appear in the Wood, and tear the perjured Wretch to Pieces. On this Occaſion they invoke Bows, Arrows, Axes, and Knives, and firmly believe that if the guilty Perſon takes any of theſe, he ſhall certainly be killed by thoſe individual Inſtruments which he accepts, within the Space of a few Days; which is not only averred by themſelves, but unanimouſly vouched alſo by the *Ruſſians* who live in the Neighbourhood of theſe Parts. But enough of theſe *Oſtiacks*. The Shore of the River *Oby*, on which they live, is all untilled Land from the Sea to the River *Tom*, by Reaſon of the extream Cold; ſo that no Corn, Fruit, or Honey, is here produced.

After having paſſed ſome Weeks on the River *Oby* amongſt the barbarous *Oſtiacks*, we went by the City of *Keetſkoy*, ſituate on the River *Keta*, which falls North-Weſt into the *Oby*. On the 28th following I paſſed by the Cloiſter of St *George*, and the 3d of *October* I went by the Village of *Worozeikin*; and on the ſame Day died *John George Weltſel*, a Painter, one of my Retinue, who was born at *Sleſwick*, after he had kept his Bed fourteen Days on Account of a Swelling juſt above his Heart, which was aggravated by a Fever.

On the 7th of *October*, I ſafely arrived at the Village *Makofſkoi*, and there cauſed *Weltſel*'s Corps to be buried on a Hill near the River, in the Middle of the Village. I muſt own that this Voyage upon the River *Keta* was more irkſome and melancholy than all the whole Way before: We were obliged to labour for five Weeks againſt the Stream, without ſeeing ſo much as any Man, beſides now and then an *Oſtiack* that appeared, and immediately hid himſelf in the Woods. This Sort of *Oſtiacks* ſpeak a different Language from thoſe on the *Oby*; but their Idolatry is the ſame.

In this tedious uneaſy Paſſage, I was expoſed to much Care and Anxiety; for our Proviſions, and eſpecially the Meal, grew very low, by Reaſon I had not recruited otherwiſe than with Fiſh ſince my Departure from *Tobolſka*, and had

had been too charitable to the *Oſtiacks* on board our Ship, who, when we found it requiſite, were obliged to tow us along with a Line; by which continual Fatigue, they were become ſo weak, that we were obliged to keep a continual Watch over them, to prevent their Deſertion.

Notwithſtanding all this Care, no Day paſſed in which ſome did not run away: And at laſt the Coldneſs of the Seaſon, and their perpetual Labour, rendered them unſerviceable; and if I had not before-hand written to the Governor of *Jenizeſkoy* for Men to aſſiſt me, which he diſpatched away to meet me, with the firſt Opportunity, I and my Retinue had been probably loſt; for not being within thirty Miles of the Village when the Aſſiſtance came, we had been certainly frozen up in the River, and had periſh'd by Famine, and the deep Snows which fall there; for this River is utterly unnavigable in Winter.

I was ſcarce got from *Makoffkoi*, before the River froze up. Here are great Quantities of Woodcocks, Pheaſants, Partridges, and other wild Fowl; and it was a very diverting Sight to ſee great Flocks of Woodcocks and Pheaſants come to the Brink of the River to drink, which gave us an Opportunity of ſhooting as many as we pleaſed in our Paſſage; and when our Proviſions grew ſcarce, afforded us no ſmall Aſſiſtance. Here grow alſo Strawberries, black and red Currans, and Blackberries; but the River doth not yield great Quantities of Fiſh.

Amongſt the Hills which are ſituate North-Eaſt of, and not far from hence, the *Mammuts* Tongues and Legs are found, as they are alſo particularly on the Shores of the Rivers *Jenize*, *Trugan*, *Mongamſea*, *Lena*, and near *Jakutſkoi*, even as far as the *Frozen Sea*. In the Spring, when the Ice of this River breaks, it is driven in ſuch vaſt Quantities, and with ſuch Force by the high ſwollen Waters, that it frequently carries very high Banks before it, and breaks off the Tops of Hills; which falling down, diſcover theſe Animals whole, or their Teeth only, almoſt frozen to the Earth, which thaw by Degrees. I had a Perſon with me, who had annually gone out in Search of theſe Bones; he told it to me as a real Truth, that he and his Companions found

found the Head of one of these Animals, which was discovered by the Fall of such a frozen Piece of Earth. As soon as he opened it, he found the greatest Part of the Flesh rotten; but it was not without Difficulty that they broke out the Teeth, which were placed in the fore Part of his Mouth, as those of the Elephants are: They also took some Bones out of his Head, and afterwards came to his fore Foot, which they cut off, and carried Part of it to the City of *Trugan*, the Circumference of it being as large as that of the Waist of an ordinary Man. The Bones of the Head appeared somewhat red, as though they were tinctured with Blood.

Concerning this Animal, there are very different Reports. The Heathens of *Jakuti*, *Tunguſi*, and *Oſtiacki*, say that they continually, or at least (by Reason of the very hard Frosts) mostly live under Ground, where they go backwards and forwards: To confirm which, they tell us, that they have often seen the Earth heaved up, when one of these Beasts was upon the March, and after he was passed, the Place sink in, and thereby make a deep Pit. They further believe, that if this Animal comes so near to the Surface of the frozen Earth as to smell the Air, he immediately dies which they say is the Reason that several of them are found dead on the high Banks of the River, where they unawares come out of the Ground.

This is the Opinion of the Infidels, concerning these Beasts, which are never seen. But the old *Siberian Ruſſians* affirm, that the *Mammuth* is very like the Elephant, with this Difference only, that the Teeth of the former are firmer, and not so straight as those of the latter. They also are of Opinion, that there were Elephants in this Country before the Deluge, when this Climate was warmer, and that their drowned Bodies floating on the Surface of the Water of that Flood, were at last washed and forced into subterraneous Cavities; but that after this universal Deluge, the Air which was before warm, was changed to Cold, and that these Bones have lain frozen in the Earth ever since, and so are preserved from Putrefaction till they thaw, and come to Light; which is no unreasonable Conjecture. Though

it is not abſolutely neceſſary that this Climate ſhould have been warmer before the Flood, ſince the Carcaſes of the drowned Elephants were very likely to float from other Places ſeveral hundred Miles diſtant, to this Country, in the great Deluge which covered the Surface of the whole Earth. Some of theſe Teeth (which doubtleſs have lain the whole Summer on the Shore) are entirely black and broken, and can never be reſtored to their former Condition; but thoſe which are found in good Caſe, are as good as Ivory, and are accordingly tranſported to all Parts of *Muſcovy*, where they are uſed to make Combs, and all other ſuch-like Things, inſtead of Ivory.

The above-mentioned Perſon alſo told me, that he once found two Teeth in one Head, that weighed above twelve *Ruſſian* Pounds, which amount to four hundred *German* Pounds; ſo that theſe Animals muſt of Neceſſity be very large, though a great many leſſer Teeth are found. By all that I could gather from the Heathens, no Perſon ever ſaw one of theſe Beaſts alive, or can give any Account of its Shape; ſo that all we hear ſaid on this Subject, ariſes from bare Conjecture only.

But to return to my Travels, in which I durſt not venture to proceed any further by Water, but was obliged to go by Land from the before-mentioned Village of *Makofskoy*. After I had advanced ſixteen Miles, on the twelfth of *October* I ſafely arrived at the City of *Jenizeskoy*, where I reſted for ſome Time, being obliged to wait till the Roads were ſufficiently frozen to be paſſable with Sleads.

The City of *Jenizeskoy* is large and populous, and the Fortreſs indifferently ſtrong. Several Villages and Cloiſters extend themſelves for the Space of ſome Miles round the City; and the Land is very proper for Agriculture. Corn, Fleſh, Cattle, and wild horned Beaſts, and Fowl, are very plentiful here. Subject to the Juriſdiction of this City, are ſeveral *Tunguzian* Heathens, who moſtly live on the *Jenizea*, *Tunguſkay*, and the Inland neighbouring Country. Theſe pay a Tribute of Furs to the Czar for every Bow, taking that to be a Man and Woman reckoned together. No large Fruit-Trees grow here, by Reaſon of the extream Cold,

Cold, and the only Fruits are black and red Currans, Strawberries, Gooſeberries, and ſuch-like.

After a long Stay at this Place for the Sake of Refreſhment, I ſet forwards in a Slead, and on the 20th of *January* reached the Iſland of *Ribnoy*, which ſignifies *Fiſh Iſland.* This Iſle is ſituate in the Midſt of the River *Tanguſka*, which is plentifully ſtored with Fiſh: Here are Sturgeon, Jacks, and Roach, of an extraordinary Size.

Some Days Journey from hence, is the great rocky Waterfall, called *Schaman Schamanſkoy*, or the *Negromantick Fall*, becauſe of a famous *Schaman* or *Tunguſchian* Conjurer who lives there. This Waterfall is a Deſcent of half a Mile long. Its Shore is covered with high Rocks, ſo that the whole Ground of this Water is pure Stone, which indeed affords a hideous Proſpect, and makes ſuch a diſmal loud Noiſe, that its rapid Courſe over both viſible and inviſible Rocks, may in ſtill Weather be heard at the Diſtance of above three *German* Miles. The *Doſchanicks*, or Ships, which are obliged to come up it againſt the Stream, require five, ſix, or ſeven Days, though empty, to tow up this dangerous Water, by caſting of Anchors and the Help of ſeveral Men; nay, farther in ſome ſhallow Places, where the Water is very low, and the Rocks lie high, they are oblig'd to tow a whole Day before they can get forwards ſo much as a Ship's Length, and the Ship frequently ſtands an End on the Stem; a Thing almoſt incredible, except to Eye-Witneſſes.

The Ships which paſs up and down, are always unladed, and their Cargoes carried by Land, till they get paſt this dangerous Place, when they are again loaded. I have myſelf ſeen the Ships which ſailed down this Torrent, perform it in twelve Minutes, ſo prodigious rapid is this Deſcent: And there are very few, either *Ruſſians* or *Tunguzians*, that know how to bring down the Ships, which muſt be provided with a Rudder fore and aft, and Rowers on both Sides: The Pilots give their Orders very dexterouſly to the Rowers by a Handkerchief; for no Voice can be heard, by Reaſon of the Noiſe of the Water. The Ships are alſo cloſe ſhut every where, that the Waves which frequently fly

over them, may not find Entrance into, and conſequently ſink them. Several Ships, notwithſtanding theſe Precautions, are caſt away here every Year, eſpecially when unexperienced Pilots undertake the bringing them down, being very often ſhattered to Pieces againſt the hidden Rocks; and the Men are in ſuch Caſes inevitably loſt, and immediately ſtifled by the rapid Stream, or daſhed to Pieces by the Rocks; wherefore their Bodies are very rarely found, and the Shores are full of Croſſes, erected in Remembrance of thoſe drowned there. In the Winter Seaſon the Water of this River is ſo high, that it ſtands almoſt level with the Flood, and it hath been ſo overflowed from the Icy Sea, that ſeveral have paſſed over it with Ice Sleads; but in the Summer the Water is very low, as we have already hinted.

Some Miles from hence live ſeveral *Tunguzians*; amongſt others, their famed *Schaman*, or *Diabolical Artiſt*. The Reports which paſſed concerning this Cheat, made me very deſirous to ſee him; wherefore, in order to gratify my Curioſity, I went to thoſe Parts, to viſit him and his Habitation. I found him a tall old Man, who had twelve Wives, and one who was not at all aſhamed of the Art he pretended to: He ſhewed me his conjuring Habit, and the other Tools which he uſed. Firſt I ſaw his Coat, made of join'd Iron-Work, conſiſting of all Manner of Repreſentations of Birds, Fiſhes, Ravens, Owls, *&c.* beſides ſeveral Beaſts and Birds Claws, and Bills, Saws, Hammers, Knives, Sabres, and the Images of ſeveral Beaſts, *&c.* ſo that all the Parts of this Diabolical Robe being fixed together by Joints, might at Pleaſure be taken to Pieces: He had alſo Iron Stockings for his Feet and Legs, ſuitable to his Robe, and two great Bears Claws over his Hands: His Head was likewiſe adorned with ſuch-like Images, and two Iron Bucks-Horns were fixed to his Forehead. When he deſigns to conjure, he takes a Drum made after their Faſhion in his Left Hand, and a flat Staff covered with the Skins of Mountain Mice in his Right Hand: Thus equipped, he jumps croſs legg'd, which Motion ſhakes all theſe Iron Plates, and makes a great Rattle; beſides which, he at the ſame Time beats his Drum, and with Eyes diſtorted upwards and a ſtrong beariſh Voice,

Voice, makes a diſmal Noiſe. Theſe were the Prologues; but his Conjurations were performed in the following Manner:

If the *Tunguzians* have any Thing at any Time ſtole from them, or deſire to be informed of any Thing, in the firſt Place he muſt be paid before-hand; after which, he plays ſuch Tricks as are already related, jumps and roars till a Blackbird comes and ſits on the Top of his Hut, which is open above, to let out the Smoke: As ſoon as he gets Sight of the Bird, he falls into a Swoon, and the Bird vaniſhes immediately: After he hath remained bereft of his Senſes for about a Quarter of an Hour, he comes to himſelf, and tells the Enquirer who hath robbed him, or anſwers his Queſtions of what Sort ſoever; and they tell us, that all he ſays proves true. His Robe was ſo heavy, that I could ſcarce lift it with one Hand. This Conjurer had a great Quantity of Cattle, which Crowds of People that flock to him from very diſtant Places, had preſented him with, they always giving him his full Demands.

Theſe Heathens are called *Niſovian Tunguzians*: They are tall and ſtrong Men, and have long black Hair; which being bound up in the Shape of a Horſe's Tail, hangs upon their Backs: They are broad-fac'd, but their Noſes are not ſo flat, nor their Eyes ſo ſmall, as the *Calmackians*. Both Men and Women go naked in the Summer, except only a Leather Girdle of three Hands Breadth, that they moſtly cut in the Shape of Ribbands, which they wear about their Waiſt, and cover their Privities: But the Women adorn their Hair with Coral and Iron Figures. Both Men and Women carry a Pot on their Left Arms, continually furniſhed with old ſmoking Wood, which preſerves them from the Biting of the *Moſchitoes*, or *Gnats*; with which the Country along the River *Tunguſky*, and the Woods, are ſo abundantly peſtered, that if not only the Face, but the Hands and Legs are uncovered, their Biting becomes inſupportable; which, however, the Natives do not feel ſo much as Strangers, becauſe their Skin being all over bitten by them, becomes thereby hardened. Theſe People are Admirers of Beauty, according to their Notion of it: To improve

improve which, they adorn their Foreheads, Cheeks and Chins, in the following Manner: They with a Needle run Threads greaſed with black Greaſe through the Skin, in Repreſentation of ſeveral Figures, and leave the ſaid Threads therein for ſeveral Days; after which they draw them out, and leave their Traces behind them, and very few of them are without this Embelliſhment.

Their Winter Habit is a Coat made of Doe Skins, which is bordered at the Extremities with Dog Skins; beſides which, they have alſo a Breaſt-piece hung with Tails of Horſe Hair. They are wholly unacquainted with either Linnen or Woollen Cloaths; but to ſupply their Neceſſities, they make Nets and ſowing Thread of Fiſh Skins. Inſtead of Caps on their Heads, they wear a Roebuck's Skin, with the Horns ſticking up on the Crown of their Heads, eſpecially when they go a Buck-hunting; by which Means they eaſily deceive their Game, which they creep cloſe to in the Graſs, and the unwary Animals miſtaking them for their own Species, void of Fear, never remove their Station, whilſt they having their Bow and Arrow ready, and being got ſo near, are ſure to ſhoot him down. When they are inclined to divert themſelves together, they form themſelves into a Ring, and one of them ſtands in the Middle, having a long Staff in his Hand; with which, in turning round, he ſtrikes at the Legs of any one of the Company, who ſo nimbly lifts them up, and ſo dexterouſly avoids the Blow, that it is very ſeldom that any of them are hit; but if any one is touched, he is ducked till he is all over wet.

They lay their Dead upon the Trees, and after they are rotten, their Bones are buried in the Earth.

They have no other Prieſts but their Conjurers. They have in their Huts carved wooden Idols, about half an Ell long, with the Repreſentation of Human Faces, which they feed as the *Oſtiacks* do, with their beſt Sort of Food, which runs out of their Mouths over their Bodies. Their Huts are hung round with Horſes Mains, Tails, and other Baubles, and are made of Birch Bark; before which they hang their Bows and Quivers, and very few of them are found without

ſeveral

ſeveral young dead Dogs hanging near them. Their Boats or Canoes are made of Birch Bark ſewed together, which notwithſtanding will carry ſeven or eight Perſons; they are long, ſlender, and without any Benches; they ſit in them upon their Knees, and make Uſe of a Sort of Oars broad at both Ends, which they hold in the Middle, and row or paddle, firſt with the one, then with the other End; and when they row all together, the Boat goes at a great Rate. With theſe ſlight Canoes they can bear up againſt violent Storms without any Danger. They generally ſubſiſt themſelves in Summer by fiſhing, and in Winter by hunting all Sorts of furred Game, Bucks, Does, *&c.*

I left theſe People without any other Occurrence remarkable, and arrived on the firſt of *February* at the Fort *Buratz*; which Place, and all along to the Lake *Baikal*, is watered by the River *Angara*, and inhabited by the *Burattians*, a *Pagan* People.

Both the Men and Women of this Country are robuſt, large, and according as Beauty goes here, have handſome Faces, being a little like the *Chineſe Tartars*. In the Winter both Sexes wear long Coats made of Sheep Skins, with a broad Girdle tipped with Iron. They have a Sort of Caps that they call *Malachaves*, which they can draw over their Ears in cold Weather. In Summer ſeveral of them wear Coats of ſlight red Cloth. Comparatively ſpeaking, their Faces and their Bodies look like young Devils, by Reaſon that they know, or at leaſt practiſe nothing of waſhing at any other Time than when they are born, nor ever cut the Nails of either their Hands or their Feet.

The Virgins whole Head of Hair ſticking faſt together in Plaits, ſtands on End, and makes them look juſt as Envy is repreſented by the Painters. The Women have only two Plaits which hang down on each Side of their Heads, adorned with all Sorts of Tin Figures. When any of them die, they are buried with their beſt adorned Cloaths, Bows and Arrows. Their Religion conſiſts in the worſhipping dead Bucks and Sheep, which are ſpitted upon the Poles before their Doors, at ſeveral Times in the Year, as long as they continue unputrified. Their Adoration of them is performed

performed by bowing the Head, whilſt they ſit on their Knees with claſped Hands, without either Prayers or ſo much as ſpeaking one Word. This is the only Divine Service that they are acquainted with; nor will they ever hear of any other: They have indeed ſeveral Prieſts; which, when they think fit, they kill firſt, and afterwards bury them, together with their Cloaths and Money, alledging, that it is neceſſary to ſend them before to pray for them, and that leſt they ſhould be driven to Neceſſity, they ought to have Money to ſpend, and Cloaths to wear.

In this Neighbourhood Muſk Cats are alſo found, which are ſhaped more like a Goat. This Animal is almoſt like a young Buck, without Horns, with this Difference, that its Hair is a little black, and the Head inclines more towards that of a Wolf. The Muſk is contained in a certain Swelling at the Navel, like a little Purſe, which is compoſed of a thin Skin, covered with a very fine Hair. The *Chineſe* call this Animal *Yebiam*, which is *Muſk Hart*, by Reaſon of its Likeneſs to a Stag; but beſides the Diſſimilitude of the Head, it hath alſo two Tuſks like thoſe of a wild Boar, which ſtick out of its Mouth.

Philip Martinus, in his *Chineſe Atlas*, gives us the following Deſcription, which may contribute to the Satisfaction of the curious Reader: "The Muſk Cat (ſaith he) is almoſt "like a young Hart or Doe, only that he is ſomewhat "browner, and ſo ſlow and inactive, that the Hunter's "greateſt Difficulty is to put him up; for that once done, "he is immediately ſhot, for he ſuffereth himſelf tamely to "be killed, without either defending himſelf or ſtirring: "The Muſk (of which there are various Sorts of different "Value) is prepared from this Beaſt in the following "Manner:

"After he is taken, all his Blood is drawn off and re"ſerved; and from under his Navel is taken off a Blad"der that is filled with Blood, or ſome other odoriferous "Liquor there concreted; after which the Animal is "flea'd and cut to Pieces.

"When the *Chineſe* deſign to make the beſt Sort, they "take the hinder Part of the Animal, beginning from the

"Kidneys,

" Kidneys, which they ſtamp and bruiſe to a Jelly, which " they dry, and therewith fill the ſmall Bags, which they " make of the Skin of the Beaſt. But if they deſire a " ſlighter Sort of Muſk, which ſhould yet be very good, " and not at all ſophiſticated, then they beat all the Parts " of the Animal together, without any Diſtinction, to a " Jelly, with a little of his Blood, in a Mortar; with " which, as before, they fill up the Bags made of the " Hide.

" Beſides theſe two, there is another Sort of Muſk, " which is alſo highly valued, though not ſo good as the " precedent. This is prepared from the fore Part of the " Animal to the Kidneys, which they particularly lay by " the reſt of his Body, in order to make the common " Muſk; ſo that none of this Creature is thrown away, " but all Parts of it are good; whence it is ſaid to be bet- " ter dead than alive." Thus far *Martinius*; but whether theſe Barbarians make the ſame Uſe of the Muſk Cat as the *Chineſe*, is not certainly known.

After travelling ſome Days amongſt this Nation, I arrived at *Jekutſkoi*, a City ſituate on the River *Angara*; and after a ſhort Stay here to reſt myſelf, on the firſt of *March* I ſet forward by Land in Sleads, to the Lake or Meer of *Baikol*, which I reached on the tenth of the ſame Month, and found it frozen up very hard.

I paſſed over this Lake, and ſafely arrived at *Kabania*. This Lake is about ſix *German* Miles broad, and forty long: The Ice in it was full two Ells thick, and it is very dangerous when the Paſſengers are overtaken by a great Snow, or a high Wind; and the Horſes which draw the Sleads muſt be very ſharp ſhod, by Reaſon the Ice is all over very ſlippery; and even on Land here is no Snow found to lie, but it is immediately driven away by the Wind. Here are ſeveral broken Places, or Wind-Holes, that are not frozen up, which prove very dangerous to Travellers, when ſurprized with tempeſtuous Winds; for the Horſes, if not ſharp ſhod, by the Fury of the Winds are driven on ſo violently, that they cannot tread ſure, but ſliding and falling on the ſlippery Ice, are hurried on by the Wind, till they

and the Slead too are ſwallowed up in one of theſe open Places; by which ſeveral Men and Horſes are loſt: Beſides, to augment the Danger, the Ice of this Lake is ſometimes torn open ſeveral Fathoms by ſudden Winds, which make a Noiſe as loud and terrible as Thunder-Claps; but after the Expiration of a few Hours, the Ice joins again, and becomes quickly as cloſe as before.

On the twenty-ninth of *April* I had the good Fortune to put an End to my Travels in this uncouth, uninhabited Road, and to reach the Fortreſs of *Jarauna*. The Caſtle of *Jarauna* is garriſoned by *Coſſacks* and alſo inhabited by ſeveral *Ruſſians*, who depend upon Sable hunting. The Heathens which poſſeſs this Country are called *Konni Tunguzi*, being a Sort of *Tunguzians*, which live along the Banks of the River *Angara*; though their Language is entirely different from all others. If any one of them dies, he is buried with his Cloaths and Bows under Ground; upon his Grave, Stones are laid, and a Pole erected, to which is faſtened his beſt Horſe, being firſt ſhot to Death. They live entirely on Sable-hunting, and the Furrs of theſe Animals are extraordinary black in this Place.

Lodging here one Night, a *Tunguzian* Knezets, or Prince, whoſe Name was *Liliulka*, came to viſit me; he had prodigious long Hair, which for that Reaſon he bound up in a Leather Band, and wound three Times round his Shoulders. I was very curious to ſatisfy myſelf whether his Hair was really ſo long as I was told; to which Purpoſe I cauſed him to be intoxicated with Brandy, by which Civility I obtained the Favour of having his Hair looſened, and I found it to be all his natural Hair only, for I examined it very narrowly; and meaſuring it with an Ell, to my great Surprize, was convinced that it was four *Dutch* Ells long. He had a Son of ſix Years of Age, whoſe Hair growing in Imitation of his Father's, hung down over his Back the Length of an Ell, wanting an eighth Part. This Sort of *Tunguzian* Heathens live on the Hills in great Multitudes. Part of them grow rich by catching the moſt fine and beautiful Sables, for which they receive great Sums of Money.

Departing

Departing from hence, we arrived on the twentieth of *May*, through Divine Mercy, without being once attacked, at *Nerzinſkoy*, which lies on the River *Nerza*, that runs from North-North-Eaſt, and about a Quarter of a Mile from the City falls Southward into the *Schilka*. This City is tolerably ſtrong, provided with ſeveral Braſs Guns, and a great Garriſon of *Daurian Coſſacks*, both Horſe and Foot.

Here are vaſt Quantities of red, and alſo of Snow white Pæonies, which diffuſe an extraordinary fragrant Scent, and ſeveral other Flowers, with which I was unacquainted. Here are Roſemary, Thyme, Marjoram, Lavender, and ſeveral other odoriferous Plants unknown to me, which grow ſpontaneouſly in great Abundance: The Fruits here are only red and black Currans, *&c.* agreeable to the Climate.

Here are two Sorts of Heathens, who all live in Huts, called in their Language *Jurten*, the Inſide of which is compoſed of wooden Poles jointed together; ſo that whenever they are willing to remove their Dwellings, as they frequently do, they may conveniently pack them up, and carry them all together.

This wooden Work, when ſet up, is thatched all over with Hair and Rubbiſh, except only the Smoke-Hole left open at Top. They place their Fire in the Midſt of their Huts, and ſit round it upon Turffs. Their Religion is the ſame with that of the *Daorn* or *Daurians*, from whence they pretend to be deſcended: So that indeed, throughout all *Great Tartary*, to the Beginning of the *Mongalian Tartars*, there is a very great Similitude in Religion.

Both Men and Women in this Country are very ſtrong, and broad faced; and both Sexes, not excepting the young Girls, ride on Horſeback, and are equally armed with Bows and Arrows, in the Uſe of which they are very expert. The Female Dreſs is the ſame with the Male. Their common Drink is Water; but the better Sort drink *Kara't Ka*, or Black Tea, which is a particular Species of that Plant, the Infuſion of which, inſtead of greeniſh, tinctures the Water blackiſh: They boil it in Mare's Milk and Water, to which they alſo add a little Lard or Butter. They alſo

draw off a Sort of Brandy from Mare's Milk, which they call *Kunnen*, or *Arak*, and is diſtilled in the following Manner: The new Milk is firſt boiled, then put into a Fat, to which is added ſome ſtale Milk, and this Mixture is ſtirred every Hour: After which this ſoured Milk is put into a Pot, and cloſely covered with another Pot which ſhuts tight upon it, into which a Reed is ſtuck, and the Pot firmly luted, and ſet over the Fire to diſtill as in *Europe:* But the Spirit muſt be twice drawn off; then it is fit to drink, being as clear and ſtrong as Malt Spirits, and very ſoon intoxicates. It is really very ſurprizing that none of the Cows in *Siberia* and *Dauria* as long as their Calves ſuck them, will ever permit themſelves to be milked; nor will they, after the Calf is removed from them, give any more Milk: Which is the Reaſon why Mare's Milk is ſo much uſed by theſe People, which is alſo richer and more agreeable than Cow's Milk.

In Spring and Autumn theſe Heathens go a hunting, like the *Burattians*, in order to provide themſelves againſt Summer and Winter with ſufficient Store of Fleſh; which they alſo, as well as that Nation, dry in the Sun. Inſtead of Bread, they gather the Pods of yellow Lillies, which they call *Sarana*, and having dried and beaten them to Meal, they dreſs them ſeveral Ways to eat. They are very expert at ſhooting Fiſh in the Water with a Sort of Arrows, which are round, ſolid, and about three Fingers thick at the Head; at the End of which, under the Iron Point, is a Ball of Bone bored through, which occaſions a loud whiſtling Noiſe in its Flight. Theſe Arrows are ſo heavy, that they do not ſhoot them farther at moſt than fifteen or twenty Fathom, and chiefly at large Fiſh, as Jacks and Trout, which harbour in clear Water on the rocky Ground near the Shores. And when theſe Arrows hit, they make a ſurprizing large Orifice, which looks as if it were a Cut given by a Hatchet. The moſt ſolemn Oaths among theſe People, is killing a Dog and drinking his Blood.

On the twelfth of *Auguſt* we reached the River *Terbu*, which is alſo but ſmall and ſhallow, and likewiſe falls Weſtward into *Argun*. On the next Day we came to the River

Gan,

Gan, which occaſioned us a very troubleſome Paſſage, it being ſo deep by Reaſon of the ſwollen Waters, that no Camel could reach the Bottom; ſo that we were forced to ſearch for Trees in this deſolate uninhabited Wilderneſs, where no other Hope was left; which having felled, we bound in Couples, to carry over our Goods and travelling Proviſions: And for our own Paſſage we alſo made a Sort of Boats of ſmall Twigs, which we covered with Ox-Hides ſewed together, which proved tolerable Barks, and would carry about a thouſand Pounds Weight. The Horſes, Oxen and Camels, ſwam over, which indeed the laſt did very eaſily; for as ſoon as they loſe Footing on the Ground, they turn themſelves on one Side, without ſtirring their Feet, like a floating Leather Bag, no more Care being neceſſary than to bind five or ſix of them faſt together by the Bridles and Tails, and let ſome Body ſwim a Horſe before them, which is faſtened to the Bridle of the firſt, and conſequently tows him along; without which Precaution they would drive ſeveral Miles down the Stream before they got over; and even notwithſtanding this, they drove conſiderably downwards. This tedious uneaſy Paſſage coſt us ſome Days Time, the River being broad, and the Tide rapid and ſtrong.

Breaking up from thence on the 19th of the ſame Month, on the 21ſt we reached the River *Mergeen*. On the 23d we came to another River called *Kailar*, the Water of which being low, we paſſed it without any Trouble.

On the firſt of *September* I came to the *Jaliſchian* Mountains, lodged there, and found my Poſt-Meſſenger (who was a *Ruſſian* Gentleman that I had diſpatched to *Xixigar*) was returned, and arrived here before me, and had already waited ſome Days for me. He was accompanied with a *Chineſe* Captain and ten Men, which were ſent to meet me. When I ordered him to be brought to me, he complimented me from his Lords, who had expreſly ſent him to meet me, and in their Name preſented me with ſome neceſſary Refreſhments, as fifteen Sheep, ſome Tea, Loaf-Sugar, and twenty Horſes for my Uſe; which I thankfully accepted, and in Return made the Captain ſeveral Preſents.

From

From the River *Kailar* to theſe Mountains we travelled through ſteep Rocks and high Hills, with which the Valleys which we paſſed through, were encompaſſed on both Sides. There are alſo a few ſmall Thickets ſcattered up and down, except which, the whole Way is void of all Trees or Woods, which ſometimes gave us the Trouble of carrying the Wood which we wanted for our Kitchen, from one Lodging-Place to another.

Theſe Valleys are wholly covered with fine Graſs, as the Mountains are ſtocked with all Sorts of Herbs and Flowers; beſides which, this Country plentifully abounds with large Harts, Roebucks, and wild Sheep, which frequently appear in great Herds of many Hundreds together: Here are alſo large Flocks of wild Geeſe, Ducks, wild Turkies, and Partridges.

On the fifth of *September* we got Sight of the firſt *Targazinian* Huts, and the next Day we paſſed by the laſt of them. The *Targazinians* are a ſeparate independent Hord or Clan, which are obliged to pay Tribute to the Emperor of *China*: They are governed by their own Chief, but obey thoſe who are moſt potent in *Tartary*. They are an Infidel Heathen Nation, and are ſaid to worſhip the Devil. Their Cattle are chiefly Horſes, Camels, Bulls, Cows and Sheep; the laſt of which are very fine and large, the Tail being a large Span thick, and two Spans long, all of which is Fat; and they are ſo very heavy, that they cannot go faſt, much leſs run. Theſe People ride very commonly upon Oxen, and are very expert Archers: They make great Quantities of Bows, which are eſteemed the very beſt in all *Tartary*, and are therefore ſold very dear.

We paſſed by theſe People on our Journey on the charming Banks of the River *Jalo*, with the utmoſt Pleaſure; but now turned our Eyes from thence downwards towards the South. I cannot help owning, that the Side of this River is perfectly a Paradiſe, as conſiſting of beautiful Paſture Grounds, ſilver Streams, and the pleaſanteſt Woods in the World; and the moſt delicious Entertainment of the Eye is not a little improved by the Proſpect of the riſing Ground, and beautiful tow'ring Hills, which offer themſelves to our View,

View, at about a Mile and a half Diſtance on each Side, and are a perfect Warren or Park of wild Game; great Numbers of wild Swine, Harts, and vaſt Herds of Tygers and Panthers, harbouring under theſe ſhady Mountains. Here are Multitudes of wild Ducks, a ſmall Sort of Geeſe called *Turpani*, adorned with all Sorts of variegated Feathers, like thoſe in *India*, and a particular Sort of extraordinary beautiful Partridges, the Feathers of which are of ſeveral Colours, their Tails about an Ell long; which prove very delicate, being in Taſte, as well as Size and Shape, like Pheaſants.

On the before-mentioned Day, being obliged to leave this charming River, I turned off on the Left from it to the South-Eaſt, and ſpent the eighth, ninth and tenth Days, in travelling betwixt Mountains and Rocks on each Side, where we were afflicted with the Want of Wood and Water, being obliged to content ourſelves with what the Pits yielded of the latter, which was of a deep brown Colour, and almoſt ſtunk.

Having on the 11th, by the Protection of God, reached the Borders of *China*, I immediately diſpatched away a Meſſenger Poſt to the *Adaganda*, or *Mandaryn*,* who had been ſent from *Pegu* to receive me; and on the twelfth, early in the Morning, I ſet forwards, having ranged my Retinue in good Order; and was quickly informed by the Return of my Meſſenger, that the *Mandaryn*, accompanied with eighty Men, would ride from the Town of *Xixigar* to meet me, and was already advanced on his Way.

We approached each other but ſlowly, and met about a Quarter of a Mile ſhort of the Town, where I was very civilly welcomed by the *Mandaryn*; and after mutual Compliments were paſſed, we rode forwards together in Order, (making a very good Appearance) till we reached the Town, where a very good Houſe was provided for me, and thoſe of my Retinue were well lodged, ſuitable to their Characters, as well as the *Coſſacks* which I had with me, in the beſt Houſes in the Town.

This Province is ſituated in a very variable, and withal unwholeſome Climate. About Noon generally riſes a high Wind,

* *Mandaryn* is the Title which the *Chineſe* give to Governors of Cities, and all Officers of State.

Wind, that continues about two Hours; but otherwiſe the Sky is very ſeldom overcaſt, ſo that the Sun continues to ſhine very hot almoſt always; by Means of which, and the conſtant Wind, the Earth is ſo dried, and driven upwards, that the ſubtile white Duſt is ſcarce ſupportable. I was very particular in my Obſervation of the Alteration of the Air, when I came from betwixt the Hills. About five Miles from *Xixigar*, I perceived the Air to be cloudy as far as the Mountains extended, but no farther; and particularly, where the Hills ended, the Air was clearly and viſibly ſeparated by a windy Arch, from the Weſt to the Eaſt, towards the *Albanian* Mountains; a very extraordinary Phænomenon, which I aſſert as an Eye-Witneſs.

As for what happened to myſelf, the *Mandaryn*, who was an agreeable well bred Man, very civilly invited me to take a Meal with him, at which I was received with particular Expreſſions of Kindneſs, and ſplendidly treated: The Entertainment was compoſed of good Soups, ſavoury Herbs, and roaſt and bak'd Meats; all which were followed with a Banquet of Sweet-Meats and *Chineſe* Fruit. His Men and Soldiers were all diſpoſed in the beſt Order, each as perfectly and reſpectfully knowing and taking his Station as is poſſible in *Europe*. What alone was very uneaſy to me, was, that I was obliged to ſit with him on the Tapiſtry, with my Legs acroſs and under me, which is to Strangers a very troubleſome Cuſtom.

On the fifteenth I treated the *Mandaryn* in Return, having cauſed him to be invited the Day before. I entertained him in the *European* Manner, and put a Glaſs of good Sack briſkly about, cauſing the Trumpets and other Muſick to play; all which wonderfully pleaſed this Gentleman, ſo that he and his Company returned Home pretty mellow, and were mightily ſatisfied with the *European* Civility.

On the twenty-fifth, the ſame *Mandaryn* again entertained us, and the following Day dined with me. During which Interval of Time, I cauſed all neceſſary Preparations to be made for me and my Retinue, in order to our proceeding on our Journey to *Peking*. I informed the *Mandaryn* that I was ready, who immediately anſwered very civilly, that

purſuant

purſuant to the Order of his *Amologda Chan*, or King, as many Coachmen or Waggoners as were neceſſary, were prepared to wait on me, if I pleaſed to accept of his Company, and ſet forwards on the 28th Inſtant.

Before I invite the Reader to accompany me in this Journey, I think myſelf obliged in few Words to deſcribe what appeared to me remarkable amongſt the Inhabitants of this Province of *Xixigar*.

About a Quarter of a Mile from this Frontier Town, runs the River *Naun*, on which is ſituate the City of *Naunkoton*, lately built, and encompaſſed with Earthen Walls, well lined, and covered on the Outſide with maſſy Timber. The Inhabitants of this City, and the ſix large Southern Villages ſubordinate to it, are called *Daori*, or *Old Dauri*; and at preſent this Country is called *Dori*, by the *Tartars* which inhabit all along the River *Nauna* and *Jallo* to *Albazin*. Theſe People have very rich manured Lands, and all Sorts of Garden Fruits, and ſeveral Tobacco Plantations; but their Religion is impious and diabolical; for according to their own Report, they are all *Schammans*, or Conjurers, who invoke the Devil. Several Neighbours of both Sexes frequently aſſemble together about Midnight; one of them lies with his Body extended on the Earth, and the By-ſtanders with exalted Voices make a diſmal Howl: Others beat on a Sort of Drums; which ceaſing for a ſmall Interval, the Howl is renewed, and ſometimes laſts for two Hours, until he that lies on the Earth ſeems returned to his Senſes, and after a tedious Howling, riſes up and relates where he hath been, and what he hath ſeen and heard; after which, whatever any of the Company are deſirous to be informed of, concerning future Events, or other Particulars, is propoſed to him: And while I ſtaid there, no Night paſſed without this hideous Howling of theſe diabolical Miniſters.

They keep their Dead three Days in their Houſes, then bury their Corpſe in a high-rais'd Grave in the Gardens or Fields; after which it is daily viſited by the Relations of the Deceaſed, a Hole being left open at the Head; to which Place they bring the Dead all Sorts of Victuals and

Drink, conveying theſe Eatables by a Spoon made for that Purpoſe to the very Mouth of the Deceaſed, but leave the Drink ſtanding in ſmall Tin Cups round the Grave: This Practice laſts for ſeveral Weeks; which ended, they bury the ſtinking Carcaſe a good Way deeper in the Earth.

They live in Houſes of Clay or Earth, covered with Reeds, or ſmall Bamboes, ſomewhat like the Peaſants thatched Houſes in *Europe*. The Walls on the Inſide are partly white, being plaiſtered with Lime. The Middle of the Houſe is furniſhed with an erected Pillar, about which are wound the Entrails of Beaſts, by which hang a little Bow and Arrows, Pikes and other Arms: To all this they ſometimes, by bowing and Proſtrations, pay an idolatrous Sort of Worſhip. Their Houſes are not partitioned into Chambers, nor have they any Garrets; but almoſt one half of the Houſe cloſe to the Walls, is taken up all round with a large Bench of an Ell high, and about two Ells broad, covered with red Matts; under theſe Benches paſſes a Chimney, through which the Fire is kindled by the Door of the Houſe, and the Smoke goes out at the other Side of it. And this Chimney in Winter ſerves inſtead of a Stove, tho' the Habitation is not much warmed by it; but the Inhabitants which ſit on this Bench in the Day Time, and lie on it at Night, are indeed ſomewhat the better for it. There are conſtantly in theſe Dwellings two fixed Iron Kettles, in one of which is warm Water to make Tea, and the other is reſerved for boiling of Victuals. The Houſe is all round provided with ſquare Windows, which are letticed with Paper inſtead of Glaſs, and in warm Weather they are ſet open with a Stick, to make Way for the cool Breezes to paſs through the Apartment.

Theſe People are generally well ſhaped, but more eſpecially the Women. The Men, Women, and young Girls, wear the ſame Habit as the *Manſiourian Tartars* in *China*. The Secretaries of the *Mandaryns*, which are in the Service of the *Chan*, and are ſent hither or to any other Place in *Tartary*, whenever they are inclined to Venereal Pleaſures, ſeize for their own Uſe as many Wives, as well as young Virgins, as they like, at Pleaſure; and I have frequently

ſeen

ſeen them carry off the moſt beautiful Creatures on Waggons, as to the Slaughter

Leaving this Frontier Nation on the 28th Inſtant, and ſetting forward with the *Mandaryn* from *Xixigar*, by the Evening we reached a Village, where we paſſed that Night. On the 29th we paſſed through ſeveral Villages and arrived on the other Side of the *Jalo*, where it falls into the *Naunda*.

After four Days travelling, without the Sight of ſo much as one Houſe, we came to an old ruined City, encompaſſed with a Quadrangular Mud Wall, about a *German* Mile in its Circumference; and after five Days more travelling over a hilly Country, utterly deſtitute of Houſes, we reached another old deſolate City, called *Taiming Zingh*, fortified with a ſquare Wall, and Bulwarks: There are in it two Towers or Turrets, one very high and the other leſs: The largeſt was an *Octagon*, the Front of which was built with Brick, and about ten Fathom from the Ground, there was on each of the eight Sides, Stones placed, on which were carved ſeveral Hiſtories. Upon ſome of them are expreſſed ſome great Perſonages or Kings, as big as the Life, ſitting with their Feet under them, and Attendants on each Side of them: Others ſhew us ſeveral Figures which ſeemed to repreſent Queens folding their Hands together, with their Servants on each Side; the Queens having Crowns on their Heads, and the other being adorned with Rays or Luſtres, as Saints are commonly painted, and alſo folding their Hands: All which ſeems to hint that this Tower muſt be built by Chriſtians.

Other Parts of it repreſented Warriors with Pikes, after the *Chineſe* Manner, and the King bare-headed in the Middle, with a Scepter in his Hand, and all the By-ſtanders appearing with hideous diabolical Viſages; and the Proportion of all theſe Images ſo exactly obſerved, that they looked like the Works of *European* Maſters.

This Turret was perfectly cloſe on all Sides, with no Kind of Aſcent without, or Entrance into it. Several large Heaps of Bricks lay in the City, beſides a great many Stone Statues as big as the Life, in the Figures of Men and Idols, Grave Stones, great Stone Lions, and Tortoiſes of an uncommon

Largeneſs: By all which this ſeemed to have been a Place where ſome *Chan* or King had formerly reſided.

The *Chineſe* relate, that many hundred Years paſt, *Utai-chan*, or *Un-Chan*, a *Tartarian* King, governed here, but was conquered and driven out of his Country by a *Chineſe* King. The City, as near as I could gueſs, was above a *German* Mile in Circuit.

In ſeveral Places amongſt the Mountains, we obſerved Brick Turrets ſtanding, which ſeemed to be antient Burying Places of the *Tartars*. In theſe Hills I obſerved an infinite Variety of known and unknown Plants, extending for the Space of ſeveral Miles as thick with Thyme and Marjoram as Graſs.

After having travelled four Days further, we came to *Burgan Koton*, or *Idol* City, as it is called, which is likewiſe utterly laid waſte: It takes its Name from being a Place where formerly only the principal Heathen Prieſts lived. It had a Mud Wall, moſt of which is at preſent fallen down. In the Middle of the City is a high octangular Stone Turret, built in the *Chineſe* Manner, and hung with ſeveral hundreds of ſmall Iron Bells; which, whenever the Wind riſes a little, chime with a Silver Sound, which is very agreeable. There was an Entrance into this Steeple, by which I ſent ſome of our People up, to ſee what was to be found in it: They informed me, that in ſeveral dark Holes they ſaw many thouſands of *Chineſe* or Heathen Idols of ſeveral Shapes, and that they were very glad they were got back again.

Half a Mile from hence is a *Chineſe* Village, moſtly inhabited by *Lama*'s, (for where the Corpſe is, thither the Eagles flock,) they entertaining all *Tartars* travelling this Way, and inſtructing them in the dark Errors of their antient Idols. We paſſed on over ſandy and downy Land, on which was a low Hill, with ſome old Birch-Trees ſtanding on it: This Hillock is, according to their Manner, eſteemed ſacred by the *Mongalians*, and the neighbouring *Tartars*: And thoſe who travel by it, as a religious Offering in Honour of this Place, in order to obtain a good Journey, hang ſomething of that which they have about their Body here, either Caps, Cloaths, Purſes,

Purſes, Boots, Breeches, Shirts, Switches, *&c.* upon the Trees, which from the Top to the Bottom are ſo full charg'd with this Trumpery, that they ſeem to be Shops; and it is thought very ſcandalous to remove any of them, for they muſt hang and rot upon the Principle of their Religion.

After this, we reached a ſmall City called *Kara-Katon*, or *Black City*; which is Quadrangular, and encompaſſed with Oaken Palliſadoes driven into the Ground, which ſerve rather to defend it from Tygers and Leopards, than the Enemy; the Land all about being covered with high Rocks, on which grow Thickets of Oaks, and great Quantities of Graſs, where Multitudes of thoſe Beaſts harbour, as well as wild Swine and Harts.

The Emperor of *China* annually in *Auguſt* comes a Tyger-hunting to this Place, accompanied with two or three thouſand of the beſt Archers in *Tartary*, and a Party of Lancers. When the Tygers are to be put up, the Emperor himſelf goes to the Foot of the Hill along with the Men that attend him, armed with Lances, Bows, and Arrows, who inveſt the Hill, and beſet it very well up to the Top; and when they find the Tygers there, they ſeeing themſelves beſet, endeavour by leaping to break through the Croud, but are hunted with Drums and Bells till they come to the Place where the Emperor himſelf is, who ſhoots down the Game with Bow and Arrow, without any Hazard of his Perſon; for if there happen but the leaſt Danger, he is encompaſſed with ſo many Men, that they eaſily defend him from the wild Beaſt with their Lances. The Emperor paſſes ſome Weeks in this Sport; by Intervals putting up alſo ſome edible wild Game, as Swine, Harts, Roebucks, Hares, beſides Wolves and Foxes.

We obſerved hereabouts, in the Fields and Trees, a Sort of Birds, in Size and Shape very like a Heron, the Feathers of which are very beautiful, their Neck and Breaſt being white, their Wings and Tail of a bright Scarlet, their Fleſh firm and very good Meat; we ſaw alſo another Bird which was as big as a Parrot, his Bill crooked, his Tail a full Ell long, and chequered with all Sorts of fine Colours; but he is ſo very wild, that he will not ſuffer any one to come near

near enough to take him: Here are likewiſe Partridges with long Tails and beautiful variegated Feathers.

Not far from hence we came to a ſteep Rock, the Aſcent of which was very crooked and winding, and was for above two hundred Fathom hewn through by Men, and a Way cut which was ſeven Fathom broad, probably for the Convenience of Travellers; the other Side of this Rock, by Reaſon of the deep Moraſs, being impaſſable. We paſſed hereabouts continually by ſteep Rocks, furniſhed with Oaks and Limes, and in the Vales Cheſtnut and large Nut-Trees, as well as Vines, grew wild.

From hence we went forwards, and came to a very high Rock, ſharp-pointed at the Top, and, by Reaſon of its Steepneſs, impoſſible to be climbed: On one Side of which, about half Way up, is an Idol Temple hewn out of the Rock: It hath four Windows, and inſtead of Idols, we ſaw four Stone Statues in a ſitting Poſture. It is not a little to be wondered how it was poſſible for Men to come there, and perform ſuch a great Piece of Work; the Rock on that Side being ſo extraordinary ſteep, that a Mouſe cannot get up it. This Temple, according to the Report of the Inhabitants, hath been built ſeveral hundred Years.

On the 27th of *October* we reached ſome Watch-Towers on the Pinacles of the Rocks; from whence we got Sight of the *Zagan Crim*, that is, the great Wall, which we came to on the ſame Day. This really ſeems to be one of the Wonders of the World. About five hundred Fathom * from this famous Wall is a Valley, each Side of which was provided with a Battery of hewn Stone, from one of which to the other a Wall about three Fathom high is erected, with an open Entrance. Paſſing through this fore Wall, we came to the Entry of the great Wall, through a Watch-Tower, about eight Fathom high, arched over with hewn Stone, and provided with maſſy Doors, ſtrengthened with Iron: The Wall runs from the Eaſt to Weſt acroſs the Valley, and up extraordinary high Rocks, and about five hundred Fathom diſtant from the other hath on the Rocks on each Side of it a Tower built on it. The Foot of this Wall was of large hewn Quarrey Stone for about a Foot high, and the remaining

* A Fathom is Six Feet.

remaining upper Part was compoſed of Brick and Lime; but, as far as we can ſee, the whole was formerly built with the ſame Stone. Within this firſt Port we came into a Plain full one hundred Fathom broad; after which we came to another Guard-Port, which had a Wall on each Side, and like the firſt Wall, was carried quite acroſs the Vale: And this, as well as the firſt Port, was guarded by a Watch of fifty Men. On the firſt or great Wall ſtands an Idol Temple, with the Enſigns of the Idol and the Emperor flying on the Top of it. The Wall is full ſix Fathom high, and four thick, ſo that ſix Horſemen may eaſily ride a-breaſt on it, and was in as good Repair as if it had not been erected above twenty or thirty Years ſince; no Part of it being fallen, nor annoyed by the leaſt Weed or Filth, as other old Walls are obſerved to be.

After this laſt Watch-Tower, we came into a Vale about three hundred Fathom over, on which grew ſome large Willows; and on the Weſt Side, at the Foot of the Rock, was a magnificent Temple; a Muſket-ſhot from whence we came to the City of *Galchan*, which is encompaſſed with a high quadrangular Wall, but is not very populous. Here I was welcomed by the Diſcharge of three Iron Guns, and continued all Night in the Suburbs. The Streets were ſo beſet with the Concourſe of People, that it was difficult to paſs them, being drawn together by the Sound of our Trumpets and Bagpipes, which ſeemed very ſtrange to them, they never having heard any ſuch Muſick before. In the Evening the *Mandaryn* ſent to compliment me, and invited me to ſup with him at the Royal Palace, where the Emperor reſides when he paſſes this Way. Upon my coming thither, beſides the *Mandaryn*, I found there the Governor and the greateſt Officers of the City; and after we had drank ſome Diſhes of Tea, I was entertained with a noble Supper, all the Action of a Play, and a Specimen of Muſick, after their Faſhion, conſiſting of all Sorts of Kettle Drums and ſtringed Inſtruments, which made a hideous confuſed Noiſe; ſo that I could have rather wiſhed myſelf at a Diſtance, than near it. They ſate on Stools by Couples, no more than two at each Table. Theſe Tables were finely

finely japanned, and covered with exquiſite Needle-work Silk Carpets. They uſe no Table-Cloths, Napkins, Knives, Forks or Plates; but only two ſmall round Sticks of Ivory or Ebony were laid upon the Table, which was its whole Furniture; but indeed they are ſo wonderfully expert in the Uſe of theſe Sticks, that they can with them take up any Thing, though of the Size of a Pin's Head. They hold them in the Right Hand, betwixt the Thumb and the two fore Fingers. All their Victuals, whether Soups, Rice, ſtewed or roaſted Meats, are brought to Table in *China* Veſſels, and not in Diſhes: Each Sort of Roaſt is ſerved up alone, cut into ſmall Pieces; but the Banquet of Sweetmeats and Fruit was diſhed up in little *China* Baſons. Their Soups and Pottages are extraordinary grateful to the Taſte, as being enriched with very delicious Herbs and Spices, as Mace, Cinnamon, *&c.* The Herb they boil in their Soups grows on Rocks in the Sea, and, being boiled, appears ſlimy, and when dried is green, as it alſo looks in the Soups. This Plant hath no Leaves, but grows with interwoven Branches, and is of a very agreeable Taſte, and eſteemed very wholeſome; ſome think it to be abortive *Satyrion*, or Bird's-Neſt. They alſo dreſs ſtripped Shrimps, and Pidgeons Eggs with the Whites tinged red and yellow: They have beſides, fine Salleting, eſpecially Endive cut in ſmall long Slips, being very agreeable both to the Taſte and Smell: This they lay uppermoſt in their former Diſh. Their Soups are not to be mended by our *German* Cooks, or perhaps any other.

Inſtead of Saltſellers, they have ſmall Saucers of Pickle or Brine, into which the Meat is dipped. By Reaſon they uſe no Spoons, each Perſon takes the Cup of Soup ſet before him, and ſups it up; but that Part which is too groſs, he guides to his Mouth with the round Sticks, that nothing may run beſides or foul their Cloaths, uſing no Napkins, though indeed their Handkerchiefs hang by their Sides, with which they only wipe their Mouths.

In the publick Eating-Houſes, or Ordinaries, the Carver ſtands at the Table with the Roaſt Meat before him; which, in Preſence of the Gueſts, he cuts into ſmall Bits, puts them

them into little Cups, and ſets them on the Table. The Carver makes Uſe of no Cloth to wipe his Hands, but cuts off what is beſt dreſſed round the Bone as long as he can, and tears off the Remainder with his Hands, which are greaſed up to the Elbows ſo plentifully, that the Sight of them is enough to give the Spectators a Meal, more eſpecially ſuch as have ſqueamiſh Stomachs.

Their Drinks are Brandy, which they call *Arakka*, and a Sort of Wine they drink warm, called *Taraſu*, which is a Decoction of green or half-ripe Rice: and after it hath been kept a Year or two, in Colour, Taſte, and Strength, is very like the beſt *Rheniſh* Wine.

Whilſt we were at Table, the Maſter of the Band of Players upon his Knees preſented the *Mandaryn* with a Book of red Paper, containing a Liſt of Plays written in black Letters, which the *Mandaryn* peruſing, told him which Play he choſe; after this, bowing his Head to the Earth, he aroſe and begun the Performance immediately.

Firſt entered a very beautiful Lady, magnificently dreſſed in Cloth of Gold, adorned with Jewels, and a Crown on her Head, ſinging her Speech, with a charming Voice, and agreeable Motion of the Body, playing with her Hands, in one of which ſhe had a Fan. The Prologue thus performed, the Play followed, the Story of which turned upon a *Chineſe* Emperor long ſince dead, who had behaved himſelf well towards his Country, and in Honour of whoſe Memory the Play was written. Sometimes he appeared in Royal Robes, with a flat Ivory Sceptre in his Hand, and ſometimes his Officers ſhewed themſelves with Enſigns, Arms, Drums, *&c.* and by Intervals a Sort of Farce was acted by their Lacqueys, whoſe antick Dreſs, and painted Faces were as well as any I have ſeen in *Europe*; and, as far as was interpreted to me, their Farce was very diverting, eſpecially Part of it, which repreſented a Perſon, who had in his Marriage been cheated by a debauched Wife, and fancying her conſtant to him, had the Mortification to ſee another make Love to her before his Face. They alſo, according to their Manner, danced to the Lute; and after three ſeveral Plays were acted, and it grew towards Midnight, I took my Leave,

rid Home, ſet forwards on my Journey the following Day, and over a floating wooden Bridge paſſed the River *Lungo*, which comes from the Weſt, and flows South-Eaſtward into the Sea of *Corea*.

We paſſed through ſeveral conſiderable Towns and large Villages, all of which were very populous, and very conveniently provided with Horſes and all Manner of Neceſſaries for Travellers; here we obſerved more eſpecially great Numbers of Inns, Cook-Shops, and Tea-Houſes. In the Evening we came to the City of *Xungunxa*, where the *Mandaryn*, as before, invited me to Supper; but being indiſpoſed, and very much tired with a tedious Day's Journey, I civilly refuſed him, and ſtaying at Home, refreſhed myſelf with the charming Fruits of that Country, ſuch as Grapes, Limons, Oranges, Apples, Pears, Cheſtnuts, large and ſmall Nuts, *&c.* all exquiſite in their reſpective Kinds.

The following Day we travelled upon a high Rock, paſſing by the Temple called *Jugangu*, the Front of which appeared very beautiful, being all of ſquare Stone, and ſeemed to be a ſtrong Fort or Caſtle. Next Day we paſſed on the left Hand or Eaſt Side over a high Mountain, by a beautiful Cloyſter, and ſeveral Towns and Villages. This Temple is in the Province of *Peking*, and very famous, by Reaſon the Image of an antient *Chineſe* King, or falſe God, is kept there, which induces ſeveral Huſbandmen, not only from the neighbouring Villages, but even as far as the great Wall, to come hither in Pilgrimage in the Spring to implore a fruitful Summer, and after Harveſt to thank their Deity for a good Crop; to perform which Office whole Villages and Families reſort hither with their Prieſts. The Women being dreſſed in their beſt Apparel, ride on Aſſes in the middle of the Proceſſion. The Prieſts carry painted and metallick Repreſentations or Images of ſeveral Idols; and ſome of the Men carry a Sort of long Trumpets, others Flutes, Drums and Kettle Drums, with which they make a horrid Noiſe. They are all followed by a *Lama*, or Idolatrous Prieſt, with a Baſket faſtened to his Body, in which he carries triangular folded Papers, ſome gilded and others ſilvered over; theſe he ſcatters on the Way about 100 Fathom from

Immortality. . *The Great* Kin-Gang. Mi ni ſo, *or* Pleaſure.

from the Cloyſter, in Honour of the *Wonder-worker* or *Idol.* Another carries burning perfum'd Tapers, which laſt till they come to their deſigned Place. Theſe Pilgrims ſtay ſeveral Days there, paſſing their Time in all Manner of Diverſions as well as Devotions.

Proſecuting our Journey we paſſed by a City inhabited only by the Emperor's Concubines and their Retinue, where that Monarch ſtays ſeveral Days when he goes a Hunting. The City is not large, but hath a great many fine Stone Palaces covered with red Tiles; is full of Idol Temples, and encompaſſed with a high Stone Wall. About three Cannon Shot Weſt of this Place is a Spring of boiling hot Water, of which a hot Bath is made.

On the 2d of *November* we paſſed through ſeveral Towns and Villages, and over a Stone Bridge over the River *Tungo*, which brought us to the City of *Tunxo*, which is fortified by a great Wall, and is ſituate cloſe to the River *Tungo*. About as far as the mentioned Bridge, the Governor of the City and principal Officers, with a great Train of Horſemen, came to welcome me. The *Mandaryns* told me that this Governor was a very great Noble, by Birth a *Mongalian*, or *Eaſt-Tartar*, and a very affable well bred Man. He invited me and the *Mandaryns* to Dinner, and gave us a noble Entertainment, ſuitable to his Quality and Character.

The City of *Tunxo* is very large, populous, and a Place of great Trade, by Reaſon of the Water Carriage from thence to *Japan* and the Provinces of *Nanquing* and *Corea*. On this River, and haled on Shore by its Sides, lie a great many Jonks; beſides ſeveral which belong to the Emperor, and are richly adorned with carved Work, Galleries, and Windows. In theſe Barges the Governors of Places are carried to their appointed Cities, landed, and afterwards brought Home again. Thoſe Jonks which are haled on Shore are inhabited in Winter like Houſes, though there is indeed but very little Winter here, nor doth the River ever freeze up, though ſometimes Ice appears on the Shore. Theſe Jonks or Barks are indifferent large, and built very ſtrong. When they lie on the Wharfs the Joints, inſtead of Pitch and Tar, are ſtopped and ſmeared over with a Sort of Clay mixed

with ſome other Ingredients, which once dried keeps faſter and firmer than any Pitch. The Maſts are a Sort of *Bamboes*, hollow within, but yet very ſtrong; and ſome of them are as thick as an ordinary Man's Waſte. The Sails are a certain Sort of Ruſhes woven together, that when furled, fold up as pliable as Flags, which is ſomewhat ſurprizing. The Forepart of theſe Ships is very flat, being built Arch-wiſe from Top to Bottom, and very conveniently fitted for the Sea. Inſomuch that, according to the Report of the Inhabitants, with a good Wind, in one of theſe they can reach the *Koreæſchian Sea* in three or four Days; and ſuppoſing the Wind favourable, can in four or five Days Sail, gain from thence to the Kingdom or Empire of *Japan*, ſo little are they Novices in Sailing.

Paſſing through this City, I rode through the *China* Earthen Ware Market, where I ſaw vaſt Quantities of the fineſt *Porcelain* in the World. I alſo obſerved Abundance of *Pagods* or *Idol Temples* and Cloyſters; and after I had lodged a Night in the Suburbs, and got every Thing in Order, departed next Day, and proceeded forward till I entered *Peking*, this being the laſt Lodging-Place in my Way to that celebrated Capital of this extenſive Empire.

As China Ware is ſo univerſally uſed all over *Europe*, and ſo greatly admired, we ſhall here give an Account of the Manufacture of it, of what Materials it is compoſed, and in what Manner wrought.

" There are, excluſive of the Colours, three principal " Ingredients in *China*. Theſe Ingredients are a dry Earth, " a moiſt Clay, and a ſtony Oil.

" That which is ſtiled a dry Earth, is in Reality a kind " of Fire Stone cut out of the Quarries, and ſent by Water " to the Place where the Manufacture is carried on.

" There it is beat to Pieces, and reduced into a groſs " Powder; then with an Iron Peſtle it is beat in a Braſs " Mortar till it becomes as fine as poſſible; but they do not " give themſelves the Trouble of Sifting, from an Appre- " henſion that the fineſt Parts would fly off in the Operation. " On the contrary, they throw it, thus beaten into Water, " and giving it Time to ſettle, ſkim off, with great Nice-

" neſs

" neſs and Dexterity, the Cream, and this, in their figura-
" tive Way of Speaking, they ſtile the Fleſh of the *China*.
" As for the moiſt Clay, it is undoubtedly a Kind of Ful-
" ler's Earth, for they deſcribe it to be of a greyiſh White,
" very even, clammy, and, in ſhort, a Sort of natural Soap.
" This is likewiſe brought by Water, and is, generally
" ſpeaking, made up in the Form of Bricks; but as the
" *Chineſe* are for the moſt Part ſtrongly tinctured with the
" Spirit of Fraud, they very often adulterate this precious
" Clay, though it is not of a very great Price, with other
" Things that are however of leſs Price; and this obliges
" the Manufacturers to be at a great deal of Trouble in re-
" fining it, which is done by the help of Water; for it is a
" ſettled Rule, with Reſpect to theſe two Ingredients, never
" to make Uſe of Fire.

" This moiſt Clay is intermixed naturally with a Sort of
" ſparry Subſtance, which to the Eye looks like the Inſide
" of Oyſter Shells, and with which the whole Maſs is ſo
" thoroughly impregnated, that when it is purified and
" cleanſed from all other Mixtures, the ſmalleſt Particle of
" it, if broken, will diſcover Specks of this ſparry Matter.
" This ſecond Subſtance, when perfectly pure, they diſſolve
" in Water till it has acquired the Conſiſtency of the for-
" mer, and this they call the Bones of the *China*. For the
" fineſt Sort, theſe Materials are equally mixt and incorpo-
" rated; for the middle Sort, there are three Parts of dry
" Earth to two of moiſt Clay; for the coarſeſt *China*, they
" mix three Parts of the former with one of the latter.

" The third Ingredient is the Oil which is drawn from
" the dry Earth or Stone, by a very curious Proceſs, and
" this they mingle with another Oil extracted from Lime
" ſeven Times burnt. There is a very great Art in ma-
" king this Mixture, for in certain Proportions theſe Oils
" will incorporate, but thoſe Proportions vary continually,
" according to the Nature of the reſpective Liquors. The
" great Point therefore is to hit this exactly, and when this
" is done, there reſults from theſe two Oils a third, which is
" the laſt Ingredient, and ſerves for a Varniſh to the *China*.

" In

" In the Manufacture the ſeveral Pieces go through dif-
" ferent Hands, but the moſt troubleſome Part is preparing
" the Paſte, compoſed of the two firſt Ingredients, which
" are needed together upon Tiles, or rather upon Floors
" made of Tiles, till they become ſo cloſe and even, that,
" upon breaking, there does not appear the leaſt Vacuity;
" for a Hair, a Grain of Sand, the ſmalleſt Fragment of
" any Metal, if taken up in the Paſte, will infallibly ſpoil
" the Piece, into which it happens to light.

" When all this is performed, it comes into the Hands of
" the Potters, who firſt adjuſt the Weight of what they
" are to make, and then raiſing it in a rough Way, paſs it
" from Hand to Hand, every Man taking that Share of the
" Work in which his particular Talent lies; ſo that one
" applies it to the Mold, another pares it with the Chiſſel to
" a proper Thinneſs, a third ſmooths its Edges, and, in this
" Manner, a Cup and Saucer ſhall paſs through ſeventy
" Hands. When it is clear of the Potters, it comes to
" thoſe who give it the Oil or Varniſh, and with them it
" paſſes from Hand to Hand, according to their various
" Capacities, and their Addreſs in finiſhing different Sorts
" of Work.

" The Body of Painters receive it next, and as ſlight as
" we make of them, for indeed they have no other Inſtruc-
" tor than Nature, yet it is very wonderful how much
" Care and Pains they take. One traces the Border, ano-
" ther gilds it, he who draws the Outlines of a Flower ne-
" ver colours it, one Hand paints Clouds, another Water,
" a third Animals, a fourth Inſects, a fifth Human Figures,
" and ſo on. Laſt of all it arrives at the Furnace, and is
" committed to the Care of the Bakers; neither are their
" Taſks leſs difficult than thoſe of the other Workmen, for
" an exact Knowledge of the Degrees of Fire, how to
" raiſe, how to diſtinguiſh, how to heighten, how to reduce
" them, are requiſite in theſe People, who poſſeſs wonder-
" ful Talents in their Way.

" Beſides the five ſeparate Corps which make up what
" what may be ſtiled, the regular Workmen in this Manu-
" facture, there are a Variety of Branches belonging to it,

" that

" that occupy as great a Number of People, ſuch as thoſe " who prepare the ſeveral Ingredients, thoſe that make the " ſeveral Inſtruments and Tools that are required in the " Progreſs of this Work; thoſe that diſtil an Oil from " tranſparent Flints for the ſuperfine *China*, of which none " comes to *Europe*; thoſe that extract and prepare the Co- " lours, who are alſo exceeding ſkilful in their Way, are in- " comparable in their Preparations of Blues and Reds, and " underſtand perfectly the Art of compounding, ſo as by a " judicious Intermixture of the primary Colours, to produce " all the reſt with Truth and Beauty. After what has been " ſaid, the Reader perhaps will not think it altogether in- " credible, when he is told, that in *Kim te tchim*, there are " not fewer than one thouſand Furnaces or Laboratories; " to each of which belong diſtinct Companies of Workmen; " that the ſettled Inhabitants amount to eighteen thouſand " Families; and that the Number of Souls maintained by, " and depending upon this Manufacture in this Place, is " computed to fall very little ſhort of a Million.

" It is allowed that vaſt Quantities of this Ware are ex- " ported annually to *Europe*, which, like moſt other " Branches of their Commerce, muſt be extremely benefi- " cial to the *Chineſe*, who in Point of Oeconomy muſt be " acknowledged the wiſeſt Nation upon the Face of the " Globe: For though they love Magnificence, are no Ene- " mies to Pleaſure, and indulge Softneſs and Luxury to a " very great Degree, yet what the *French* call their *Police*, " is ſo extremely well regulated, that theſe ſeldom or never " create any Difficulties to the State. They encourage and " work by *European* Patterns, from a very wiſe and a judi- " cious Notion of pleaſing their Cuſtomers; but beſides " the *European* Market they vend vaſt Quantities of *Por-* " *celain* elſewhere; as for Inſtance they ſupply the whole " Empire of *Japan*, they ſend vaſt Quantities by the Cara- " vans into different Parts of *Tartary*, they ſupply all *India* " and *Perſia*; and the *Dutch* and *Portugueſe* take off very " large Aſſortments for the *European* Settlements in the " *Eaſt-Indies*, and for the other Countries with which they " trade.

" But

" But notwithſtanding this, the fineſt, richeſt and moſt " valuable *China* remains in that Empire, and is not ex- " ported at all, or at leaſt very rarely; there is particularly " a yellow *China*, which is deſtined to the Imperial Uſe, " and is prohibited to all others, tho' we are told, that the " Grand Signior always eats out of this kind of *Porcelain*; " but how he comes by it, is a Secret we have not been able " to penetrate. They have a kind of Crimſon *China*, which " is very fine and very dear, becauſe great Quantities of it " are ſpoiled in the Baking. They have another Sort of a " ſhining White, purfled with red, which is done by a dex- " terous blowing the Colour through a Gawſe, ſo that both " the Inſide and the Out is equally beautified with Crimſon " Spots, no bigger than Pins Points, and this muſt be ex- " ceſſively dear, ſince for one Piece that ſucceeds, a hun- " dred are ſpoiled. They have *China* purfled in the ſame " Manner with Gold, which is highly valuable for the ſame " Reaſon. They have a kind of *China*, which by drawing " Lines with a Hair Pencil, dipped in Oil of Flint, before " it is varniſhed, looks like *Moſaic* Work, or as if the *Chi-* " *na* had been cracked thorough in a thouſand Places, and " was ſet together again without Cement. They have a " kind of Violet colour'd *China*, with Figures compoſed " of green Specks, which is done by blowing the Colour at " once through a Figure pierced full of Holes, and this " ſucceeds ſo rarely, that a very ſmall Baſon is worth two " or three hundred Pounds. They have a kind of white " *China* exceſſively thin, with blue Fiſhes painted on the " Metal between the Varniſh, ſo that they are inviſible but " when the Cup is full of Liquor.

" Father *Anthony Solis*, a Portugueſe Miſſionary, who re- " ſided forty Years in *China*, and died at *Macao*, wrote a " Treatiſe which was never printed, though it very well de- " ſerved it of the Frauds of the *Chineſe*, and amongſt theſe " he reckons old *China*. He tells us, that no Country in " the World abounds ſo much with *Virtuoſi* as this, and " that theſe People, by giving high Prices for antique " *China*, have brought it into great Credit, but that by " the Help of a yellow Clay, Oils of ſeveral Kinds, ſome

of

" of which are Metallick, and laying the *China* for ſome " Months in Mud as ſoon as it comes from the Furnace, " they produce the very ſame Sort that is ſo highly valued " by the Vulgar, for being five or ſix hundred Years old.

" There is one Thing more that I ſhall add to this Diſ- " courſe, and that from the ſame Author; it is a Deſcrip- " tion of an antient Painting, making one Side of a Sum- " mer-Houſe, thirty-three Feet in Length, and ſeventeen " in Height, which ſeems to be a ſingle and perfect Plate " of *China*; though it is certain, that they can bake no- " thing of any Thing like that Size in a ſingle Piece. But " upon a ſtrict Inſpection, it appeared to be a Wall made " of *China* Bricks, the Face painted, varniſhed, and tho- " roughly baked by a Fire raiſed before it, and kept up a " proper Time. It appeared by the Hiſtory of the Town, " that the *Mandaryn*, at whoſe Expence it was done, failed " twelve Times in the Attempt, and that this was the thir- " teenth Wall of this Kind that had been erected.

" Every Trade in *China* has its peculiar Deity, or rather " Idol; and therefore it cannot be ſuppoſed, that ſo noble, " ſo gainful a Manufacture, ſhould want one, and yet this " was the Caſe for ſome hundreds of Years; at length a " bold Potter formed the bold Deſign of deifying him- " ſelf, and giving his Profeſſion a Protector, as other " Trades had. The Fact happened thus; A certain Em- " peror ordered a Number of Veſſels to be made of a Size " ſuperior to any in Uſe before his Time, and many Trials " were made to no Purpoſe; for notwithſtanding they in- " creaſed the Thickneſs of the Plates to ſeveral Inches, yet " when the full Heat was given, they melted and ſunk " down into a ſhapeleſs Maſs. At this the *Chineſe* Work- " man was at length ſo much provoked, that growing " frantick with Deſpair, he threw himſelf into the Furnace, " and was there conſumed to Aſhes in a Moment; and, " what was ſurprizing, the Attempt that was next made " ſucceeded happily; and the *Chineſe* Emperor had, ac- " cording to his Wiſh, ſuch *Porcelain* as never adorned the " Tables of his Predeceſſors. To reward the Courage of " ſo great a Hero, of which by the Way there are but few

" in this Country, and to perpetuate the Memory of ſo ex-
" traordinary an Action, it was agreed, that he ſhould be
" honoured as the tutelary God of *China* Ware, and his
" Idol is to this Day worſhipped by all the Fraternity of
" *Porcelain-makers*, under the Name of *Pou ſa*; to which
" they offer Prayers, cut Paper, and Incenſe, as to the
" other Idols.

" We ſhall, however, be much miſtaken, if we conſider
" *Pou ſa* as the only Martyr of this Trade, for in Fact
" there have been many thouſands, or rather Millions; for
" the Fatigues which they endure in every Branch of the
" Manufacture, but more eſpecially ſuch as attend the Fur-
" nace, is ſo great, that a quick Succeſſion in their Labours
" is occaſioned thereby. The Hills which ſurround the
" famous Town of *Kim te tehim*, are crouded with the
" Graves of theſe poor Labourers; but though ſuch Num-
" bers are buried there, yet there are far greater Numbers
" that die ſo poor as not to leave wherewith to bury them
" at all. For the Reception of theſe unhappy Wretches,
" there are vaſt Pits dug at the Bottom of the Hills, into
" which their Bodies are hurled without either Ceremony
" or Covering, except it be quick Lime, of which half its
" own Weight is beſtowed on every Corpſe. By this
" Means the Fleſh is quickly conſumed; and once a Year
" the *Bonzes*, from a Principle of Charity, as they pretend,
" come and collect the Bones which are burnt, and the Pit
" being purified by vaſt Fires, becomes again a Repoſitory
" for theſe Relicts of Mortality."

About Ten in the Morning we approached within half a Mile of *Peking*, and went by ſeveral magnificent Country Seats, belonging to the Inhabitants as well as *Mandaryns*; both Sides of the Way were adorned with theſe noble Buildings, before which were wide Canals, which ſerved to carry off the falling Water, with ſmall Stone Bridges over them, oppoſite to the Houſes. The Gardens were moſt of them fenced with Stone Walls, and adorned with carved Gates, and very fine Garden-Houſes; the largeſt Paths were planted on each Side with Cypreſſes and Cedars, which afforded a charming Proſpect and Paſſage through them.

The

The Gates of the fineſt Gardens were ſet open, I ſuppoſe on my Account. Theſe pleaſant Seats continued on each Side the Way to the Entrance of the City. It is alſo obſervable, that from the great Wall to *Peking*, at the Diſtance of about every half Mile, are Watch Towers, in each of which are five or ſix Soldiers, who Night and Day diſplay the Emperor's Flags and Enſigns, which are yellow: Theſe *Turrets*, like Beacons, ſerve on Occaſion of any Enemy appearing from the Eaſt, to light Fires on, to convey Notice of it to the Emperor, which is done ſo expeditiouſly, that in a very few Hours it reaches *Peking*.

The Land from the City of *Lania* hither is plain, and good Arable Ground; on which grows Rice, Barley, Millet, Wheat, Oats, Peas and Beans, but no Rye. The Roads here are very broad, perfectly ſtrait, and very well kept; for if but one Stone be found on them, it is immediately thrown to the Side by Perſons expreſly appointed for that Purpoſe. In all the Villages we ſaw Pails filled with Water, ſtanding ready for the Camels and Aſſes to drink; and, to my no ſmall Wonder, I obſerved that the great Roads through the Country, were as noiſy by the Multitude of Travellers and Waggons, as if they were the crouded Streets of a populous City. So wonderfully ſtocked is this vaſt Empire with Inhabitants.

After I had cauſed our Caravan, with all the travelling Baggage, to be diſpatched into the City an Hour before, I rode on in Order with my Convoy, and thoſe who were ordered to ride before me, making in all ninety Perſons, beſides ſeveral *Coſſacks*. The Croud at the Gates, and the Concourſe of People with which the Streets were lined, gave us ſome Interruption at our Entry into the City. Notwithſtanding there were ſeveral of the Emperor's Boſchy, or Harbingers, appointed to make Way for our Paſſage, yet they had enough to do to make us bare paſſing Room, the *Chineſe* being very curious to ſee Novelties. Being come near to the Ambaſſador's Court, ſeveral *Mandaryns* came to meet and compliment me on my Arrival. Both Sides of the Streets were lined with Soldiers, as well as the Court. Riding through which, they brought me to my Apartment,

where not myſelf only, but all my Retinue, were inſtantly ſtocked with all Manner of Proviſions and Refreſhments; and we every Morning returned Thanks to the Great GOD, who, after a long and difficult Journey of one Year and eight Months, had at laſt conducted us ſafe and well to our deſired Place, without the Loſs of any more than one Man, whoſe Death for that Reaſon has been particularly mentioned.

After a Repoſe of three Days, I expected to be informed when it would pleaſe the Emperor to admit me to Audience: And, according to the Cuſtom of this Country, that Day the Emperor's Orders came for me to appear, and receive a Welcoming or Meal. Upon which I prepared myſelf, and ſeveral great *Mandaryns* were appointed to conduct me up into the Caſtle; where the Viceroy, *Sungut Deriamba*, Uncle to the Emperor, and four of the greateſt Lords of the Empire, received and welcomed me. Here the Floor was over-ſpread with Carpets; upon which having ſeated myſelf with them, the Viceroy, in the Name of the Emperor, acquainted me that the Emperor his Maſter preſented me with this Table, or Entertainment; and though he could not himſelf be preſent, yet deſired I would accept this Meal, as a Welcome after ſuch a long Journey. After which, the Table was covered with cold Meats, as roaſt Geeſe, Chickens, Pork and Mutton, beſides all Sorts of Fruits and Confections: The Table appointed for me alone was about an Ell ſquare; upon which the Diſhes, that were all of Silver, and piled one upon another, amounted as I told them, to the Number of ſeventy.

They were entertained with Tea, and I with Taraſoen and Rheniſh Wines. The Viceroy and other Lords diverted themſelves by ſmoaking Tobacco, and he made his Compliment to me in the following Words: He deſired that I would accept of this Entertainment, as a Teſtimony of the Emperor's Favour, and expect his Orders in a few Days to bring their *Czariſh* Majeſties Credentials, and receive my publick Audience; upon which riſing up, and thanking him for the Emperor's Favours, I returned to the Ambaſſador's Court.

On

On the 12th of *November*, the Viceroy ſent ſome *Mandaryns* to give me Notice to appear with their *Czariſh* Majeſties Credentials next Morning in the Caſtle; for which I accordingly prepared myſelf. At Eight in the Morning three principal *Mandaryns* came to adviſe me that it was then a proper Time to wait on the Emperor: Beſides their common Habit, they were alſo dreſſed in Robes, which were embroidered, ſome with Dragons, others with Lyons, and a third Sort with Tygers and Cranes on the Breaſt and Back, worked with Gold Thread: They brought with them fifty Horſes for my Retinue. According to the *European* Mode, I advanced with their *Czariſh* Majeſties Credentials, and was attended by my Retinue in good Order towards the Court.

Coming to the outer Gate of the Caſtle, there is a Pillar, with ſome Characters engraven on it, where I was told I muſt alight, according to their Cuſtom; ſo that I went on Foot through five outer Courts to the Caſtle itſelf. I found a great Number of *Mandaryns* at the Court, all cloathed in the richeſt embroidered Robes, ſuch as they wear in the Emperor's Preſence, who waited for me.

After we had mutually exchanged Compliments, the Emperor appeared on his Throne; upon which I delivered his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Credentials, and after the uſual Ceremonies, and a ſhort Speech, was conducted back.

On the 16th of the ſame Month, I was informed that I was invited to eat before the Emperor: Wherefore, in the Morning, accompanied with the *Mandaryns* thereto appointed, and the chief Gentlemen of my Retinue, I rode to Court. And in the ſixth Court, a great many Lords and *Mandaryns* were ſtanding in Rows in their beſt Robes; and ſhortly after an Order came for us to appear above in the Palace. As ſoon as I entered, the Emperor aſcended his exalted Throne, having near him ſome Perſons who played very finely on the Fife, and a Life-Guard of twelve Men with gilt Halbards without any Point to them, but adorned with Leopards and Tygers Tails. As ſoon as the Emperor was ſeated, the Muſick ceaſed, and the Halbardiers ſeated themſelves croſs-legg'd on each Side below the Throne. The Emperor's Table was furniſhed with cold Meats,

Fruits,

Fruits, and Sweetmeats, ſerved up in Silver Diſhes, and the whole covered with yellow Damaſk. The Viceroy, the Emperor's Uncle, and two other of the principal Nobles, ſtood on each Side of his Imperial Majeſty, and I was placed on the Right Hand of the Throne, about four Fathom diſtant from the Emperor; who looking very earneſtly at me, ordered the Viceroy (who received his Commands on his Knees) to bring me nearer. Upon which he took me by the Hand, and placed me about two Fathom diſtant from the Emperor, and my Retinue was placed about ſix behind me. The Emperor a ſecond Time ſent the Viceroy to me with the utmoſt Reſpect, to aſk after the Health of their *Czariſh* Majeſties; to which I returned the proper Anſwer. Then he cauſed his Table to be uncovered, by taking off the Damaſk Covering, and deſired me to eat, a Table being ſpread for me only: The other Lords and *Mandaryns*, about two hundred in Number, took their Places according to their Qualtty, ſitting two at each Table, in the *Perſian* Manner, upon Carpets, with their Legs under them; which Cuſtom I was obliged to comply with, as it is not to be diſpenſed with here.

The Emperor ſent me from his Table a roaſt Gooſe, a Pig, a Loin of very good Mutton, and ſoon after ſeveral Diſhes of Fruit, and a Sort of Drink compoſed of boiled Tea, fry'd Meal and Butter, which looked not unlike Bean or Coffee Decoction: Having received all which, with due Reſpect, the Emperor ordered the Viceroy to aſk me what *European* Languages I underſtood; to which I anſwered, I could ſpeak the *Muſcovite*, *German*, *Low-Dutch*, and a little *Italian*.

Upon which, he immediately diſpatched ſome Servants to the hinder Part of the Palace; which done, there inſtantly appeared three *Jeſuits*, who approached the Throne; and, after kneeling, and performing their Reverence to the Emperor, he commanded them to riſe. One of theſe was Father *John Francis Gerbillon*, a *Frenchman*; and the two others were *Portugueſe*, one of them called Father *Anthony Thomas*. The Emperor ordered Father *Gerbillon* to converſe with me; who coming towards me, ſpeaking *Italian*, aſked

aſked me in the Emperor's Name, how long I had been travelling from *Moſcow* to *Peking*, and which Way I came, by Waggon, on Horſeback, or by Water: To which I returned ſatisfactory Anſwers; on which returning to his Majeſty, he informed him, who immediately anſwered *Gowa*, *Gowa*, which is, very well. The Emperor then ordered the Viceroy to acquaint me, that it was his moſt gracious Pleaſure that I ſhould approach nearer his Preſence, by coming up to the Throne; upon which I ariſing, the Viceroy taking me by the Hand, after having led me up ſix Steps, ſet me at the Table oppoſite to the Emperor. After I had paid my moſt humble Reſpects to his Majeſty, he talked with Father *Gerbillon*; who again aſked me, how long I had been on the Way hither, in what Manner I travelled, and in what Latitude *Moſcow* was ſituate, and how far diſtant from *Poland*, *France*, *Italy*, *Portugal*, or *Holland?* To all which I obſerved my Anſwer proved very ſatisfactory. Upon which he gave the Viceroy a Gold Cup of *Tartarian* Liquor called *Kumis*, in order to hand it to me; which, with due Reſpect, I accepted, and having taſted, returned it. This *Kumis*, according to the Report of the Attendants, is a Sort of Brandy diſtilled from Mare's Milk. After this, the Emperor ordered my Retinue to advance within three Fathom of his Throne, and entertained them with the ſame Liquor; which being done, I paid my Compliment in the *European* Manner, and the Viceroy took me by the Hand, conducting me to my former Place; where, after ſitting for a Quarter of an Hour, I was deſired to riſe.

After this the Emperor aroſe, and having ſaluted me, deſcended from the Throne, and went out of the Audience Hall by a Door on the Left Hand, in order to go to his Royal Apartment. As he was leaving the Hall, he ſent the Viceroy to aſk me, whether I had heard any News out of *Europe*, concerning Father *Grimaldi*, who had been diſpatched thither on the Emperor's Affairs: To which I anſwered, that when I left *Moſcow*, I was informed that he, with a Retinue of twenty-five Perſons, arrived at *Smyrna*, and reſolved to proſecute his Travels through *Perſia* and *India*.

India. He replied, I am informed he is ſafely arrived at *Goa*, and is upon his Departure thence in order to his Return hither, and it is ſeven Years ſince he left *China.* Hereupon I took my Leave, and retired to my Apartment.

Deſigning to take another Opportunity to give an Account of what I could obſerve concerning the Court, I ſhall at preſent only deſcribe the Outſide of the Palace, and the Throne on which the Emperor ſate. The Palace is an oblong quadrangular Brick Building, which is twice as long as broad, and the Roof covered with yellow glazed Tiles, on which were fixed Lyons, Dragons, and all Sorts of Imagery: The Height of this Building to the Roof was about eight Fathom; * the Aſcent to the Hall was up ſeveral Steps, and the farther Part or Entrance of it was provided with certain open Places or Windows, which were not glazed, but peaked with Paper. At the Ends of this Hall were two Doors, the Tops of which were adorned with a Sort of carved Work, ſomewhat like a Crown, which was was extraordinary well gilt. This Building hath neither any Room over it, or arched Roof, but the Height of the Room is to the very Top of the Roof, which was compoſed of curious Pannels, beautifully coloured, japanned, and finely gilded. This Hall is about thirty Fathom long, and ten broad. The Floor, according to the *Tartarian* Mode, was covered with Carpets, adorned with Landſkips and Figures.

The Throne is placed oppoſite to the Eaſtern Entrance, againſt the back Wall, and is about three Fathom broad, and as many long; before it are two Aſcents with ſix Steps each, adorned with Rails and Repreſentations of Leaves very well gilt: On the Right and Left Sides were alſo Rails of caſt Imagery, which ſome report to be Gold, and others Silver, which are alſo extraordinary well gilt. Exactly in the Middle of this raiſed Place is a Throne, ſomewhat like an Altar, which opens with two Doors, and in it the Emperor's Seat, about an Ell high, covered with black Sables, on which he ſate with his Legs acroſs under him. This Monarch was then aged about fifty Years, his Mein was very agreeable, he had large black Eyes, and his Noſe ſomewhat

* A Fathom is ſix Feet.

The various Habits of the Chineſe, and Tartars.

ſomewhat riſing; he wore ſmall black Muſtachoes, but had very little or no Beard on the lower Part of his Face; he was very much pitted with the Small-Pox, and of a middling Stature. His Dreſs conſiſted of a common dark coloured Damaſk Waiſtcoat, a Coat of deep blue Sattin, adorned with Ermines; beſides which, he had a String of Coral hanging about his Neck, and down on his Breaſt. He had a warm Cap on, turned up with Sable, to which was added a red Silk Knot, and ſome Peacocks Feathers hanging down behind. His Hair, plaited into one Lock, hung behind him. He had no Gold nor Jewels about him. He had Boots on, which were made of black Velvet.

Whilſt he was at Dinner, ſuch a reverential and profound Silence was obſerved amongſt the *Mandaryns*, that not only no Noiſe was heard, but they forbore ſo much as ſpeaking to one another, all ſitting very ſtill with modeſt down-caſt Eyes, amongſt them the higheſt Mark of Reſpect.

On the next Day the Emperor ſent two *Mandaryns* with fifty Horſes for my Retinue, and a Meſſage, importing, it was his Majeſty's Pleaſure, that if I deſired to ſee the City, all that was worth my View ſhould be ſhewed me. Purſuant to which, I cauſed my Horſe to be ſaddled, and rode out with theſe *Mandaryns*; who, by the Emperor's Command, brought me to a Sort of Play-Houſe, or Court of Diverſion, which was a very lofty and capacious Building. In it was a great Stage, adorned with carved Imagery, finely painted, which the Players had the Uſe of for an annual Rent. In the Middle of this Palace was an open Place encompaſſed with Galleries, in which the *Mandaryns* deſired us to ſit down on Chairs; and having entertained me with Tea and *Tharaſin* Wine, I and all my Retinue were treated with a Comedy, and the Diverſion of ſeeing a great many different Sorts of exquiſite Jugglers; who, by a dexterous Slight of Hand, ſeem to produce not only all Sorts of Fruits, as Oranges, Lemons, Grapes, *&c.* but live Birds and Crabs, and perform all the Dexterities of that Kind practiſed in *Europe*. Others ſo nicely play'd with round Glaſs Balls, as big as a Man's Head, at the Point of a ſharp Stick, toſſing them ſeveral Ways, without breaking or letting them

fall, that it was really ſurprizing. After this a *Bamboe* Cane, about ſeven Foot high, was held upright by ſix Men, and a Boy about ten Years old crept up to the Top of it as nimbly as a Monkey, and laid himſelf on his Belly upon the End of it, turning himſelf ſeveral Times round; after which, riſing up, he ſet one Foot on the *Bamboe*, holding faſt to it with one Hand, and then looſing his Hold, clapp'd his Hands together, and ran very ſwiftly down, and ſhewed ſeveral other Feats of Agility, which were very wonderful as well as highly entertaining.

The Comedies had alſo a very good Effect, by Reaſon they were acted in the beſt Manner by the Emperor's Players. They frequently appeared in Changes of very rich Dreſſes, embroidered in Gold and Silver; and the Plot turned on the Story of a triumphant Hero, in which was brought in their Idols, and a late Emperor, whoſe Face was painted of a Blood Colour; which was intermixed with a Farce, or diverting Entertainment, of two young Women richly dreſs'd, who ſtood each on a Man's Shoulder, and nicely play'd with their Fans, bowing to one another, and keeping Time to the Muſick as exactly as if they had danced on the Ground. Two little Boys play'd *Hoſticki* or *Harlequins*, in very fantaſtick Habits, and recited their Parts very well. After the End of the whole, I thanked the *Mandaryns*, and returned Home. On the ſame Day the Emperor went out a Tyger hunting, without the great Wall, purſuant to his annual Cuſtom, and returned in a few Days to *Peking*.

On the ſame Day I was invited to a Repaſt by the Viceroy, or *Sungut Doriamba*, with which Invitation I comply'd, and after ſome Diſcourſe paſſing betwixt us, he led me by the Hand out of his Bed-chamber into his beſt Hall, or Parlour, where ſeveral Tables and Stools ſtood ready; the Tables were adorned with rich Tapeſtry Carpets of Silk and Gold, which were full wrought with Figures. I was ſeated on one, and the *Mandaryns* on the other Side of the Viceroy. The Tables were alſo ſet off with very fine Flower Pots, full of Flowers of all Sorts of Colours, worked in Silk, which not only looked very beautiful, but very natural; Crimſon Velvets, and the moſt charming coloured Silks,

Silks, being choſen to make them, it being Winter, when no natural Flowers were to be gathered: On the fore Part of theſe Tables were alſo placed Silver Cups, in which was laid lighted Pieces of the fragrant Wood *Kalamba*, which afforded a very good Perfume; next which ſtood fine Wooden Images, and Variety of ſmall Figures or Puppets, finely painted and gilt. The Chairs or Stools on which the Viceroy and I ſat, were, according to the *Tartarian* Faſhion, hung at the Back with Leopard and Tyger Skins, which appeared very magnificent; and a larger Diſh of Tea than ordinary, in which was put peel'd Walnuts and Hazle Nuts, with a little Iron Spoon to take them out on Occaſion, was placed before each Perſon. After the Tea was drank off, which taſted very agreeably, ſeveral little Agate Cups, filled with Brandy mixed with diſtilled Waters, were ſerved about; and after that, ſeveral Diſhes, or rather Cups, of fry'd or broil'd Fiſh, cut into ſmall Pieces, were ſet in Heaps one upon another, garniſhed with fine Herbs and Flowers, and as an Ornament ſet on the fore Part of the Table in a Row; by them were placed ſix Cups of very agreeable Soups, diſhed up with very fine ſtewed Fleſh and Fiſh; and when we had eaten of theſe, we were regaled with ſeveral Courſes of the richeſt Edibles, which were followed by all Sorts of fine baked Meats; and after this laſt Courſe, all Kinds of delicious Confects, as candy'd Grapes, Lemons, Oranges, Cheſtnuts, and ſhell'd Nuts.

During our ſitting at Table, in the Room where we eat was acted a Play, interlarded with Songs and Dances, by little Boys dreſſed in Girls Cloaths, who very ſkilfully meaſured their Steps in Proportion to the Time of the Song, and play'd on the Flute withal, diſtorting their Bodies into antick Poſtures, and playing with a Fan in their Hands. His Lady and Daughter alſo appeared at the farther Part of the Hall, ſtanding at a Door, which was but half open: They were very richly dreſſed according to the Mode of the *Mongalian Tartars*. After I had very agreeably ſpent three Hours there, accompanied by my Retinue, I rode to my Apartment.

Some Time after I was invited to the Houſe of the Treaſurer of the Empire, who is called *Schiley*, where I was ſplendidly entertained. His Hall was very well furniſhed according to the *Chineſe* Faſhion: The Floor of it was laid with a Sort of fine Stone; at three Corners of which, on Ebony Feet, were three extraordinary white Marble Tables, naturally ſhaded with black Veins, which repreſented beauful Woods, Mountains, and Rivers: On theſe Tables were placed high Silver Flower Pots, very naturally adorned with all Sorts of fine Flowers. The Pillars, clear up to the Roof, were painted with very fine Colours. While we ſat at the Table, we were entertained with a Ball, and after this very agreeable Entertainment, I aroſe and took Leave, extreamly ſatisfied with all the Civilities that were paid me.

When this Lord accompanied and conducted me through the principal Markets, where Silk, Cloth, Gold and Silver, Jewels, and all Sorts of fine Manufactures, were ſold, I was deſired to alight, and conducted to the Emperor's Diſpenſary, which I was willing to make ſome Scrutiny into, it being richly ſtocked with all Sorts of Roots, Herbs, and Medicines. I was here treated with a Diſh of Tea, and obſerved while I ſtaid there, that according to the *European* Cuſtom, ſeveral Preſcriptions of Phyſicians were brought in, which were methodically prepared. Next to this was a Toy Shop, which I entered, and bought what I liked. The Maſter of it had a very fine Garden-Houſe, in which were all Sorts of Flowers, young Stocks, and Lemon Trees in Pots: And, amongſt other Things, he ſhew'd me a large Glaſs full of Water, in which were ſeveral living Fiſh about a Finger's Length, which naturally looked as if they had been gilt with the fineſt Gold; and the Scales of ſome of them being fallen off, diſcovered, to my great Surprize, the Colour of their Bodies to be the moſt beautiful Crimſon in the World.

After we departed from thence, we went through all the Markets; each Shop had a great Board ſet before it, on which is very orderly written the Shopkeeper's Name, and the Commodities which he deals in. We alſo went through the Fiſh Market, in which are all Sorts of living Fiſh, but more

more eſpecially Carps, Caroeſſes, and Water Snakes, (which they eat here) Crabs, Shrimps, *&c.* all which ſtand in Tubs to be ſold, in great Abundance. Paſſing through another Market, I ſaw great Numbers of Harts, Roebucks, Hares, Pheaſants, Partridges, *&c*, and ſeveral other wild Game, to be ſold.

On the 7th of *January* the cuſtomary annual Feſtival happened, which they obſerve for three Weeks. It began late at Night with the Appearance of the new Moon, and firſt the great Bell at the Emperor's Court was rung, and their large Drums, expreſly kept for and uſed in their idolatrous Worſhip, were beaten, and ſeveral Cannon diſcharg'd; upon which all the People in the City, of what Degree ſoever, according to their Ability, expreſſed their Joy by Rockets, Serpents, and all Sorts of Fire-Works; to which they alſo added the beating of an infinite Number of Drums, and, according to their Cuſtom, the ſounding of Trumpets by the *Lama*'s, or idolatrous Prieſts, in their moſt innumerable Temples and Cloyſters; inſomuch, that from Ten at Night till next Day Noon, there was as great a Noiſe as if two Armies of one hundred thouſand Men were in the Heat of Battle one againſt another. In the Day Time the Streets were crouded with all Sorts of their Proceſſions, with their Idols, which were carried in various Shapes, and the *Lama*'s marched by them with Incenſe Pots, and Strings of Beads; the Drums and Kettle-Drums beating, Trumpets ſounding, and other Muſick playing, was endleſs. The carrying of theſe diabolical Images, followed by a great Train of People, as well as a vaſt Number of *Lama*'s, or Monks, which preceded them, laſted three Days; during which Time all the Shops were ſhut, and all merchandizing forbidden, on Penalty of ſevere Puniſhments. During this Time alſo the Streets were crouded with People of both Sexes, but more eſpecially Women, who rode on Aſſes, or Chaiſes with two Wheels, covered all round, only before left open. The Servant Maids which ſat behind, ſung, ſome of them, whilſt others blew on a Sort of Horn-Pipe; and ſome Ladies ſat publickly taking a Pipe of Tobacco. The Women never appear in publick through all *China*, except

except in the Province of *Peking* only, and more eſpecially the City, which is inhabited by *Tartars*; the *Chineſe* being obliged to live all about the City Wall, and the Suburbs, where all the chief Markets and publick Places of Sale are.

Some Days after this, the Emperor ſent two *Mandaryns* to deſire me to be ready to receive my Audience of Leave the next Morning two Hours before Day: And accordingly three Hours before Day, three *Mandaryns* came to me on Horſeback, and we rode to the uſual alighting Place; whence being conducted to the third Court, and deſired to ſit down, I was entertained with a Sort of Bean Decoction of Coffee, uſually drank here in the Mornings. In the fourth Court appeared all the principal Officers in their richeſt Robes, dreſſed after the Eaſt *Tartarian*, or *Mongalian* Mode. At break of Day I was introduced into the fourth Court, and ſeated amongſt the *Mandaryns*, who, according to the particular Rank of each of them, were plac'd on the Eaſt and South Sides of the Court. After waiting half an Hour, we heard the Emperor approaching, accompanied with an agreeable Conſort of Fifes, and a Sort of Lutes. This was not the Hall in which I had my former Audience, but here was a Throne erected, and hung with yellow Damaſk, on this Occaſion. On each Side of it were two great Drums, curiouſly gilt and painted, each of which being two Fathom and a half long, they lay upon a Stool made on Purpoſe for them. After the Emperor was ſeated, by his Command, the Herald which ſtood before the Throne, went to the Preſence-Chamber Door, directed himſelf to the Lords which ſat without in the Court, and uttering ſome Words with a ſhrill Voice, he thrice ſucceſſively cry'd, *Bow down, bow to the Earth.* Whilſt this was three Times done one after another, the Bells were rung, the Drums were beaten, the Lute was touched, and three Pipes, made for that Purpoſe, were very loudly ſounded. Then two principal Lords were, by the Emperor, ſent to acquaint me, that it was the Emperor's Pleaſure that I ſhould approach nearer his Preſence; accordingly they led me by the Hand from the Place where I was, being about eight Fathom diſtant from the Throne, where my Retinue were left

ſitting;

ſitting; and I ſat down on one Side, about three Fathom from the Royal Throne, betwixt two great Lords, which were *Wannes* or Princes, and by Birth *Tartarians*; and after having paid a reſpectful Compliment to the Emperor, his great Bell was rung, and the large Drums on each Side were beaten, which made as great a Noiſe as a Volley of Guns; the Flutes were alſo play'd on, and the before-mentioned Pipes nine Times ſounded: Upon which I was deſired to ſit down; which having done, a Diſh of Coffee, or Bean Decoction, was preſented to me, which I accepted, and drank up. And after I had diſpatched the Affairs of their *Czariſh* Majeſties with the Emperor, I roſe up, and having paid my Compliment to him, he alſo aroſe from his Throne, and went out at the Weſt Door to his Apartment.

The Emperor's Life-Guard ſtood in this fourth Court; they were cloathed in red Callicoe, printed with red Figures as big as a Rixdoller; they wore ſmall Hats adorned with yellow Feathers, that being the Imperial Livery Colour. They were armed with Scimeters by their Sides, and fine Lances, with Colours fixed to them, and ſtood ranked at a Diſtance from the Throne, on each Side of the Court, where alſo ſtood eight white Saddle Horſes for Shew. In the third Court of State, were alſo placed four extraordinary large Elephants, one of which was white. They were all covered with rich Gold embroidered Cloaths; and all their Strappings, as Bridles, Cruppers, *&c.* were covered with Silver, and gilt; and on their Backs was placed a very fine carved wooden Caſtle, or Gallery, ſpacious enough for eight Perſons to ſit in. In this Court alſo ſtood the Emperor's Waggons with two Wheels, and his Chaiſes, all hung with yellow Damaſk Curtains: Beſides all which, there were there placed ſeveral Stands, or Stools, for Drums, Kettle-Drums, idolatrous Inſtruments, *&c.*

Being got out of the Caſtle, I mounted one of the Emperor's Waggons, and was drawn to my Apartment by an Elephant; on each Side of which ran ten Perſons, with a thick Rope in their Hands, faſtened to each Side of the Elephant's Mouth, by the Help of which they lead and govern him: On his Neck alſo ſat a Man with an Iron Hook

in

in his Hand, which alſo contributes to hold him in and guide him. He went but at his ordinary Rate, which put his Leaders to run as ſwift as poſſibly they could, in order to keep Pace with him.

A few Days after I was invited by the Jeſuits, with the Emperor's Leave, to viſit the Cloyſter; purſuant to which, two *Mandaryns*, according to Order, attended on and conducted me thither. I was then introduced into the Cloyſter, which was encompaſſed with a high Stone Wall, and provided with two exquiſite regular Stone Gates after the *Italian* Manner. On the Left Side of the Entrance, under Shelter of a Roof, made for that Purpoſe in the Court, ſtand the cœleſtial and and terreſtrial Globes, of an extraordinary Size, each being about a Fathom Diameter. From hence we proceeded on to the Church, which is a very beautiful *Italian* Building, furniſhed with a large Organ, made by Father *Thomas Pereyra*: And the Church itſelf, ſuitable to the *Roman Catholick* Uſage, was richly adorned with fine Images and Altars; and was withal large enough to contain two or three thouſand People: On the Top was a Clock and Chimes. Having ſeen the Church, the Fathers brought me into the *Muſæum*, which was compleatly furniſhed with all Sorts of *European* Rarities. After which they conducted me to an Apartment on one Side of it, where being aſked to ſit down, I was treated with all Sorts of Confections and Preſerves: Nor did we forget, according to their Cuſtom, to drink the Healths of all the Chriſtian Princes of *Europe* in rich Wines: And after a conſiderable Stay, I rode to my Apartment, very well ſatisfied with the Entertainment of theſe Fathers.

About this Time, two *Mandaryns* came from the *Cham* to invite me to take the Diverſion of ſeeing the City: Accordingly I mounted with my Retinue, and theſe *Mandaryns* conducted me to the Emperor's Elephant Stable, where ſtood fourteen of thoſe Beaſts, one of which was white: Having thus ſeen them, that was not enough, but they muſt ſhew ſeveral Tricks, and at the Command of the Maſter of the Stable, they roared like a Tyger, ſo diſmally loud, that their very Stable ſeemed to tremble: Others

lowed

lowed like an Ox, neighed like a Horſe, and even ſung like Canary-Birds; but, which was moſt ſurprizing of all, ſome of them imitated a Trumpet. After this, they were oblig'd to pay their Reſpects to me on their four Knees, to lie down firſt on one Side, then on the other, then to riſe up. When they lie down, they firſt ſtrike out their fore Legs forward, and then throw out their hind Legs backward, and by this Means lie with their Bellies flat upon the Ground. One of theſe was not broken, and, by Reaſon he was very unrulely, he was loaden with heavy Chains on two Feet, and, for the whole Time he had ſtood there, had not been removed from his Place; and a great Pit was dug before his Stall, that in Caſe he broke looſe, he ſhould fall into it, and be prevented from coming into the Court to do any Miſchief. All theſe Elephants were extraordinary large, and the Teeth of ſome of them were a full Fathom long. The *Mandaryns* told me, that they came from the King of *Siam*, who annually ſends ſeveral, by Way of Tribute, to the Emperor of *China*. Their Food was only Rice Straw, bound up in ſmall Truſſes, which they take up one after another with their Trunk, and convey to their Mouths.

After a ſatisfactory Sight of what I deſired, I rode with the *Mandaryns* to my Apartment; and as we were on our Way, I obſerved at the Door of a conſiderable *Mandaryn*, and a great Officer, ſome Perſons fleaing of a fat Dog; upon which I aſk'd the *Mandaryn*, wherefore that was done; who anſwered, that it was a healthful Sort of Food, eſpecially in Summer, it being very cooling. After I had handſomely treated theſe *Mandaryns*, they went away.

Next Day the Viceroy ſent a Tyger, or Panther, in a Cage, to the Ambaſſador's Court, to be ſhewn to me; as alſo ſeveral Jugglers with Monkeys and Mice, which had been taught ſeveral Tricks. Theſe Apes, at their Maſter's Command, did really ſome very ſtrange Things; they filled a Baſket with Stuff Coats of all Colours, each of which an Ape took out ſingly at his Maſter's Command, never miſſing the Colour which he was ordered to take out and put on, always varying his Grimace with his Habit; after which, he not only danced upon the Ground, but on a

tight Rope, in a very diverting Manner. There were alſo two Mice faſtened to their Chains, who, at their Maſter's Command, ſo entangled themſelves in them, and immediately got looſe, that it deſerved Admiration: But what was moſt ſtrange to me, was the odd Motions of theſe Vermine.

The *Jeſuits* once told me, that about three Years paſt were ſent to the Emperor, as a Preſent, from an Iſland in the Eaſtern Sea, four Animals as big as ordinary Horſes, each of which had two ſharp Horns prominent before; and that theſe Fathers were ſent by the Emperor's Order to his Park, about ten Miles from *Peking*, to ſee theſe Beaſts, in order to inform his Majeſty, whether they had ever ſeen any of them in *Europe*; but returning, they affirmed, that they had never before ſeen any of that Species. I was indeed very deſirous to have ſeen them, yet it being too far out of Town, and the Time of my Departure approaching, it was impracticable.

After I had ſent my Compliment to the Viceroy, I deſired that I might be advertiz'd of my Departure eight or ten Days before the Time, when it ſhould pleaſe the Emperor that I ſhould leave the Court and Royal City; which, purſuant to my Requeſt, was accordingly done ſome Days after.

Upon which, having made all neceſſary Preparations for ſuch a long Journey, and latterly, according to former Cuſtom, having one Morning in a Week eat at the Emperor's Table, I left *Peking*, accompanied out of the City Gate with a numerous Train of Great Officers of State, and *Mandaryns*, on the 19th of *February*, 1694, and on the 25th reached the City of *Galgan*, cloſe to the *Daaurian* Wall. From thence we went on to *Naun*, and paſſed through ſeveral *Xixigarſchean* Villages, to the *Tartarian* Frontiers, and the great Deſarts, where we encamped and lay ſtill ſeveral Days, and provided Saddles for our Camels, and all other travelling Neceſſaries, by Reaſon that to *Argum*, on the Frontiers of their *Czariſh* Majeſties Dominions, I was oblig'd to provide me with all Neceſſaries on my proper Coſt, which I conſidered when in *Peking*; and Camels and Mules being very cheap there, I carried a good Number of theſe

looſe

looſe along with me, they, as well as the whole Caravan, travelling free, at the Expence of the *Chineſe*, hitherto, as well as myſelf and whole Retinue, who eat at the Emperor's Charge thus far.

If I had not made this Proviſion before-hand, but had depended on the Camels and Horſes which I left at *Nuna*, we ſhould have fared but indifferently; for of all that I left there, ſcarce eight hundred remained, all the reſt, which were a very conſiderable Number, being killed by the ill Forage and unwholſome Graſs.

On the 2d of *February*, being ready to ſet forwards on my Journey, I treated the *Mandaryn* and his Retinue, who, by the Emperor's Command, had accompanied me thus far; after which, taking very civilly Leave of each other, we parted.

On the 26th Inſtant, in GOD's Name, we entered the great Deſart, about the River *Sadun* and *Kallar*, being obliged to be on our Guard, by Reaſon that four *Mungeſſian Taliſchi*, or *Lords*, with about three thouſand Men, were ready and willing to try their Fortunes with us: Upon which I gave all neceſſary Orders, and in the Night cauſed a ſtrong Watch of ſixty well armed Horſemen to be kept; but not encountering any Thing from that Quarter, we next Day ſet forwards on our Journey. Reaching the *Jaliſchian* Mountains, we found our Forage grew worſe the farther we went, and our Saddle as well as Carriage Beaſts began to look thin. Having travelled a whole Day over theſe Mountains, the Night proved very cold and ſnowy, and the Graſs grew yet worſe, being that of laſt Year, which was dried up in the Field; ſo that the Camels, but more eſpecially the Horſes, though they eat their Fill, were not much ſtrengthened by it. I here deliberated whether I ſhould take the old Way, or a Bye-way, which was the ſafeſt Method that could be taken to eſcape the *Tartars*, who lay in Wait for us, and again proceed on Eaſtwards: Preferring Certainty to an Uncertainty, I pitched upon the laſt, which proved very incommodious, eſpecially for the Cattle.

We travelled but ſlowly through theſe ſteep, mountainous, and deep moraſſy Ways, and that Day twelve Camels

and fifteen Horſes ſunk under Foot, and for ſixteen Days after we were obliged to wreſtle with theſe difficult Ways, which daily occaſioned ſeveral Camels and Horſes to ſink under their Loads and die; which happened from the heavy Burthens they were obliged to carry, as well as from the ſapleſs and dry Graſs, which afforded them no Nouriſhment. But our Difficulties increaſed with Reſpect to Forage, for our Cattle had Graſs hitherto, which, though dry and not ſufficient to ſatisfy, yet ſerved to keep them alive; but now we came to Fields that were entirely burnt up by the *Tartars*, which forced us, how feeble and uncapable ſoever our Beaſts were to perform it, to diſpatch two Days Journey this Day, in order to come to a Place where there was ſome Graſs left.

Several of our Merchants, who loſt their Saddle Horſes, (their others being ſufficiently laden with Merchandizes) were obliged to go on Foot; and if many of them had not been provided with ſpare Horſes and Camels, we ſhould have been obliged to have left a great Quantity of their Goods behind in the Wilderneſs.

After various Fatigues and Miſeries, with the greateſt Difficulty in the World, we at laſt reached the River *Sadun*, where our Quarters began to mend, in ſome Meaſure, and the tender Graſs to ſprout up a little. We lay ſtill two Days by this River, in order to refreſh our Camels and Horſes, which were unable to have held out any longer. During this Repoſe, a *Chineſe* Envoy, with an hundred armed Men, came up to me; who, by the Command of the Emperor of *China*, was, by the Viceroy of *Tartary*, diſpatched from the City of *Mergeen*, with Orders to accompany me to *Nerzinſkoy*, there to treat, concerning ſome Affairs, with the Governor. The Arrival of this Company was very welcome to us, for now we could make out full ſix hundred Men, and conſequently had no Reaſon to fear any ſtrolling Parties of Robbers.

On the 15th of *March* we arrived at the River *Kailaan*, which we forded, the Water being low; and paſſing about a Mile farther in a Dale, we pitched our Tents there, tho' there was but little Forage to be found: Yet we paſſed the Night

Night here, and in the Morning diſcovered a terrible Smoak to ariſe out of the North-Weſt, which gave me ſome Apprehenſions that the *Tartars* having burnt up the old Graſs, lurked under theſe Pillars of Smoak, in order to obtain an Opportunity to ſet upon us with great Numbers. To provide againſt this, I cauſed the Camels and Horſes which were left us in this horrible Deſart, betimes to be drove to a Place where there was ſome Graſs, and which being behind a high Mountain, was ſecurely ſheltered from the Fire. After which, I cauſed an hundred Men to provide themſelves with the Felts with which the Camels were covered, and be in Readineſs, if the Smoak approached us, to diſperſe and drive it from our Camp as much as poſſible. Within the Space of half an Hour, the Air was wholly darkened with the Smoak, and the Fire driven on by a ſtormy Wind, flew ſwifter than a Horſe could run, into the Vale, where the dry Graſs was about half an Ell high; ſo that it was ſcarce poſſible either to eſcape or quench ſuch a rapid Flame: The Fire flew, or rather flaſhed, by our Camp, as ſwift as Lightening; ſo that whilſt I turned myſelf round, it was got to the ſhort Graſs, and behind the Brow of a Hill: Notwithſtanding its ſpeedy Flight, we did not clearly eſcape it, for the Flame laying hold of the foremoſt Row of Tents, immediately ſent ten or twelve of them burning into the Air: Great Quantities of our Merchants Goods were conſumed, and fourteen Men ſtruck down by it, who were miſerably burnt, and ſome of them taken up for dead; but, after neceſſary Care was taken for their Recovery, only one *Perſian* died. I was myſelf in great Danger, and if I had not in Time run to a Hill where there was ſcarce any Graſs, and been aſſiſted by two Servants, who covered me with a Felt to keep off the Heat, I ſhould not have eſcaped better than thoſe above-mentioned.

The Flame was no ſooner paſt us, than it viſited the *Chineſe* Ambaſſador, who was encamped at ſome Diſtance from us, amongſt the Hills; where, to his good Fortune, there happened to be very little Graſs, ſo that the Fire paſſed about and over the Hill, but was not violent enough to catch hold

of

of any Thing, ſo that only their Horſes Tails were a little burnt, or rather ſinged.

Before it was poſſible to have told two hundred, this Fire had reached the River *Kailaan*, (which was a Mile from our Encampment,) where it was quenched by the Interruption of the Water. After this Burning, the Land, as far as we could ſee from the Hills, was quite bare of Graſs, and every where Coal black. Upon this Diſaſter, I ſent out my Guide, to try whether he could diſcover any Place for us to encamp for that Night; he returned the next Day with Information that for two Days Journey all round, there was no Forage, the Fire having conſumed it all; for though there were ſome few ſcattered Places which had eſcaped the Flame, yet there was not half Graſs enough to ſatisfy ſuch a Number of Camels and Horſes as our's; which was but melancholy News for me and the whole Camp. Wherefore I conſulted whether it was not moſt adviſeable to repaſs the River *Kailaan*, where the Graſs had eſcaped untouched; but in Oppoſition to this, the Danger of being fallen on by the *Tartars* which were on that Side of the River, offered itſelf; ſo that I rather inclined to chuſe the travelling two Days in Want of Neceſſaries, than once more run the Riſque of expoſing ourſelves to the Inhumanity of theſe Barbarians.

In the Morning then we broke up our Camp, which we pitched late that Night near a great Moraſs, after having endured a great deal of Miſery and Fatigue that Day, by paſſing through Moraſſes and over ſteep Hills; which Hardſhip fell heavieſt on the Cattle, inſomuch that in this Day's Journey only, eighteen Camels and twenty-two Horſes ſunk into, and remained in the Moraſſes, not being able to ſtir a Step further, which fell very hard upon us; and the farther we went, rendered us the more uneaſy, ſince we were as unwilling to leave our travelling Neceſſaries and Proviſions behind us, as the Merchants were to throw away their Goods; wherefore the Remainder of the Beaſts muſt neceſſarily be the heavier laden.

The next Day we alſo paſſed through Moraſſes, Vales, and other ſteep Hills, and came to the River *Mergeen*, where

where the Graſs was not burnt off. Having forded this River, and proceeded on our Journey, though in a miſerable Condition, as well by Reaſon of the ill State of our Cattle, which daily ſinking under their Loads, obliged us to leave them behind, as on Account of the Scarcity of Proviſions for ſo many Men, our Stock being at preſent very low, and conſiſting barely in a few lean live Oxen, which Travellers generally take with them in theſe Sort of Journeys, but not either Bread, Peas, Barley, or other Proviſions, becauſe the Merchants and *Coſſacks* wanted Beaſts for the Carriage of their Goods, and it would have been too chargeable to lade Camels with Proviſions.

There being but a ſmall Number of Oxen in our Camp, the People began to be very anxious, conſidering it was not poſſible to reach *Argum* on the Frontiers in leſs than ten or twelve Days; ſo that each Perſon, according to the Company he was engaged in, began to compute how long what they had would laſt, and contrive how to manage his Share beſt.

On the 18th of this Month, with great Difficulty and Fatigue, we at laſt reached the River *Gan*, which at low Water we forded, and on the other Side found freſh Graſs for the Beaſts, with which we were very well pleaſed, and mightily encouraged. Here I reſolved to lie ſtill three Days, and would have reſted longer, if the Merchants, *Coſſacks*, and Workmen, had not complained that they were pinched by Hunger, and that there was but a very ſmall Number of Oxen remaining, conſidering how many hundred Men were to be ſubſiſted by them; and they, by Example, ſhewed me the beſt proviſional Methods which could be taken to prevent an entire Famine; for as ſoon as an Ox was killed, they ſaved his Blood, and boiled it to the Conſiſtence of Liver; this they eat inſtead of Bread. Others cut the Hides into Slips, ſhaved the Hair off, and toaſted them at the Fire, and this paſſed at that Time for good Food. Nor were any Part of the Entrails thrown away, ſo that if the Scarcity had endured longer, poſſibly their Nature had been changed into that of *Caffers* or *Hottentots*, who eat not only raw Fleſh, but even the Excrements alſo.

In

In this Streight, being informed that the Country all about this River abounded with wild Game, as Harts, Roebucks, &c. I ordered ſome expert Archers to go a hunting; who proved ſo ſucceſsful, that they ſhot about fifty Roebucks, which were afterwards diſtributed to our famiſhed Company, who greedily devoured them half dreſſed and half raw, and gave a convincing Proof that Hunger, as it it commonly reported to be, is really a ſharp Sword; but beſides, it muſt be owned that the aſſwaging it when it has continued long and grown outrageous, is one of the greateſt Pleaſures of Life; though indeed a tedious Thirſt is more intolerable and painful to Human Nature.

In this Streight I ſent a Gentleman, accompanied with eight Coſſacks, to *Argum*, the Frontier Place, charged with a Letter to the Governor, requeſting that he would immediately ſend us a Parcel of Oxen, Sheep, Bread, Meal, and other Proviſions, under Convoy, by Reaſon we were driven to the laſt Extremity; and this Meſſage did not prove unſucceſsful, though the expected Relief did not arrive ſo ſpeedily as we could wiſh; each Day, on theſe melancholy Occaſions, commonly appearing an inſupportable Year.

Having diſpatched this Meſſenger with his Orders, I thought it neceſſary to break up from the River *Gan*, and in the Interim to advance as far on our Way, and ſtruggle as much as poſſible with our Uneaſineſs. And after we had travelled three Days, the hungry Complaints of our Company became inceſſant; the Roebucks were but a Morſel amongſt ſuch a Number of People, and no Eatables were to be bought for Money in this Wilderneſs. During which Affliction, we were obliged to make a Virtue of Neceſſity, and bear as well as we could, what we were not able to remedy. In this Condition, diſpirited and faint, we arrived at a Brook which flowed from the Hills, and was richly ſtored with large Jacks, Trouts, and other Fiſh, of which we ſhot many with Bow and Arrow; for in clear Water the *Coſſacks* and *Tunguzians* (of both which I had ſeveral) are ſuch expert Archers, that with their double pointed Arrows they very ſeldom miſſed the Fiſh they aim'd at, and but once touching, generally pierce through them,

which

which inſtantly cauſes them to float on the Surface of the Water. This Fiſhery afforded a very conſiderable Refreſhment to our Camp, which was alſo increaſed by ſome Bucks being ſhot that Evening and dreſſed as before.

Our Hunters diſcovered a Hut amongſt the Hills, where lived a *Schaman* or Conjurer and his Companion. This Magician was Uncle to our Guide, a *Tunguzian*, which Nation abounds with ſuch Pretenders, as we have already hinted. About Midnight I was waked by a horrible Noiſe, upon which running out of my Tent, and aſking the Centry that ſtood there, what it was? He told me our Guide was making merry with his Uncle; which excited my Curioſity to that Degree, that led by one of the Centries, I ſtole thither ſoftly to ſee what they were doing; approaching the Entrance of the Hut, I found that they were Conjuring after their Manner; and though the greateſt Part of it was over, I yet obſerved him ſitting with an Arrow in his Hand, the Head of which was inclined towards the Earth, and the Point he held under his Noſe; after which he roſe up, making a loud Outcry, and after leaping all round, laid himſelf to ſleep. My Meſſenger returned with the agreeable News, that within three Days we ſhould be furniſhed with all Sorts of Proviſions from *Argum*; the Approach of which appointed Time was not a little longed for amongſt us.

On the third Day Heaven favour'd us with our promis'd Aſſiſtance, which conſiſted of twenty-five Oxen and Cows, Millet and Bread; but the Sutlers that brought this Convoy of Proviſions, made the Merchants pay ſo very dear for it, that their Relief looked more like Extortion than Charity; they took a *Rixdollar* for one Loaf, and for all the reſt in Proportion; however, coſt what it would, this Supply was very welcome to us at that Juncture.

Thus invigorated, and alſo encouraged to find that the farther we advanced on our Journey the Graſs grew better, on we went, till through the Mercy of God we got to the End of this barren Deſart.

On the 27th Inſtant we joyfully reached the River *Argum*, which with the whole Caravan we paſſed: And on the 31ſt arrived very ſafe at the City of *Nerzinſkoy*, returning our

Thanks to Heaven, that through ſo many Dangers we were thus far advanced on our Way, and had got out of the Reach of pinching Neceſſity.

We departed from *Nerzinſkoy* on the 5th of *Auguſt*, and proceeding forwards by Land along the River-ſide, came on the 8th Inſtant to the City of *Udinſkoy*; where we furniſh'd ourſelves with Barks, and aſſiſted by an ebbing Tide, and a good Wind, in one Night reached the Frontiers of *Siberia*, and on the 12th arrived ſafe at *Jekutſkoy*.

On the 17th we left that Place, and after running a great Riſque by wading through the great Quantities of Water which were fallen, arrived ſafe at *Jenizetſkoy*.

On the 26th we went by Land from this City, and travelled through a Wood twenty Miles long, in which were harboured ſeveral wild and ravenous Beaſts, that at our Approach took their Flight.

After which we arrived at the Village *Makoſkoy*, where finding as large a Store of Shipping as I deſired, we all embarked, and driving down the River *Keta*, on the 28th of *September* we reached the Caſtle of *Ketſkoy* on the *Oby*; on which we drove down without meeting any Thing remarkable, and on the 16th of *October* we came to the Town *Samoroſſkoy Jam*, at the Mouth of the River *Jalis*, on which Stream I ſpent fourteen Days in waiting for Sleads to purſue our Journey by Land. I took the very firſt Opportunity, ſo that on the 29th I ſafely reached *Toboliſkoy*, where we reſted three Weeks to refreſh, and to provide ourſelves with new Cloaths.

On the 24th of *November* we travelled through the City of *Wergaturia*, without encountering any Thing obſervable, and through the Mercy of God, arrived in Sleads ſafe at *Moſcow* on the firſt of *January*, after having ſpent two Years and ten Months in theſe Travels, and endured ſeveral fatiguing Miſeries, where we returned Thanks to Almighty God for graciouſly preſerving us in ſuch imminent Dangers.

F I N I S.

THE VOYAGE OF *Ferdinand Maglianes*, or *Magellan*, FROM THE South Seas *to the* East Indies.

(Being the first Voyage made round the World.)

FROM the Time of the Diſcoveries made under the Catholick King's Commiſſions, the *Portugueſe* were exceſſively jealous of their Poſſeſſions in the *Eaſt Indies*, till at length the Pope interpoſed, and by a Bull, which had a deciſive Authority among Princes of his own Communion, decreed all Countries in the Eaſt to *Portugal*, and all ſuch as were found in the Weſt to *Spain*: Yet this rather ſmothered than extinguiſhed the Flames of Contention, both Princes continuing to liſten willingly to any ſuch Propoſition, as tended to aggrandize one at the other's Expence; and this begat another Miſchief, which was, that ſuch enterprizing Men as were not gratified at one Court, immediately thought of applying themſelves to the other;

which, whether a greater Inconvenience to theſe Princes, or Advantage to *Europe* in general, is not eaſy to be reſolved. Amongſt thoſe who took this Method of raiſing their Fortunes, the moſt remarkable was the famous *Ferdinand Magllianes*, commonly called *Magellan*. He was a Gentleman of a good Family in *Portugal*, and, having, from his Youth, addicted himſelf to maritime Affairs, he acquired a very great Skill, both in the Theory and Practice of Navigation. He ſeemed, indeed, to be formed by Nature for great Exploits, having all the Qualities requiſite to compoſe a truly great Man; for, with a Courage which no Danger could affright, he poſſeſſed a Calmneſs of Temper, and a Sweetneſs of Diſpoſition, which engaged ſuch as converſed with him to eſteem and love him. He was naturally eloquent, either in proving what he aſſerted, or in drawing others from their Opinions. But, above all, he had a Steadineſs of Soul, and a Degree of manly Reſolution, which not only enabled him to vaniſh the greateſt Difficulties, but withal gave ſuch an Air of Succeſs to whatever he promiſed or undertook, as drew all who heard him to confide in him. Theſe extraordinary Talents, as they would have diſtinguiſhed him in any Station of Life, ſo they were remarkably uſeful in that, by which he acquired immortal Reputation.

Don Ferdinand Magellan had ſerved with great Credit in the *Indies*, under the famous *Albuquerque*, and thought he merited ſome Recompence for thoſe Services. The Great, however, differed from him in Opinion, and treated all his Applications, not with Coldneſs only, but with Contempt, which, to a Man of his Spirit, was intolerable. He therefore aſſociated himſelf with Men of like Fortunes; that is to ſay Men of Merit that were neglected, particularly one *Ruy Falero*, a great Aſtronomer, whom the *Portugueſe*, out of Hatred, have repreſented as a Conjurer; and, in Conjunction with him, retired to the *Spaniſh* Court, and made Propoſitions of new Diſcoveries to Cardinal *Ximenes*. The *Portugueſe* Ambaſſador, who was a Man of Parts, employed all the Means imaginable to defeat their Deſign. He ſolicited the Court to deliver them up as Fugitives; he got ſome Perſons to inform the Miniſtry, that *Magellan* was a bold

bold talkative Man, one ready to undertake any Thing, but who wanted Capacity and Courage when it came to Performance. But underhand he cauſ'd Application to be made to *Magellan* himſelf, offering him Pardon, and great Rewards, if, deſiſting from his preſent Purpoſe, he would go back, and ſerve his own Prince. All this, however, ſignified very little; for theſe People expreſſed themſelves to the *Spaniſh* Miniſtry, who were now very able Judges in theſe Matters, in ſuch clear Terms, and with ſo much Probability as to the Diſcovery they propoſed, that they were immediately received into Favour, made Knights of the Order of St. *James*, and had their own Terms granted them.

The Grounds they went upon were theſe: That the Poſition laid down by *Columbus*, of the Poſſibility of coming to the *Eaſt Indies* by ſailing *Weſt*, was certainly true though he had not brought it to bear; and that ſuch as derided that great Man's Notion, were not ſo well ſkilled in Navigation as he; that, without Queſtion, it was very poſſible to ſail from the *South Sea*, which was but juſt then heard of, to the *Molucca Iſlands*; and that it was very probable a Paſſage might be found into thoſe Seas, through the *Rio de la Plata*, or ſome other Opening upon that Coaſt; that, in Caſe this could be done, *Spain* might reap the Profit of both *Indies*, ſince this being a Diſcovery made from the Weſt, would fall expreſsly under the Words of the Pope's Bull. In conſequence of theſe Propoſals it was agreed, that the Undertakers ſhould have the Twentieth Part of the clear Profits; that the Government of any Iſlands they ſhould diſcover, ſhould belong to them and their Heirs for ever, with the Title of *Adelantados*; and that, farther, the Crown ſhould furniſh them with five Ships, and two hundred and thirty-four Men, with Proviſions for two Years. This Fleet of theirs conſiſted of the *Trinadada*, which was the Admiral, having on board *Stephen Gomez*, a *Portugueſe* Pilot; the *Santa Vittoria*, commanded by *Don Lewis de Mendoza*; the *St. Antonio*, under *Don Juan de Carthagena*; the *St. Iago*, of which *Don Juan Serrano* was Commander; and the *Conception*, under *Don Gaſpar de Quixida*. The Number of their Men

Men according to ſome Authors, was 237: But moſt Writers make them 250, among whom there were thirty *Portugueſe*, and upon theſe the Admiral chiefly depended, In Point of Skill he greatly relied on *Don Juan de Serrano*, who left the King of *Portugal*'s Service in the ſame Manner that *Magellan* himſelf had done, after having ſerved many Years in the *Indies*, and ſome Part of the Time in the *Moluccas*, of which they were now going in Search. Great Hopes were conceived of this Voyage, from the known Experience of the Commanders: But the Secret of it remained cloſely lock'd up in the Boſom of the Admiral, who declared no more to the reſt, than that he was fitted out to diſcover new Countries, which, as it implied in the Opinion of his Companions, that they were going to fetch home Gold, and other Riches, filled them with ſwelling Expectations, ſo that they left *Seville* with the moſt chearful Courage.

They ſailed from *Seville* the 10th of *Auguſt*, *A. D.* 1519, and *October* the 3d arrived between the *Cape Verd* and the Iſlands of that Name; they ſpent a great deal of Time about the Coaſt of *Guinea*, and by tedious Calms, which laſted ſeventy Days, were ſo long labouring to croſs the Line. But when they had done this, and the South Pole appeared above the Horizon, they held on their South Courſe, and Came upon the Main of *Brazil*, about that Part of it which lies in 22 Degrees. They obſerved it to be all one continued Tract of Land, higher from the Cape St. *Auguſtin*, which is in this Part of the Country. They found good Store of Fruits, Sugar-Canes, and divers Sorts of Animals, out of all which they had liberal Entertainment. Having made two Degrees and a Half more of South Latitude, they fell in with a Country inhabited by a wild Sort of People: They were of a prodigious Stature, fierce, and barbarous, made a horrible roaring Noiſe, more like Bulls than human Creatures; and yet, with all that mighty Bulk, were ſo nimble and light of Foot, that none of the *Spaniards* or *Portugueſe* could overtake them. Here was a fine River of freſh Water, that had ſeven Iſlands in the Mouth of it, and was full ſeventeen Leagues wide in that Part. The biggeſt of thoſe Iſlands yielded them ſome Jewels, and they gave it

it the Name of St. *Mary*. They continued coaſting along this Tract of Land towards the South Pole, and met with a couple of Iſlands ſo full of Seals and Pengwins, that, in an Hour's Space, they could have laden all their five Ships. The Pengyns are a black, heavy, unwieldy Fowl, extremely fat, covered over with a Sort of Down inſtead of Feathers, and armed with a Bill like a Raven's; they maintain themſelves altogether out of the Waters, eating nothing but Fiſh: Their next Advance was to 49 Degrees and a Half South Latitude; here they were ſhut up by hard Weather, and forced to take up their Winter Quarters for no leſs than five Months.

They paſſed their Time in this Place but very unpleaſantly, and for a long Time believed, that the Country was uninhabited: But at length they were undeceived as to this Point; for a Savage of the neighbouring Parts came up to give them a Viſit; a briſk jolly Fellow, very merrily diſpoſed, ſinging and dancing all the Way as he came: Being got to the Haven, he ſtood there, and threw Duſt upon his Head; which they obſerving, ſent ſome aſhore to him, making the like Signs of Peace, upon that Aſſurance he came along with them to the Ship, without any Thing of Fear or Scruple. His Bulk and Stature was ſuch, as would eaſily allow him the Character of a Giant; the Head of one of their middle-ſized Men reached but to his Waiſt, and he was proportionable big: His Body was formidably painted all over, eſpecially his Face; a couple of Stags Horns drawn, one upon each Cheek, and great red Circles about his Eyes; his Colours were otherwiſe moſtly yellow, only his Hair was white. For his Apparel he had the Skin of a Beaſt clumſily ſewed together; but a Beaſt as ſtrange as that was that wore it, every Way unaccountable, neither Mule, Horſe, nor Camel, but ſomething of every one, the Ears of the firſt, the Tail of the ſecond, and the Shape and Body of the laſt. 'Twas an intire Suit, all of one Peice from Head to Foot: As his Breaſt and Back were covered with it above, ſo his very Legs and Feet were wrapped up in the ſame beneath. The Arms that he brought with him were a ſtout Bow and Arrows; the String of the former was a Gut

or

or Sinew of that monſtrous Beaſt; and the latter, inſtead of Iron Heads, were tipped with ſharp Stones. The Admiral made him eat and drink, and he enjoyed himſelf very comfortably on Ship-board, till he happened to peep into a large Looking-Glaſs, that was given him amongſt other Trifles: This put him into a Fright, which he could not eaſily recover; ſo that, ſtarting back with Violence, he tumbled a couple of the Men, that ſtood by him, to the Ground. However, this Giant fared ſo well amongſt them, (notwithſtanding the Fright by the Looking Glaſs) that quickly after they had the Company of more; particularly one came, and made himſelf mighty familiar, carried it pleaſantly, and with ſo much good Humour amongſt them, that our *Europeans* were alſo pleaſed with his Company. He gave them a Sight of one of thoſe Beaſts whoſe Skins they wear.

The General was deſirous of making ſome of theſe gigantic People Priſoners; and in order to it, his Crew took the following Method: They filled their Hands with Toys, and little Things that pleaſed them, and, in the mean Time, put Iron Shackles upon their Legs, which they thought were very fine Play Things, as well as the reſt, and were pleaſed with the jingling Sound of them, till they found how they were hampered and betrayed: But then they fell a bellowing like Bulls, and implored the Help of *Setebos* in that Extremity; they cried aloud for his Aſſiſtance, but he did not come to deliver them; and what Power it is they give that Name to, they beſt know. To deſire his Help in Miſery, implied ſome Notions conceived of his Goodneſs and Compaſſion; and 'tis not to be imagined, that they would thus crave Relief of an Evil Spirit that uſed to vex and afflict them. Moſt of theſe People wore the ſame Sort of Apparel that the firſt appeared in, that is, the Skins of the forementioned Beaſt: They go with their Hair ſhort; yet what there is, they tie up with Cotton Lace. They have no fixed Habitations, but certain moveable Cottages, which they carry from one Place to another, as their Fancy leads them; and the very ſame Materials which they uſe for the Defence of their Bodies, they uſe alſo for the Defence and Covering of

theſe

theſe Cottages: What Fleſh they eat, they beſtow no Ceremony of Dreſſing upon; but devour it freſh and raw as it comes to their Hands: Beſides which they have a certain ſweet Root amongſt them, called *Capar*, which is a conſiderable Part of their Food. They add alſo they are extremely jealous of their Women; but they don't tell us they ſaw any of them.

Amongſt them the Practice of Phyſick is reduced into a very narrow Compaſs, and takes in no more than Vomiting and Phlebotomy: Theſe two Evacuations muſt anſwer a Variety of Caſes and Purpoſes; and, where this won't do, the Diſeaſe is incurable in that Land. Their way of Bleeding is to give a good Chop with ſome Edge Tool or other in the Part that is affected, be it Leg, or Arm, or Face. But though 'tis odd to uſe a Chopping-Knife inſtead of a Lancet, for letting Blood, yet it is more ſo, to thruſt an Arrow, a Foot and an half down the Throat, to procure a Vomit. No doubt but this will prick the Fibres, and ſet a Man a reaching to ſome Purpoſe. Theſe Folks are very ſtrong: When they made an Attempt of taking ſome of them Priſoners, one alone very near tired the utmoſt Force of nine of their Men that were employed to maſter him; and though they had him down and bound his Hands tightly, yet he freed himſelf from his Bonds, and got looſe, in ſpite of all their Endeavours to hold him. And, proportionable to their Strength, is that alſo of their Appetite: One of them eat up a whole Baſket of Ship-Biſcuit at a Meal, and drank a Bowl (they don't ſay how large) of Water at a Draught; but any Thing of this kind is not ſo very ſtrange, conſidering the large Carcaſes they have to maintain. One Thing of them (which is ſomething ſingular) is not to be omitted before we leave them; and that is, that, by Reaſon of the vehement Cold, they truſs themſelves up ſo very cloſe and tight, that the Genitals in the Men are not to be diſcovered, lying hid intirely within their Bodies. The Admiral gave theſe People the Name of *Patagons*, and took Notice of theſe few common Words: They call Bread, *Capar*; Water, *Oli*; Black, *Amel*; Red, *Cheiche*; Red Cloth, *Cherecai*, *Setebos*, and *Cheleule*, are the Names of

Beings they pay a religious Reſpect to; of which the former is the ſupreme, the latter an inferior one: But whether they are proper Names, or only their Terms for a higher and ſubordinate Power in general, is not certain.

The Port they ſtayed in theſe five Months was called Port St. *Julian*; of which, as of the whole adjoining Country, they took ſolemn Poſſeſſion, and left a Croſs erected in Token of it: becauſe it was the Beginning of *October* by that Time they came up to the *Cape de Verd* Iſlands; and they were detained ſo long by the Calms, that they made it *December* before they croſſed the Line. But the main Reaſon of their ſtaying ſo long here, was a Conſpiracy that broke out among their Crew, not only ſome of the common Men, but ſome of the Captains alſo, and particularly Captain *Mendoza*, upon whom the General chiefly depended. The General acted in this Affair with great Spirit and Courage; for, having ſubdued the Conſpirators, he brought them to a Trial for plotting againſt his Life, hanged *Lewis de Mendoza*, and ſome few, who were moſt guilty; and left *Juan de Carthagena*, and ſome others, who were not quite ſo deep, amongſt the *Patagons*. The Weather growing fine, and the Crew once more brought into Subjection, *Magellan* thought it high Time to purſue his Courſe; which he accordingly did. till he arrived in 51 Degrees 40 Minutes South Latitude. Here they found a convenient Port, and met with good Proviſions of Fuel, Fiſh, and freſh Water; they lingered away at this Place two Months more, and then came to fifty two Degrees South Latitude, where they diſcovered the Entrance into the Streights. They found them about 110 Leagues in Length, and as for the Breadth very uncertain, in ſome Places very wide, in others not more than half a League over; the Land on both Sides high and uneeven, and the Mountains covered with Snow. When they came to the End of it, they found an open Paſſage into the great Ocean. *Magellan* was ſurprized at the Sight, with a Joy that exceeded all common Bounds; for this was the happy Thing he looked for, and now he was able to demonſtrate his ſailing round by the Weſt. The Point of Land from whence he firſt ſaw this deſirable Proſpect, he called

in

in Memory of it, Cape *Deſiderato*; but it ſeems it was not ſo deſirable to all the reſt of the Company; for here one of the Ships ſtole away, and ſailed homeward by herſelf. They entered the *Pacific Sea*, for ſo they called it, *November* the 28th *A. D.* 1520, and in this wide Ocean they ſailed three Months and twenty Days, without Sight of Land. The Miſeries they endured for Want of Proviſion a good Part of this Time, were ſuch as are ſeldom heard of: the freſh Water they had on board ſtunk, and was very loathſome; all their Bread was gone, and nothing left to eat but Pieces of Skins, and Bits of Leather. Nature will make any Shift, though ever ſo hard, to bear herſelf out in Diſtreſs, when 'tis poſſible to be done; and the poor Seamen here, rather than ſtarve, fell very greedily to work upon thoſe dry tough Pieces of Leather that were about the Ropes of the Ships. But it being impoſſible to eat them before they were ſome way ſoftened, and fitted for chewing, they laid them aſteep in ſalt Water for ſome Days, and then made the beſt of them, as long as they laſted. But then again, what with this impure Sort of Feeding, which was but ſcanty too, and the daily Impoveriſhment of their Spirits wanting better Recruit, their Number ſhortened apace: Some died outright, others fell into pining Sickneſs, others had their Gums grew quite over their Teeth on every Side; by which Means being totally unable to manage thoſe tough Solids they were forced to feed upon, they were paſt all Help, and ſo miſerably ſtarved to Death. Their only Comfort, under all theſe direful Circumſtances, was a Conſtancy of fair and good Weather. The Winds blew them ſmoothly and gently along, and, while they were thus expoſed, the Sea was calm and quiet too, and by this got the celebrated Name of *Pacific*. In all this Time they ſaw nothing but two uninhabited Iſlands, that gave no Proſpect of any Relief. The Needle of their Compaſs varied ſometimes; and, at others, moved ſo irregular, that they were often forced to quicken it with a freſh Touch of the Loadſtone. The South Pole they found to have no very remarkable Star near it, as the North has: There are two Cluſters of ſmall Stars, which are ſeparated from each other at a ſmall

Diſtance; between thoſe are a couple of Stars, not very large or bright, which diſcover themſelves, by the Smallneſs of the Circle they deſcribe, to be pretty near the Pole, at leaſt the neareſt of any that are diſcernible. At the Diſtance of twenty Degrees from the South Pole they ſaw an Iſland of exceeding great Height, called *Cipangue*, and at 15 Degrees another as high, the Name of which is *Sumbdit*. They ſailed in one Gulph at leaſt 4000 Leagues; and, having made, by their Reckoning, 120 Degrees Longitude from their firſt Departure, they found they drew towards the Equinoctial. When they had paſſed that Line, and were got to 13 Degrees North Latitude, they deſigned for the Cape, called by the old Geographers the Cape of *Cattigare*; but this they miſſed, going upon that old Account of the Latitude of it, which places it thereabouts; and came to underſtand afterwards, that it lies in 12 Degrees.

March the 6th they fell in with a Cluſter of Iſlands, being then in 12 Degrees North Latitude, and 146 Degrees Longitude from their firſt ſetting out: Here they went on Shore to breathe and refreſh a little after all the Fatigues of their tedious Voyage through the South Sea. But the thieviſh People of thoſe Iſlands would not let them be quiet. While they were repoſing themſelves aſhore, the others would be pilfering and ſtealing Things out of the Ships, ſo that 'twas impoſſible for them to enjoy themſelves in any meaſure, till they had taken ſome Courſe to deliver themſelves from theſe Diſturbers. They marched therefore, with a ſmall Party, pretty well armed, up into one of the Iſlands, burnt ſeveral of their Houſes, and killed ſome of the Inhabitants; but this Correction, though it might awe them for the preſent, yet could not mend their Diſpoſition; but they that were Thieves, would be Thieves ſtill: For which Reaſon they reſolved to make no longer Stay there, but find out ſome other Place, where they might enjoy more Safety and Quiet. Amongſt theſe People there is not the leaſt Shew of any Order or Form of Government, but every Man does what is agreeable to his own Humour and Inclination: Nay, conſidering how univerſally that thieviſh cheating Diſpoſition prevails, 'tis next to impoſſible there ſhould be any

Thing of that Kind; for the governing Part would never fail to tranſgreſs the Laws of Juſtice and common Honeſty, as much as the reſt; and the Inferiors would never bear to be curb'd and puniſhed by thoſe that they ſaw do the very ſame Things, and ſet ſuch an Example before their Eyes; ſo that the general Corruption of their Manners will neceſſarily keep them all upon a Level, and eſtabliſh a perpetual Anarchy among them. The Men go intirely naked, not diſcovering any Thing of that common Modeſty which obtains amongſt the moſt barbarous People, to beſtow ſome Covering upon the obſcene Parts: That Diſtinction indeed ceaſes here, all Parts being equally expoſed to View. Their Hair is very black, both on their Heads and Beards; the former being generally very long, and reaching down to their Waiſts. They anoint themſelves all over with the Oil of Cocoa, but their natural Complexion is Olive: They colour the Teeth black and red; and ſome of them wear a Bonnet, made of the Palm-tree, upon their Heads. The Women are much better favoured than the Men, and more modeſt too; they all wear Coverings made of the inner Bark of the Palm-tree; their Hair black, thick, and long, and ready to trail upon the Ground: They commend them for very careful, induſtrious Houſewives, ſpending their Time at a much better Rate than the Men do; for, whilſt theſe are Pilfering abroad, the others are making Mats and Nets of the Palm-tree at home; but, of both Sides, the Work goes towards the Furniſhing the Houſe: Theſe Houſes are built of Timber, covered over with Boards and large Fig-leaves, and divided into ſeveral Apartments: Their Beds are the Palm-mats, laid one upon another; and the Leaves of the ſame are inſtead of Sheets and Blankets: They have no Weapons but Clubs, and long Poles, upon which they put Heads of Horn: Their Food is Cocoas, Bananas, Figs, Sugar Canes, Fowl, and Flying-Fiſh: Their Canoos are oddly contrived and patched up; yet they will ſail with them at a very great Rate: The Sails are made of broad Date-Leaves ſewed together; inſtead of a Rudder, they uſe a large Board, with a Staff at the Top; and may, when they will, make the Stem the Forecaſtle, or

the

the Forecaſtle the Stem: They are always painted over, either black, or white, or red, ſome one Colour, and ſome another, as they like. Theſe People are mightily taken with any little Thing that is new, and agreeable to their Humour: When the Spaniards had wounded ſeveral of them with their Arrows, nay, pierced them almoſt through and through, theſe being ſtrange Things to them, they would pull them out of their Wounds, and hold them in their Hands, ſtaring at them till they dropt down dead; and, after all, though they had been ſo roughly handled, yet they would follow the Ships, as they were going away, to gaze at them, ſo that there were at one Time 200 of their Canoos about them, preſſing as near as they could, to behold thoſe wonderful Contrivances.

March the 10th they landed upon the Iſland of *Zamal*, which is 30 Leagues from the *Ladrones*; and the next Day they went aſhore at *Humuna*, an Iſland not inhabited, yet well deſerving to be ſo: Here they found Springs of delicate clear Water, abundance of Fruit-trees, Gold, and white Coral. The Admiral called it the Iſland of *Good Signs*. The Inhabitants of ſome of the neighbouring Iſlands came up to them not long after, a People of much Humanity, and good Diſpoſition; very fair and friendly in their Carriage, and appeared to be mighty well pleaſed at their coming among them: They came laden with Preſents of Fiſh, and the Wine made of the Cocoa-tree, and promiſed other Proviſions in a little Time. Since the Cocoa-wine is mentioned, it may not be amiſs to ſhew the various Uſes theſe People put that Fruit to; by which it will appear, how very ſerviceable a Thing it is, and how many of the Conveniences of Life are furniſhed by it: The Cocoa is the Fruit of a certain Tree like a Date, and ſupplies them at once with Bread Oil, and Vinegar, and with Phyſick too. The Wine is drank from the Tree itſelf, but all the reſt are made from the Fruit; they cut off ſome Part of a Branch of the Tree, and faſten to the remaining Piece a good large Reed, into which drops a Liquor like white Wine in Colour and Appearance, and of a Taſte gratefully tart: A good Quantity of this, thus drawn forth, and put in a Veſſel, is called their Cocoa-

Cocoa-wine, without any farther Preparation. The Fruit, which is as big as a Man's Head, has two Rinds; the outermoſt of which is green, two Fingers thick, and full of Strings and Threads, and of theſe they make all the Cords they uſe about their Boats; under this Rind there is another, or rather a Shell, being conſiderably thick and hard; this burnt and pulveriz'd, is uſed as a Remedy for ſeveral Diſtempers: To it adheres the Kernel, which is white, and of the Thickneſs of a Finger; it has a pleaſant Taſte, almoſt like an Almond; and, when it is dried, they make it into Bread: In the Middle of this Kernel there is a Hollow, full of pure limpid Water, and that of a very cordial and refreſhing Nature: It will ſometimes congeal, and lie like an Egg within the Shell. When they would make Oil, they leave the Fruit to ſteep in Water, till it putrefies; and then ſet it over the Fire, and boil it to an Oil; and the Vinegar is only the ſame Water, expoſed for ſome Time to the Sun, which turns it into Vinegar, like that of white Wine. Laſtly, if they mix the Kernel, together with the Water that is lodged in the Cavity of it, and then ſtrain it through a Cloth, they make a good Milk of it. The Cocoa-trees reſemble the common Date Trees in all but this, that they are not ſo rugged and knotty as they are. They will hold out very well 100 Years; and two of them will maintain a Family of ten People with Wine very plentifully, provided they are uſed by Turns, and each Tree, having been drawn ſeven or eight Days, be allowed as many to recover again, before any more be taken from it. With this Care ſuch a Number of People may drink as much as they will, and the Tree bear them out. But to return to our Concerns between this People and them: According to their Promiſe, they came again with other Proviſions, and enter'd into a farther Degree of Familiarity and friendly Correſpondence with them; they invited the Admiral into their Barks, and were reciprocally invited aboard the Admiral's Ship, where a great Gun being diſcharged to entertain them, it put them into ſuch Affright, that they were all ready to leap overboard; but good Words and Preſents brought them to themſelves again, and with much ado they were perſuaded

ſuaded to keep out of the Water. The Name of their Iſland was *Zulvan*, of no very great Compaſs, but conſiderable for its Products: They had all Manner of Spices in their Barks, Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, Ginger, and Mace, and ſeveral Things made in Gold, all which they carried up and down, and ſold for Merchandize: They were without Apparel, but yet dreſt at a more coſtly Rate than the *Europeans*, that had it: They had Ear Rings of Gold in each Ear, and ſeveral Jewels, faſtened, with Pieces of Gold, to their Arms: beſides, they had Daggers, Knives, and Lances, that were all very richly ornamented with the ſame Metal: But though they had nothing of any Garment on, yet they had ſomething of a Covering before, and that of a Sort of Cloth very ingeniouſly made out of the Rind of a Tree that grows amongſt them. The moſt conſiderable Men are diſtinguiſhed from the common People by a Piece of ſilken Needle-work wrapped about their Heads. They are groſs-bodied, broad and well ſet, of an olive Colour; and this Hue they maintain by conſtant Unction of their Bodies with the Oil of Cocoa. They departed from this Iſle *March* the 25th, *A. D.* 1521, and directed their Courſe between the Weſt and South-weſt, ſailing between the Iſles *Cenala*, *Huinanghan*, *Hibuſſon*, and *Abarian*.

March the 28th, they came to the Iſle of *Buthuan*; the King of which and the Prince his Son, gave them honourable Entertainment, preſenting them with great Quantities of Gold and Spices. The Admiral, in Return, preſented the King with two Veſts of Cloth, one red, and the other yellow, made after the *Turkiſh* Faſhion; and ſome of his Courtiers with Knives, Glaſſes, and Beads of Cryſtal. The Admiral ſent two of his Company aſhore along with him, of which *Antonio Pigafetta*, who wrote this Relation, was one. When they were landed, the King and his Attendants all lifted up their Hands to Heaven, and then towards the two Chriſtians, in which Ceremony theſe alſo followed them; and this Cuſtom they obſerved in drinking too. His Majeſty's Palace was like a Hay-loft covered with Palm and Fig-leaves, mounted ſo high upon great Timber Poſts, that they were forced to uſe Ladders to get in. Though they are no Chriſtians,

tians, yet, at their Meals, they always make the Sign of the Croſs, ſitting in the ſame Manner with their Legs as Taylors do. At Night, inſtead of Candles, they burn the Gum of a certain Tree wrapped up in Palm-leaves: The King and Prince, having entertained them in their ſeveral Palaces, and given them noble Preſents, diſmiſſed them, but not without new Admiration, and a firm Perſuaſion now rooted in their Minds, that they were above the Rank of common Mortals, having ſeen ſo many ſtrange Things among them; eſpecially *Pigafetta*'s Writing, and Reading what he had written, which were Myſteries they could not comprehend. In the Iſland of *Buthuan*, as they ſifted the Earth of a certain Mine, they found great Lumps of Gold, ſome as big as Nuts, others as large as Eggs; of which Metal were all the king's Veſſels for his Table made. The King himſelf was a very comely Perſon, his Hair black and long, his Complexion olive, his Body perfumed with ſweet Oils of Storax and Benjamin, and painted with divers Colours; he had Rings of Gold in his Ears, and on every Finger three; his Head was wrapped with a ſilken Veil, and a Piece of Cotton, wrought with Silk and Gold, covered his Body to the Knees. He wore a long Dagger by his Side, with a Haft of Gold, and a Scabbard of fine carved Wood. His Country, it ſeems, was ſo rich, that one of his Subjects offered a Crown of maſſy Gold, with a Collar, for ſix Threads of Cryſtal Beads: But the Admiral would not permit ſuch Bargains as theſe, that they might not appear to be too fond and covetous of their Gold. The People are of an active and ſprightly Nature; the Men quite naked, except a Covering of Paint; but the Women go cloathed from the Waiſt downwards, and both wear Gold Rings: They are always chewing Arecca, and ſay, they cannot live without it; this is a Sort of Fruit like a Pear, cut in Quarters, and rolled up in the Leaves of a Tree called *Betele*, which are almoſt like Bay-leaves. As for religious Rites, they had, as far as they obſerved, no other Uſe amongſt them, but only to lift up their Faces, and Hands joined together, to Heaven, and call upon their God *Abba*. The Admiral cauſed a Banner, in which was the Portraiture of the Croſs, and a Crown of

Thorns with Nails, to be brought forth, and publickly reverenced by all his Men in the King's Preſence, telling his Majeſty, it ſhould be ſet up in ſome high Mountain in his Country; not only for a Token of good Entertainment for Chriſtians in that Place, but alſo for his own and Nation's Defence; ſince, if they devoutly prayed to it, it would infallibly protect them from the Miſchiefs of Lightening and Tempeſt, as well as from other Evils: This the poor Prince promiſed to do, knowing no better, and glad to be ſo defended from Thunder-bolts.

At their Departure from hence, this King's Pilots brought them to the Iſles of *Zeilon*, *Zubut*, *Meſſana*, *Calaghan*, of which *Zubut* is the beſt, and has the beſt Trade. In *Meſſana* they found Dogs, Cats, Hogs, Hens, Goats, Rice, Ginger, Cocoa, Millet, Panic, Barley, Figs, Oranges, Wax, and Gold, in great Plenty: This Iſland lies in nine Degrees forty Minutes of North Latitude, and 162 Degrees of Longitude from their firſt Meridian. They ſtayed here eight Days, and then, ſailing to the N. W. paſſed by the Iſles *Zeilon*, *Bohol*, *Canghu*, *Barbai*, and *Caleghan*, in which laſt Iſle there are Bats as big as Eagles, and that taſte, when dreſſed, like a Hen; there are alſo Stock-doves, Turtle-Doves, Popinjays, and a certain Sort of Fowl like Hens, which have little Horns, and lay their Eggs a Cubit's Depth in the Sand, where the Sun's Heat hatches them. From *Meſſana* to *Caleghan* is about 20 Leagues ſailing to the Weſt; and from *Caleghan* to *Zubut* about 50 Leagues, to which they now directed their Courſe, having the Company of the King of *Meſſana*, who, out of pure Friendſhip, went along with them; the Admiral having by many Services ſecured his Affection.

April the 7th, about Noon, they entered the Port of *Zubut*; and, coming near the City, fired all the great Guns, which put the Place into a very great Conſternation: But all this Apprehenſion of Danger from the Ships was quickly removed, by the coming of their Embaſſador to the Town, who aſſured the King, that it was cuſtomary with them to diſcharge their Cannon, whenever they came into any great Ports; and that it was a Piece of Reſpect they always paid

to

to the Governors of Towns: He told him, how mighty a Prince they were Servants to; and that their Deſign was to find out the *Moluccas*; that they only came to viſit him by the Way, hearing of his Fame by the King of *Meſſana*; and deſired him to furniſh them with Victuals for the Commodities they had brought. The King bid them welcome, but told them, that it was a Cuſtom there for all Ships that came to pay Tribute; and that he expected the like Acknowledgement from them. This the Embaſſador poſitively refuſed, telling him, that his Admiral was the Servant of ſo great a King, that as he had never yet, ſo he would not now begin to make that Acknowledgement to any Prince in the World; and withal, that if he would accept of Peace offered to him, well; if not, he ſhould quickly have his Hands full of War. A certain *Moor*, that ſtood by him, told the King, that theſe were the *Portugueſe* that had conquered *Calecut* and *Malacca*, and therefore adviſed him to have a Care how he provoked them. Upon this Conſideration, the king concluded to refer the Matter to his Council, and to give Anſwer the next Day, ſending them in the mean while Wine and Victuals. The king of *Meſſana*, who was a very potent Prince, went next aſhore, and acted very generouſly on their Behalf with the king of *Zubut*; the Effect of which was, that the king, inſtead of demanding, was now almoſt ready to pay Tribute himſelf; which they not at all inſiſting upon, but deſiring only Liberty to trade, he chearfully granted it, and offered to ſeal the Covenant of Peace and Friendſhip with his Blood. After this, the king of *Meſſana*, the king of *Zubut*, and his Nephew, came on board the Admiral, brought him Preſents, and confirmed the League. The Admiral perſuaded them to embrace the Chriſtian Faith, which they did, after ſome religious Conferences, with Pleaſure, being afterwards all baptized. This Example of the great Ones influenced the whole Iſland, ſo that Chriſtianity was univerſally received there. When they came to the City, they found the King in his Palace, ſitting upon a Sort of fine Mat made of Date-leaves, having no Apparel but a Bombaſine Cotton about his Waiſt: About his Head he had a Veil of Needle-work, and about his

Neck a very coſtly Chain, as alſo ſtately Jewels in his Ears: He had before him ſeveral Porcelane Veſſels, ſome with Eggs, and others full of Date-wine. The Prince entertained them likewiſe at his Palace; and, for their Diverſion, made his Daughter ſing and dance naked before them. One of the *Spaniards* dying, they deſired Leave of the king to bury him in his Land: To which the king replied very graciouſly, *That ſince he, and all his, were at the King their Maſter's Devotion, much more ſhould a few Feet of his Ground be ſo, in affording a Burying-place to one of his Subjects.* Theſe People exerciſe Juſtice in their Dealings, with one another, keeping to the Uſe of Weights and Meaſures. Their Houſes are made of Timber, raiſed high upon Poſts, ſo that they go up Stairs to them. They talk of a certain Sort of Water-fowl in this Country, as big as a Crow, which they call *Lughan*, which the Whales ſometimes ſwallow down alive, and have their Hearts eaten up by this Bird; by which Means many of them are killed, and the Bird is afterwards found alive in the Carcaſe of the Whale: The Skin of this Fowl is black, but the Fleſh good. The *Spaniards* had a very advantageous Bartering with thoſe People, they giving them ten Peſos of Gold (a Ducat and Half each) for fourteen Pounds Weight of Iron, beſides all Sorts of Proviſions for very Trifles. The baptizing of thoſe Princes was performed with very great Solemnity, the Ordnance being all diſcharged; which the Admiral told the king beforehand, to prevent his being ſurprized. The king of *Zubut* was named *Charles*, and the Prince *Ferdinando*; the former of thoſe Names being the Emperor's, and the latter his Brother's. The king of *Meſſana* was named *John*, and the *Mooriſh* Courtier *Chriſtopher:* Beſides the Princes and great Men, there were five hundred of inferior Rank baptized at the ſame Time, All the Idols were broken, and the Croſs ſet up in divers Places, which the Admiral engaged them to pray very devoutly before, Morning and Evening: The Queen was baptiſed too at the ſame Time, with forty of her Ladies, and her Daughter the Prince's Wife: She was young and handſome, her Body covered with a white Cloth, and her Head adorned with a Sort of

triple

triple Crown made of Date-leaves: After Maſs was ended, the King and Court dined in the Admiral's Ship, in Honour of whom all the great Ordnance were diſcharged. In eight Days Time moſt of the Iſland became Chriſtians, except one Village of Idolaters, who would not obey the King's Command in this Matter: The *Spaniards* therefore burnt the Village, and erected a Croſs upon the Ruins of it; and, to ſhew the good and advantageous Effects of Chriſtianity amongſt the People that had embraced it, a very miraculous Cure was wrought upon the king of *Zubut*'s Brother, upon his receiving Baptiſm. The Admiral, it ſeems, pawned his Head for his immediate Recovery, if he would ſubmit to this ſacred Rite, and break all his Idols. And they who record theſe Tranſactions ſay, that the Admiral did ſave his Pawn, the Prince perfectly recovering of his Malady ſoon after he was thus initiated into the Chriſtian Religion.

Not far from *Zubut* lies the Iſle of *Mathan*, the Inhabitants of which go quite naked, except a ſlight Covering over the Pudenda, at which Part all the Males, both great and ſmall, hang certain Gold Rings, the Skin being pierced for that Purpoſe: They take as many Wives as they pleaſe, one of which only has the Government of the Houſe. They uſe very odd Ceremonies in their Sacrifices to the Sun; they begin with ringing Bells, then they ſpread a Cloth upon the Ground, upon which are ſet certain Platters with Honey, Rice, and roaſt Fiſhes. The Sacrifice they offer is an Hog, and the Managers of the Ceremony are two old Women, who ſing and dance about the Animal, and ſound Trumpets made of Reeds. They mumble out certain Prayers to the Sun, and, after ſeveral antic and ridiculous Geſtures, they pour a Cup of Wine upon the Hog: One of the venerable Prieſteſſes ſtrikes the fatal Blow with a Lance, and then puts a lighted Lamp into the Creature's Mouth, which continues burning all the Time of the Ceremony: The other dips the Reed Trumpet in the Blood, and with her Finger beſmears her Huſband's Forehead, and then the Foreheads of the reſt of the Men who aſſiſt at the Sacrifice; When they have done, they diſrobe themſelves of their prieſtly Attire,

tire, and fall to eating the Honey, Rice and Fiſh, in which only the Women partake with them: As for the Fleſh of the Hog, that is not to be touched till the two Prieſteſſes have craved a Bleſſing on it. As for their Funerals, their Ceremonies are almoſt as extravagant as thoſe of their Sacrifices: When a Man of Figure dies, all the chief Women go to his Houſe, and carry Boughs with Pieces of Cotton in them, which they faſten about the Corps; they ſit round it cloathed in white Cotton, fanning themſelves with Branches of Palm, the Room being incenſed with Myrrh and Storax all the while: Then a Perſon comes, and cuts off the Hair of the Deceaſed by little and little; and at the ſame Time, his chief Wife lies upon the dead Body with her Face, Hands, and Feet to his, crying and lamenting while his Hair is cut off; but ſhe changes her Funeral Notes into a merry Song when the other has done Cutting: The Ceremony laſts five Days, after which they incloſe the Corps in a Dormitory built of Wood, and made very faſt on every Side.

This Iſle of *Mathan* was governed by two Kings; one of which refuſing to pay Tribute to the king of *Spain*, the Admiral went out to reduce him. The *Indian* had between ſix and ſeven thouſand Men, armed with Bows and Arrows, Darts and Javelins, which Army the Admiral attacked with ſixty of his *Spaniards*, armed with Coats of Mail and Helmets. The Battle was for a long Time doubtful: At laſt the Admiral's Heat and Courage carrying him too far amongſt the Barbarians, he was there firſt wounded with a poiſoned Arrow, and afterwards thruſt into the Head with a Lance, which ended the Life and Actions of this noble Commander. About eight or nine of his Men were ſlain, and about fifteen of the Enemy, beſides many wounded. The *Spaniards* would very willingly have redeemed the Body of their Admiral, but the *Indians* would not conſent to it upon any Terms. This, however, was but the Beginning of their Misfortunes; for the king, as he had embraced their Religion without underſtanding it, abandoned it upon this Change in their Circumſtances; and made Peace with his Rival, notwithſtanding one of the Articles inſiſted upon was, that all the Strangers ſhould be inſtantly put to Death.

The

The barbarous Monarch was ſenſible enough, that by Force he ſhould never be able to execute this infamous Article, and therefore he had Recourſe to Fraud. With this View, he invited all the *Spaniards*, that were on Shore, to a ſumptuous Entertainment; and there, in the midſt of their Feaſting, he directed them to be moſt cruelly murdered, reſerving only *Don Juan Serrano* alive, in order to have procured a Supply of Artillery and Ammunition by way of Ranſom for him. With this Demand of his the *Spaniards* would willingly have complied, but found ſo much Prevarication and Treachery in his Management, and, at the ſame Time, were ſo much intimidated by the Fate of their Companions, that they reſolved to break off the Treaty, and put to Sea. The unfortunate *Serrano*, when he ſaw them about to weigh their Anchors, threw himſelf on his knees; and, in the moſt moving Terms, begged of them not to leave him in the Hands of ſo baſe a People: But their Fears, or rather their Cares for their own Preſervation, made them deaf to his Intreaties, eſpecially when, on a Muſter, they found their whole Force conſiſted but of eighty Men, that their Ships were in a miſerable Condition, and that, in order to have a Probability of returning Home, it would be neceſſary to deſtroy one Ship, to make uſe of her Stores and Materials in repairing the other two. What the Fate was of *Serrano*, after their Departure, is not known: but it is certain, the Loſs of him proved a very great Hinderance to their Voyage, ſince, next to the Admiral, he was the braveſt Man, and the beſt Seaman, they had, one of the Projectors of this Voyage, and who, if he had lived to return, would have animated the Imperial Court to future Expeditions.

A little before the Admiral's Death, they received News of the *Moluccas*, the diſcovering of which, this Way, was the great End of their Voyage: So that now leaving *Mathan*, they ſailed to the Iſle of *Bohol*; and here they burnt the *Conception*, furniſhing the other two Ships with the Men and Ammunition of it. Directing their Courſe from hence to the South Weſt, they came to the Iſle *Pavilogkon*, inhabited by Blacks: From hence they came to *Chippit*, which is a large Iſle; and it is about 50 Leagues from *Zubut*, in 8 Degrees

8 Degrees of North Latitude, and about 170 Degrees of Longitude from their firſt Stage. It abounds in Rice, Ginger, Goats, Hogs, Hens, *&c.* and the king of it gave them a friendly Reception. In Token of Peace he marked his Body, Face, and Tip of his Tongue, with Blood, which he drew out of his left Arm; and the *Spaniards* followed him in that bloody Ceremony. Sailing from hence about 40 Leagues, between the Weſt and South Weſt, they came to *Caghaian*, a very great Iſland, but not well inhabited: The People are *Moors*, Exiles from *Borneo*, rich in Gold, and, for their principal Weapons, uſe poiſoned Arrows, which is practiſed alſo in moſt of the Iſlands. Steering Weſt and North Weſt 25 Leagues, brought them to *Puloan*, a very fruitful Iſland, lying in 9 Degrees 20 Minutes North Latitude, and 179 Degrees 20 Minutes of Longitude, from their firſt Departure: It yields much the ſame Products as *Chippit*, beſides very large Figs, Battatos, Cocoas, and Sugar-canes. The like Ceremonies alſo were here uſed in Token of Friendſhip between the King and the *Spaniards*, as were uſed at *Chippit:* The People go naked, uſe poiſoned Arrows, and are mighty Lovers of the Sport of Cock-fighting: They make a Sort of Wine here of Rice, which is very intoxicating, but otherwiſe better than that of Palm.

The famous Iſle of *Borneo*, to which they came next, is a very large and rich Iſland: It lies in 5 Degrees 5 Minutes of North Latitude; the chief City contained no leſs than twenty-five thouſand Houſes. The king was a *Moor*, a Prince of very great Power, kept a magnificent Court, and was always attended by a numerous Guard. He ſent the Captains ſeveral Preſents, and ordered a Couple of Elephants, trapped with Silk, to be led forth to bring the *Spaniſh* Meſſengers and Preſents to the Palace: He has ten Secretaries of State, that write his Affairs in Barks of Trees: His Houſhold is governed by Women, who are the Daughters of his chief Courtiers: His Subjects pay him their Reverence, by lifting up their Hands cloſed three Times over their Heads, then lifting up their Feet one after the other, and laſtly kiſſing their Hands: They chew a great deal of the Betele of this Country, and drink a Rice Spirit called by them

them *Arac*. The Country affords Camphire, which is the Gum of the Tree Capar; alſo Cinnamon, Ginger, Myrobalans, Oranges, Lemons, Sugar, Cucumbers, Melons, plenty of Fowl and Beaſts, and whatever can be expected in that Climate.

Leaving *Borneo*, they came to the Iſle *Cimbubon*, which lies in 8 Degrees 7 Minutes of North Latitude: Here they ſtayed forty Days calking their Ships, and taking in freſh Water and Fuel. The Iſle abounds with Oſtriches, wild Hogs, and Crocodiles. They took here a Fiſh, headed like a Swine, with two Horns; its Body all one intire Bone, and ſomething like a Saddle on its Back. They ſailed from hence by the Weſt towards the South-eaſt for the *Moluccas*, and in their Way found the Sea full of Weeds and Herbs. This was near certain great Mountains This Courſe brought them to the Iſles of *Solo Taghima*, which afforded very fine Pearl: From hence it was that the King of *Borneo* got a Couple of Pearls, as round, and very near as big, as a Hen's Egg.

They came next to harbour in the Iſle *Sarangani*, reported to yield both Gold and Pearl; and here they preſſed two Pilots for their *Molucca* Voyage. They paſſed the Iſles *Ceana*, *Canida*, *Cabiaio*, *Camuca*, *Cabalu*, *Chiai*, *Lipan*, and *Nuza*; and came to a fair Iſland, called *Sanger*, in 3 Degrees 20 Minutes of North Latitude; which Iſle had four Kings. Having paſſed five other Iſlands, they at laſt eſpied a ſmall Cluſter of five Iſlands, which their Pilots ſaid were the *Moluccas*. This was the 6th of *November*, and the 27th Month after their Departure from *Spain*. They tried the Depth of the Sea, with their Plumbet, about theſe Iſlands, and found it no leſs than 102 Yards; which ſhews, that the *Portugueſe* deſigned none elſe ſhould come thither but themſelves, when they told the World, that thoſe Seas were ſo ſhallow, that there was no ſailing there, beſides the other Dangers of Rocks and Shelves, and continual Darkneſs.

November the 8th, before Sun-riſing, they entered the Port of *Tiridore*, which is one of the Chief of the *Moluccas*. The King was a *Moor*, but notwithſtanding the Prejudices of his Religion, ſo extremely fond of the *Spaniards*, and ſo much

much devoted to the Service of their Maſter, that he bid them come aſhore into their own Country and Houſes, called them his Brethren and Children; nay, in Compliment to them, changed the Name of his Kingdom from *Tiridore* into *Caſtile*. The *Moluccas* are five in Number, *Ternate*, *Tiridore*, *Mutir*, *Macchian*, and *Bacchian*; of all theſe *Ternate* is the Chief, and the King of it was once Lord of all the reſt. *Mutir* and *Macchian* were then Commonwealths, but *Bacchian* a Monarchy. The Clove Trees here are very tall, and as big about as a Man; the Boughs large in the Middle, and ſharp at the Top; the Leaves like thoſe of Bay Trees, and the Bark of an Olive Colour. The Cloves grow in large Cluſters at the Tops of the Boughs; at firſt they are white, red when they come to Maturity, and grow Black by after-drying; the Leaf, Bark, and Wood, being green, is as ſtrong as the Clove itſelf: They gather them twice a Year, in *June* and *December*; and, if they don't take them in Time, they grow very hard. Every Man has his own peculiar Trees, but they beſtow but little Huſbandry upon them. They have alſo in this Iſle a Sort of a Tree, the Bark of which being ſteeped in Water, may be drawn out in ſmall Fibres to the Fineneſs of Silk; and of this the Women make a Sort of Aprons, which is all the Covering they make uſe of.

Near *Tiridore* lies the great Iſle *Gilolo*, which is divided between *Moors* and *Heathens*: The two Kings of the *Moors* have contributed themſelves very liberally to the Peopling of the Iſland, the one of them having 600, and the other 650 Children. The *Pagans* were more abſtemious in theſe Matters, as well as leſs ſuperſtitious in other Reſpects, than the *Moors*; yet they report of them, that they adore the firſt Thing they ſee in the Morning. In this Iſle there is a Sort of Reed grows as big as a Man's Leg, and full of a very limpid Water, which makes a wholeſome Drink. *November* the 12th, a public Warehouſe was appointed in the City for the Sale of their Merchandize: The Exchange at the following Rates; for ten Yards of good red Cloth, they had one Bahar of Cloves, every Bahar being four Cantirs, and ſix Pounds, and every Canter 100 *lb.* Weight:

Weight: For fifteen Yards of a meaner Cloth, they had in *Cambie* one Bahar: For thirty-five drinking Glaſſes, one Bahar: For ſeventeen Cathyls of Quickſilver, one Bahar. They brought all Sorts of Proviſions daily to their Ships, and a Sort of freſh Water, that ſprings out of the Mountains where the Cloves grow. It is hot when it comes out of the Spring, but very cold when it has ſtood awhile in ſome other Place. They received here a very ſingular Preſent for the King of *Spain* from the King of *Bacchian*, which was a Couple of dead Birds, about the Bigneſs of Turtles, with very little Heads and Legs, long Bills, two or three long Feathers, parti-coloured at their Sides, inſtead of Wings; their whole Bodies beſides of one Colour, and that near a Tawny; they never fly, but when the Wind blows to help them; the *Moors* fancy they come down from Paradiſe, and therefore call them the Birds of God. As for all the *Moluccas* in general, their Products are Cloves, Ginger, Rice, Sagu-bread, Goats, Sheep, Hens, Popinjays, white and red Figs, Almonds, Pomegranats, Oranges, and Lemons, and a Sort of Honey which is made by Flies leſs than Ants; beſides Sugar-canes, Oil of Cocoas, Melons, Gourds, and a Fruit which they call Camulical, which is extremely cold. The Natives of theſe Iſlands were all *Heathens*, the *Moors* having not had Footing there above fifty Years before the *Spaniards* came. The Iſle *Tiridore* is in about 27 Minutes North Latitude, and 170 Degrees Longitude from their firſt Meridian, and about 9 Degrees 30 Minutes from the *Archipelago*, in which are the *Ladrones*, and run to the Quarters of South-weſt and N. N. E. *Ternate* is in four Minutes of South Latitude; *Mutir* is directly under the Equinoctial; *Machian* is in fifteen Minutes of South Latitude; and *Bacchian* in one Minute; and this Iſle is the Biggeſt of all the *Moluccas*. When they departed from hence, they had the Kings of ſeveral Iſlands attending them in their Canoos. They were conducted by them to the Iſle *Mare*, and there this Royal Company took their Leaves of them, not without great Sorrow. In this Iſle they left a leaking Ship behind them, giving Orders, if it could be repaired, for its Return into *Spain*.

They directed their Courſe to the South-weſt from *Mare*, being now no more in Number than forty-ſix *Spaniards*, and thirteen *Indians*. They paſſed the Iſles of *Chacouan*, *Lagoma*, *Sico*, *Gioghi*, *Caphi*, *Sulacho*, *Lumatola*, *Tenetum*, *Buru*, *Ambon*, *Budia*, *Celaruri*, *Benaia*, *Ambalao*, *Bandon*, *Zorobua*, *Zolot*, *Moceuamor*, *Galian*, and *Mallua*, beſides many others poſſeſſed by *Moors*, *Heathens*, and *Canibals*. They ſtaid at *Mallua* fifteen Days, repairing their Ships. It lies in 8 Degrees of South Latitude, and 169 Degrees 40 Minutes Longitude, according to their Reckoning. There grows a great deal of Pepper there, both long and round; the Leaves of the Tree are like Mulberry-leaves, and climbing like Ivy. The People are perfect Canibals, the Men wear their Hair and Beards put up in Canes; and, for Weapons, uſe only Bows and Arrows. *January* the 25th, 1552, leaving *Malua*, they arrived at *Tima*, which is five Leagues diſtant between the South and South-weſt; here they found Ginger, the Wood of white Sanders, divers Fruits, and Beaſts, Gold, and plenty of all Sorts of Proviſions: The People of the *Moluccas*, *Java*, and *Lozen*, fetch their Sanders from this Iſland. It lies in 10 Degrees South Latitude, and 174 Degrees of Longitude. The Inhabitants are Idolaters, and have among them, which is alſo common to all the Iſles of the *Archipelago*, the Diſtemper we call the Venereal Diſeaſe. Sailing a long Courſe from hence, between the Weſt and North-weſt, they came to the Iſle of *Eude*, which yields great Store of Cinnamon. In this Tract of Sea there is a long String of Iſlands lying in Order, behind one another, as far as the *Greater Java*, and the Cape of *Mallaca*, About half a League from this *Greater Java*, lies *Java the Leſs*, which is full as big as the Iſland of *Madeira*. *February* the 11th, ſailing from *Timor*, they got into the great Sea *Lantchidol*, and ſteered away between the Weſt and South-weſt, leaving the North Coaſt on their Right Hand, taking care not to ſail too near the Shore, leſt the *Portugueſe*, who were ſettled at *Malacca*, ſhould chance to diſcover them; and, on this Account, they directed their Courſe without the Iſle of *Sumatra*. And, that they might paſs the Cape of *Good-Hope* more ſecurely, they ſailed about

42 Degrees toward the South Pole, waiting in thoſe Parts ſeven Weeks for the Wind. The Cape of *Good-Hope* they obſerved to be in 34 Degrees 15 Minutes of South Latitude, and 1600 Leagues from the Cape of *Malacca*.

But, having paſt all Dangers of the Cape, being ſmartly pinched with Hunger and Sickneſs, ſome of them were for putting in at *Mozambique* for a little Refreſhment; but the major Part of the Company concluding, that the *Portugueſe*, who were there, would prove but untoward Phyſicians for their Diſtempers, they reſolved to ſail homewards: This they did in a Courſe towards the South-weſt, for the Space of two Months, without touching any where; in which Time they loſt twenty-one Men of their Company, the Remainder being upon the Point of Starving. They came in good Time, under this Neceſſity, to St. *James*, which is one of the *Cape de Verde* Iſlands, and there they were forced to throw themſelves upon the Mercy of the *Portugueſe*; ſo that, venturing aſhore, they opened their miſerable Caſe to the *Portugueſe*; who were ſo generous as to relieve them the firſt, and ſo barbarous to detain them Priſoners the next Time they came for Food. Thoſe in the Ship, finding their Companions, thirteen in Number, ſtopt by the *Portugueſe*, and having no Mind to bear them Company in Priſon, made all the Haſte they poſſibly could away; and, the Wind filling their Sails, they came *September* the 7th into the Haven of St. *Lucar*, near *Seville*.

The Perſon who commanded this Veſſel, which had the good Fortune to return, was one *John Sebaſtian Cano*, a Native of the Town of *Guetaria*, in *Biſcay*, a Man of great Spirit, and equal Fortune, whoſe Succeſs in this Reſpect was very nobly rewarded by the Emperor *Charles* the Vth, who, to perpetuate the Memory of ſo glorious an Exploit, gave him for his Arms the Terreſtial Globe, with this Motto, *Primus me circumdediſti*; that is, *Thou firſt ſurroundedſt me*. Some Criticks have remarked, that, inſtead of *circumdediſti*, it ſhould have been *circumiviſti*, or *circumnavigaſti*; but this was a Kind of Exactneſs unworthy of ſo great an Emperor. The new-diſcovered Streights were for a while called the *Streights of Victoria*, from the Ship that returned; but they

ſoon

ſoon loſt that Name to aſſume another, which ſeemed much better to become them, I mean that of their Diſcoverer *Magellan*; which they are always like to bear, and thereby perpetuate the Memory of that worthy Man.

This remarkable Voyage took up three Years and thirty-ſeven Days; for they departed *Auguſt* the 10th, 1519, and returned *September* the 6th, 1522. On their Arrival at the *Moluccas*, they found themſelves a Day miſtaken in their Reckoning, which was not owing to any Negligence in them, but to the Courſe they ſailed; for it is now a Truth, juſtified by Practice, as well as agreeable to the Principles of Geography and Navigation, that ſuch as ſail Eaſt, till they come back to the Place they left, have ſeen the Sun riſe, paſs the Meridian, and ſet, once more than their Countrymen they left behind them; and conſequently gain a Day; and that, in like Manner, ſuch as ſail Weſtward round the Globe, loſe a Day. *Magellan*'s Crew knew not how to account for it; and yet modern Geographers explain it very naturally, and very preciſely: For this intirely depends upon the diurnal Circumvolution of the Sun, which may begin at any meridian Circle, and ſo go round till it comes back to the ſame Meridian. This being once conceived, the Whole becomes immediately plain; ſince ſuch as ſail Eaſtward, advance to a Meridian which the Sun reaches ſooner than he did that they left, and therefore they begin to count their Day ſo much the ſooner: For Example, if they ſail fifteen Degrees, they will begin the Day an Hour ſooner, and this Anticipation ſtill encreaſes as they go Eaſtward; and, being once come to the oppoſite Meridian, their Day begins twelve Hours ſooner; and having gone round, they begin the Day twenty-four Hours ſooner than in the Place they came to, where it is Mid-day to both, when the Sun is in the South. And ſo they that go Weſt, will have the Sun later in their Meridian by a whole Hour, if they ſail fifteen Degrees to the Weſt, which poſtpones the Day an Hour for every fifteen Degrees, which comes to twenty-four Hours in ſailing round.

FINIS.

THE

JOURNAL

OF

Sir THOMAS ROE,

AMBASSADOR from his Majesty King *JAMES* the first of *England*,

TO

ICHAN GUIRE, the Mighty Emperor of *India*,

Commonly called the *GREAT MOGUL*.

MARCH the 6th we lost Sight of the *Lizard*, and began our Course for the Cape of *Good-Hope*. The 26th we saw the Coast of *Barbary*; the 27th had Cape *Bojador* E. by S. whence the Current sets swift S. S. W. *April* the 14th we cross'd the Line, *May* the 2d the Tropick of *Capricorn*, and on the 5th of *June* came to an Anchor in the Bay of *Saldanha*, next the Cape of *Good-Hope*. The Land is fruitful, but divided by high inaccessible rocky Mountains

tains covered with Snow, the River *Dulce* falling into the Bay on the East Side. The People are the most barbarous in the World, eating Carrion, wearing the Guts of Sheep about their Necks for Health, and rubbing their Heads, which are curl'd like the Blacks, with the Dung of Beasts and Dirt; and having no Cloaths but Skins wrapped about their Shoulders, the fleshy Side next the Body in Summer, and the Hair in Winter. Their Houses are but a Mat rounded at the Top like an Oven, which they turn as the Wind changes, having no Door to keep it out. They have left off their Custom of Stealing, but know no God or Religion. The Air and Water are very wholesome. Here are Abundance of Cows, Antelopes, Baboons, Pheasants, Partridges, Larks, wild Geese, Ducks, and many other Sorts. On the Isle of *Penguin* is a Sort of Fowl of that Name that goes upright, his Wings without Feathers, hanging down like Sleeves fac'd with white. They do not fly, but only walk in Parcels, keeping regularly their own Quarters; they are a Sort of Mixture of Beast, Bird, and Fish, but most Bird. The Commodities here are Cattle, Nangin Roots, and I believe there is a Rock yielding Quicksilver. The Table Mountain is 11853 Foot high. The Bay is full of Whales and Seals: The Latitude is 33 Degrees 45 Minutes. The 21st we came up with the Cape of *Good-Hope*; *July* the 8th with the Island of *Madagascar*, and the 22d with that of *Molalia*: This is one of the Islands of *Comera*, the other three are *Angaresia*, *Juanny*, and *Mayotta*, lying almost East and West of one another, in the same Meridian with Cape St. *Augustin*. *Angaresia* bears N. by W. from *Molalia*, it is the highest Land I ever saw, inhabited by Moors trading with the Main, and the other three Eastern Islands, with their Cattle and Fruits for Callicoes, and other Clothes to cover them. It is governed by ten petty Kings, and has Plenty enough of Kine, Goats, Cows, Oranges and Lemons. The People are counted false and treacherous. *Juanny* lies East from *Molalia* and *Mayotto*, the Coast between them both. All these three Islands are full of Refreshments, but chiefly *Molalia*, and next to *Juanny*. Here lived an old Woman who was Sultaness of all

all theſe Iſlands. Under her there were three Deputies in *Molalia*, Children of the old Woman. The *Sultan* in whoſe Quarter we anchored, is ſo abſolute, that the People dare not ſell a Coco-Nut without his Leave. Four Boats were ſent to his Town to deſire this Liberty, which was granted; and Captain *Newport* going aſhore with forty Men, found the Governor ſitting on a Mat, under the Side of a Junk that was building, attended by about fifty Men. He had on a Mantle of blue and red Callicoe wrapp'd about him to his Knees, his Legs and Feet bare, on his Head a cloſe Cap of Chequer Work. Being preſented with a Gun and a Sword, he returned four Cows, and proclaimed Liberty for the People to trade. He gave the *Engliſh* Coco-Nuts, and himſelf chew'd Betel, temper'd with Lime of burnt Oyſter-ſhells, and the Kernel of a Nut call'd *Areca*, like an Acorn: It has a biting Taſte, voids Rheum, cools the Head, ſtrengthens the Teeth, and is all their Phyſick. Thoſe that are not us'd to it are giddy with it, and the Spittle is red, which in Time colours the Teeth, and is counted a Beauty. They all uſe this at all Times.

From the Governor's they were conducted to a Carpenter's Houſe, who was a chief Man in the Town; the Houſe was built with Lime and Stone, plaiſter'd with White-lime, low and little, covered with Rafters, and over them Coco-Leaves, the Out-ſides wattled with Canes. They are kept cleanly, and their poor Houſehold Stuff neat, their Gardens incloſed with Canes, containing Tobacco and Plantan Trees. For Dinner a Board was ſet upon Treſſels, covered with a fine new Mat, and Stone Benches about it, on which they ſat. Firſt Water was brought to every Man in a Coco-Shell, and pour'd into a wooden Platter; and inſtead of a Towel, they uſe the Rhinds of Cocos. Then they ſet before them boiled Rice, with roaſted Plantans on it, Quarters of Hens, and Pieces of Goats, broiled. After Grace was ſaid, they fell to their Meat, with Bread made of Cocos beaten and mixed with Honey, and fry'd. Their Drink was *Palmiſo* Wine and Coco Milk. Thoſe that went to ſee the *Sultan*, whoſe Name was *Amor Adell*, found all Things much reſembling what has been ſaid before of the

Governor; but that in his Behaviour he was more light, and made Haſte to be drunk with ſome Wine the *Engliſh* carried. The People are ſtrict *Mahometans*, and very jealous of letting their Women and Moſchs be ſeen; for ſome of the *Engliſh* coming near a Village, they ſhut them up, and threatened to kill them, if they came nearer. Many of them ſpeak and write *Arabick*, and ſome few of them *Portugueſe*, as trading to *Morambique* in Junks of forty Tons Burthen, and built, calk'd and rigg'd, all out of the Coco Tree. Here we bought Oxen and Cows, fat but ſmall, *Arabian* Sheep, Hens, Cocos, Oranges, Lemons, and Limes in abundance, for Callicoes, Hollands, Sword Blades, Pieces of Eight, Glaſſes, Knives, and other Trifles.

Auguſt the ſecond we weighed, and ſtood our Courſe for *Socotora*. The twenty-fourth we came to an Anchor in the Bay called *Delicia*, in *Socotora*, having been before ſeparated in a Storm, and warned by the *Sultan* not to anchor at *Tamara*, which was too much expoſed to the Violence of the Winds. *Socotora* is an Iſland at the Mouth of the Red Sea. The *Sultan* of *Socotora* came down to the Shore with about three hundred Men, having ſet up a Tent near the Bay. He was on Horſeback, as were two of his chief Servants, and another on a Camel, the People running before and behind him ſhouting; and two Guards, one of his Subjects, and the other of twelve hired *Guzarats*, ſome with *Turkiſh* Bows, ſome with Piſtols, ſome with Muſkets, but all with good Swords. He had alſo a few Kettle Drums, and one Trumpet. He received the General in a courteous Manner, and was ſo abſolute, that no Man could ſell any Thing but himſelf. His People ſat about him very reſpectfully; his Cloaths were of *Surat* Stuffs after the *Arabian* Manner, with a Caſſock of red and white wrought Velvet, and another, whereof the Ground was Gold. He had a very good Turbant, but was bare-footed. Every Night they all ſtand or kneel towards the Sun, the *Xerife* throwing Water on their Heads. As for Religion, they are *Mahometans*. The King's Town of *Tamara* is built of Lime and Stone, whited over, with Battlements and Pinnacles, the Houſes being flat at the Top. At a Diſtance it looks well,

but

but within it is poor. Mr. *Boughton*, who had Leave to ſee the King's Houſe, found it ſuch as would ſerve an ordinary Gentleman in *England*. The lower Rooms ſerv'd for Warehouſes and Wardrobe, ſome Changes of Robes hanging about the Walls, and with them about twenty-five Books of their Law, Religion, Hiſtory, and Saints Lives. No Man was permitted to go up Stairs to ſee his Wives, which were there, nor the other Women; but the ordinary Sort might be ſeen in the Town, with their Ears full of Silver Rings. In the Moſque the Prieſt was at Service. Mr. *Boughton* had for his Dinner three Hens with Rice, and for Drink Water and *Cahu*, black Liquor, drank as hot as could be endured. The People are of four Sorts; *Arabs* come in by Conqueſt, who dare not ſpeak in the *Sultan*'s Preſence without Leave, and kiſſing his Hand. The ſecond Sort are Slaves; who, when they come to him, kiſs his Foot, do all his Work, and make his Aloes. The third I ſuppoſe are the old Inhabitants of the Country, called *Bedwins*, tho' not the oldeſt of all, whom I ſuppoſe to be thoſe commonly called *Jacobite Chriſtians*; becauſe Mr. *Boughton* going into a Church of their's, which the *Arabs* had forced them to abandon, found Images in it, and a Crucifix, which he took away; and the *Mahometans* would not ſay much of them, fearing leſt other Chriſtians ſhould relieve or ſupport them. They have had Wars with the *Arabs*, and live retired from them in the Mountains. The fourth Sort are a Savage People, poor, lean, naked, with long Hair, eating nothing but Roots, riding on Buffaloes, converſing with none of the others, and afraid of all, without Houſes, and almoſt as brutal as Beaſts; which, by Conjecture, are the antienteſt Natives of the Place. The Iſland is very mountainous and barren, having ſome Beeves, Goats, and Sheep, a few Dates and Oranges, a little Rice, and nothing elſe of Suſtenance. All its Commodity is Aloes, which is the Juice of a Leaf like our Houſe-Leek. The People make a poor Sort of Cloth for the Slaves. The King had ſome Dragon's Blood, and Indigo of *Lahor*, as alſo Civet Cats and Civet. The Dead are here all buried in Tombs, and the Monuments of their Saints are held in great Veneration. The chief of

theſe is *Seidy Hachim*, buried at *Tamara*, who being kill'd 100 Years before, they ſaid ſtill appeared to them, and warn'd them of Dangers at Hand; and they imputed the high Winds to his Walking, holding him in wonderful Veneration.

The 31ſt we weigh'd, and ſtood our Courſe for *Surat*; where I landed on the 26th of *September*, and was received in an open Tent by the chief Officers of the Town well attended. Much Controverſy was about ſearching my Servants, but at length they paſſed free to the City, where we went in a Houſe provided for us, and there continued till the 30th of *October*, ſuffering much from the Governor, who by Force ſearch'd many Cheſts, and took out what he thought fit. The 30th aforeſaid I departed from *Surat*, and travelled but four Coſſes* to *Cumaria*; the 1ſt of *November* 11 Miles to a Village, the 2d to *Biarat* 21 Miles, where there is a Caſtle, this Town being on the Borders of the Kingdom of *Guzarat*, ſubject to the *Mogul*, and belonging to *Abraham Chan*; the 3d entered the Kingdom of *Pardaſſha*, a Pagan Lord of the Hills, ſubject to no Perſon, and at 15 Miles end lay in the Fields, near a City of Note called *Mugher*; the 4th, 9 Miles rocky Way, lay in the Fields by a Village called *Narampora*; the 5th, 15 Miles in the Fields; the 6th, 20 Miles to *Nunderpar*, a City of the Kingdom of *Brampor*, ſubject to the *Mogul*. Here we had firſt Bread, after coming from *Surat*, becauſe the *Banians* who inhabit all the Country make no Bread, but only Cakes. The Country is plentiful, eſpecially in Cattle, the *Banians* killing none, or ſelling any to be kill'd. One Day I met 10000 Bullocks loaded with Corn, in one Drove, and moſt Days after leſſer Parcels; the 17th, 18 Miles to *Ningul*; the 8th, 15 to *Sinchelly*; the 9th, 15 to *Tolmere*; the 10th, 18 to *Chapre*, where having pitch'd the Tents without the Town, the King's Officers attended me all Night, with thirty Horſe and 20 Foot, for Fear of the Robbers on the Mountains, becauſe I refus'd to remove into the Town; the 11th, 18 Miles; the 13th, 18 Miles; and the 14th, 15 Miles to *Brampore*, which I gueſs to be 223 Miles Eaſt from *Surat*. The Country

* A Coſſe is about a Mile and a Half.

Country is miſerable and barren, the Towns and Villages built with Mud. At *Batharpore*, a Village two Miles ſhort of *Brampore*, I ſaw ſome of their Ordnance, which is moſt too ſhort, and too open in the Bore. The *Cutwall*, an Officer of the King's ſo called, met me well attended with 16 Colours carried before him, and conducted me to the Seraglio, where I was appointed to lodge. He took his Leave at the Gate, which made a handſome Front of Stone, but when in, I had four Chambers allotted me like Ovens, and no bigger, round at the Top, made of Brick in the Side of a Wall, ſo that I lay in my Tent; the *Cutwall* making his Excuſe, that this was the beſt Lodging in the Town, as I found it was; all the Place being only Mud Cottages, except the Prince's Houſe, the Chan's, and ſome few others. I was carried by the *Cutwall* to viſit the Prince, in whoſe outward Court I found about a hundred Gentlemen on Horſeback, waiting to ſalute him at his coming out. He ſat high in a Gallery that went round, with a Canopy over him, and a Carpet before him. An Officer told me, as I approach'd I muſt touch the Ground with my Head bare, which I refus'd, and went on to a Place right under him, rail'd in, with an Aſcent of three Steps, where I made him Reverence, and he bow'd his Body: So I went within, where were all the great Men of the Town with their Hands before them like Slaves. The Place was cover'd over with a rich Canopy, and under Foot all with Carpets: It was like a great Stage, and the Prince ſat at the upper End of it. Having no Place aſſign'd, I ſtood right before him, he refuſing to admit me to come up the Steps, or to allow me a Chair. Having receiv'd my Preſents he offered to go into another Room, where I ſhould be allow'd to ſit; but by the way he made himſelf drunk out of a Caſe of Bottles I gave him, and ſo the Viſit ended.

The 27th of *November* I was carry'd ſick from *Brampore* three *Coſſes* to *Raypora*; the 28th, 15 Coſſes to *Burgome*, and the 30th, 7 Coſſes. *December* the 1ſt, 10 Coſſes to *Bicangome*; the 2d, ſeven Coſſes; the 3d, 5 Coſſes; the 4th, 11 Coſſes, to *Echarpur*, ſtanding on a good River that falls into the Sea near *Baroche*. The 5th paſſed the River call'd *Narbodah*;

Narbodah; the 6th, travel'd eight Coſſes, and lay in a Wood not far from the King's famous Caſtle of *Mandoa*, which ſtands on a ſteep Hill, of a vaſt Extent, including fifteen Coſſes within the Wall. The 7th ten Coſſes, the 8th eight, the 10th twelve, the 11th ſixteen, the 12th fourteen, the 13th ſix, the 14th lay ſtill to reſt, the 15th ſix Coſſes, the 16th ſix, the 17th twelve, the 11th five to *Cytor*. This is an ancient ruin'd City on a Hill, but ſhews the Steps of wonderful Magnificence. There are ſtill ſtanding above a hundred Churches, all of carved Stone, many fair Towers and Lanthorns, many Pillars, and innumerable Houſes, but not on Inhabitant. There is but one ſteep Aſcent cut out of the Rock, and four Gates in the Aſcent before you come to the City Gate, which is magnificent. The Hill is enclos'd at the Top for about eight Coſſes, and at the South-weſt end is a goodly old Caſtle, It is in the Country of *Rama*, a Prince newly ſubdu'd by the *Mogul*, or rather brought to own Subjection. It was brought under by *Ecbar-Sha* Father to *Ichan Guire*. The Indian Prince *Rama* is lineally deſcended from *Porus*, that warlike Indian Monarch overcome by *Alexander* the Great.

The 19th I proceeded on my Journey twelve Coſſes, the 20th ten, the 21ſt ten, the 22d nine, the 23d ten to *Ardſmere*. The firſt ſix Days Journey from *Brampore* towards *Ardſmere*, were Weſt, or North-weſt to compaſs the Hills, but after that due North, ſo that they bear from one another almoſt North by Weſt, and South by Eaſt, the whole Diſtance 209 Coſſes, which I judge to be about 418 Miles *Engliſh*; the Coſſes here being longer than near the Sea.

January the 10th I went to Court at four in the Afternoon to the *Durbar*, where the *Mogul* daily ſits to entertain Strangers, receive Petitions, and give out Orders, and to ſee and be ſeen. And here it will be proper to give ſome Account of his Court. None but Eunuchs come within the King's private Lodgings, and his Women, who guard him with warlike Weapons. Theſe puniſh one another for any Offence committed. The *Mogul* every Morning ſhews himſelf to the common People at a Window that looks into a Plain before his Gate. At Noon he is there again to ſee

Elephants

Elephants and wild Beasts fight, the Men of Rank being under him within a Rail. Hence he retires to sleep among his Women. After Noon he comes to the *Durbar* before mentioned. After Supper at eight of the Clock he comes down to the *Guzelcan*, a fair Court, in the Midst whereof is a Throne of free Stone, on which he sits, or sometimes below in a Chair, where none are admitted but of the first Quality, and few of them without Leave. Here he discourses of indifferent Things very affably. No Business of State is done any where but at one of these two last Places, where it is publickly canvass'd, and so register'd; which Register might be seen for two Shillings, and the common People know as much as the Council; so that every Day the King's Resolutions is the publick News, and exposed to the Censure of every Scoundrel. This Method is never alter'd unless Sickness or Drink obstruct it; and this must be known, for if he be unseen one Day without a Reason assign'd, the People would mutiny; and for two Days no Excuse will serve, but the Doors must be open'd, and some admitted to see him to satisfy others. On *Tuesday* he sits in Judgment at the *Jarucco*, and hears the meanest Persons Complaints, examines both Parties, and often sees Execution done by his Elephants.

Before my Audience I had obtain'd Leave to use the Customs of my Country. At the *Durbar* I was conducted right before him; entering the outward Rail, two noble Slaves met me to conduct me nearer. At the first Rail I made a low Reverence, at the next another, and when under the King a third. The Place is a great Court, to which all Sorts of People resort. The King sits in a little Gallery over Head; Ambassadors, great Men, and Strangers of Quality, within the inmost Rail under him, raised from the Ground, cover'd with Canopies of Velvet and Silk, and good Carpets under Foot. The next Degree, like our Gentry, within the first Rail, the Commonalty without in a Bass Court, yet so that all may see the King. In fine it is rising by Degrees, like a Theatre. My Reception was very favourable, but needs not particularizing.

March

March the 1ſt I rid out to ſee a Houſe of Pleaſure of the King's,, given him by *Aſaph Chan*, and two Miles from *Ardſmere*. It is ſituated between two mighty Rocks, ſo defended from the Sun that it ſcarce any Way ſees it. The Foundation is cut out of the Rock, as are ſome Rooms, the reſt is Free Stone. There is a handſome little Garden, with fine Fountains, and two great Fiſhponds, one 30 Steps above another. The Way to it admits of but one, or at moſt two Men a-breaſt, and that very ſteep and ſtony. It is a Place of melancholy Delight, and Safety, all the Company about it being wild Peacocks, Turtles, Fowl, and Monkeys, that inhabit the Rocks hanging every Way over it.

The 11th of *March* in the Evening began the Feſtival of the *Noroſe*. This is a Cuſtom of ſolemnizing the New Year, but the Ceremony begins the firſt New Moon after it. It is kept in Imitation of the *Perſians* Feaſt, and ſignifies in that Language nine Days, becauſe antiently it laſted no longer; but now it is doubled. The Manner of it is thus: A Throne is erected four Foot from the Ground in the *Durbar* Court; from the Back whereof to the Place where the King comes out, a Square of fifty-ſix Paces in Length, and forty-three in Breadth, was rail'd in, and cover'd with fair *Semians*, or Canopies of Cloth of Gold, Silk, or Velvet, join'd together, and held up with Canes cover'd after the ſame Manner. At the upper End were ſet out the Pictures of the King of *England*, the Queen, the Lady *Elizabeth*, the Counteſſes of *Somerſet* and *Saliſbury*, and of a Citizen's Wife of *London*. Below them another of Sir *Thomas Smith*, Governor of the *Eaſt-India* Company. The Ground is laid with good *Perſian* Carpets very large, into which Place come all the Men of Quality to attend the King, except ſome few that are within a little Rail right before the Throne to receive his Commands. Within this Square there were ſet out for Show many little Houſes, one of them of Silver, and ſome other Curioſities of Value. The Prince Sultan *Corome* had on the left Side a Pavilion, the Supporters whereof were covered with Silver, as were ſome of thoſe alſo near the King's Throne. Te Form of this Throne was ſquare, the Matter Wood inlaid with Mother of Pearl, born up with

with four Pillars, and cover'd with Cloth of Gold. About the Edge over Head, like a Valence, was a net Fringe of good Pearl, from which hung down Pomegranates, Apples, and ſuch Fruit of Gold, but hollow. Within it the King ſat on Cuſhions very rich in Pearls and Jewels. Round about the Court before the Throne, the principal Men had erected Tents, which encompaſſed the Court, and lined them with Velvet, Damaſk, or Taffety for the moſt Part, but ſome few with Cloth of Gold; into which they retired, and ſat to ſhow all their Wealth. For antiently the Kings uſed to go to every Tent, and take thence what they pleaſed; but now it is chang'd, the King ſitting to receive what New Year's Gifts are brought him. He comes abroad at the uſual Hour of the *Durbar*, and retires in the ſame Order. Here great Preſents are offered him by all Sorts, tho' not equal to Report, yet incredible enough: And at the End of this Feaſt, the King in Return for the Preſents receiv'd, advances ſome, and adds to their Entertainment ſome Horſe at his Pleaſure.

The next Day, being the 12th of *March*, I went to viſit the King, and delivered him a Preſent, where I ſaw Abundance of Wealth, but being of all Sorts put together without Order, it did not look ſo regular. The ſame Day the Son of *Rama*, the new Tributary before mentioned, did his Homage, touching the Ground three Times with his Head. The 13th at Night I had Audience at the *Guzelcan*, and preſs'd to have the Peace and Commerce with *England* ſettled after a ſolemn Manner, and all the Articles ſettled, which the *Mogul* ordered ſhould be done. The 15th in the Evening I went again to the *Noroſe*, and according to the *Mogul*'s Order choſe my Place of ſtanding, which was on the right Hand of him on the riſing of the Throne, the Prince and young *Rama* ſtanding on the other Side; ſo I had a full View of what was to be ſeen, Preſents, Elephants, Horſes, and Whores. The 23d the *Mogul* condemn'd one of his own Nation upon Suſpicion of Felony; but being one of the handſomeſt Men in *India*, and the Evidence not very clear againſt him, he would not ſuffer him to be executed, but ſent him to me in Irons for a Slave to diſpoſe of at my

Will. This is look'd upon as a great Favour, for which I return'd Thanks; adding, that in *England* we had no Slaves, nor thought it lawful to make the Image of God equal to a Beaſt, but that I would uſe him as a Servant; and if he behaved himſelf well, give him his Liberty. This the *Mogul* was well pleaſed with. The 26th I went to the *Guzalcan*, and deliver'd the Articles I had drawn up, which were referr'd to *Aſaph Chan*, who a while after ſent to me to remove from the Standing I had taken before the King, becauſe I ſtood alone, and that was not the Cuſtom. I refuſed at firſt, but he inſiſting that I ſhould rank myſelf among the Nobility, I removed to the other Side to the Place where only the Prince and young *Rama* were; which more diſguſted *Aſaph Chan*, who perſuaded the Prince to complain of me, which he did: but the *Mogul* having heard their Complaint, and my Anſwer, that I removed by *Aſaph Chan*'s Order, anſwer'd, I had done well, and they were in the wrong to offer to diſplace me in his Sight. So I kept my Place in quiet.

The Subſtance of the Articles delivered to the Great *Mogul* was, 1. That there be perpetual Peace between the King of *Great Britain* and his *Indian* Majeſty. 2. That the Subjects of *England* have free Trade in all Ports in *India*. 3. That the Governors of all Ports publiſh this Agreement three Times upon the Arrival of any *Engliſh* Ships. 4. That the Merchants or their Servants ſhall not be ſearched or ill uſed. 5. That no Preſents ſent to the *Mogul* ſhall be opened. 6. That the *Engliſh* Goods ſhall not be ſtopped above twenty-four Hours at the Cuſtom-Houſe, only to be there ſeal'd and ſent to the Merchant's Houſe, there to be opened and rated within ſix Days after. 7. That no Governor ſhall take any Goods by Force, but upon Payment of the Owner's Price; nor any taken upon Pretence of the King's Service. 8. That the Merchants ſhall not be hindered ſelling their Goods to whom they pleaſe, or ſending them to other Factories, and this without paying any other Duty than what is paid at the Port. 9. That whatſoever Goods the *Engliſh* buy in any Part of the *Mogul*'s Dominions, they may ſend down to the Ports without paying

ing any Duty more than ſhall be agreed on at the Port at Shipping them, and this without any Hindrance or Moleſtation. 10. That no Goods brought to any Port ſhall be again opened, the *Engliſh* ſhewing a Certificate of their Numbers, Qualities and Conditions, from the Governor or Officers of the Place where they were bought. 11. That no Confiſcation ſhall be made of the Goods or Money of the *Engliſh* dying. 12. That no Cuſtom be demanded for Proviſions during the Stay of *Engliſh* Ships at any Port. 13. That the Merchants Servants, whether *Engliſh* or *Indians*, ſhall not be puniſhed or beaten for doing their Duty. 14. That the *Mogul* will puniſh any Governor, or Officer, for Breach of any of theſe Articles. 15. That the *Engliſh* Ships ſhall ſuffer all others to paſs and repaſs freely to the *Mogul*'s Ports, except their Enemies; and that the *Engliſh* aſhore ſhall behave themſelves civilly as Merchants. 16. That they ſhall yearly furniſh the *Mogul* with all Rarities from *Europe*, and all other ſuch Things as he ſhall deſire at reaſonable Prices. 17. The *Engliſh* to pay the Duty of three and a Half *per* Cent. for Goods reaſonably rated, and two *per* Cent. for Pieces of Eight, and no other Duty elſewhere. 18. That the *Engliſh* ſhall be ready to aſſiſt the *Mogul* againſt all his Enemies. *Laſtly*, That the *Portugueſe* may come into this Peace within ſix Months; or if they refuſe, the *Engliſh* be at Liberty to exerciſe all Hoſtilities againſt them. Theſe were the Articles preſented, but they were delayed and oppoſed, and what was the Concluſion we ſhall ſee hereafter.

The 31ſt of *March* the *Mogul* dined at *Aſaph Chan*'s Houſe, all the Way from the Palace to it, which was an *Engliſh* Mile, being laid under Foot with Silks and Velvets ſewed together, but roll'd up as the King paſs'd. They reported that the Feaſt and Preſent coſt ſix Lecks of Roupies, which is 60000 *l.* Sterling.

June the 18th, the King commanded one of his Brother's Sons, who had been perſuaded to become a Chriſtian, with a Deſign to make him odious to the People, to lay his Hand on the Head of a Lion that was brought before the King, which he refus'd out of Fear; upon which the King bid his

youngeſt Son go touch the Lion, who did ſo without receiving any Hurt; whereat the King took Occaſion to ſend his Nephew away to Priſon, where he is never like to ſee Day-light. The 19th the King removed with the Prince and all the Court to *Havar Gemal.* The 23d the King returned to his own Houſe, and ſat in Publick according to Cuſtom. The 24th Prince *Couron*, whoſe Favour I was labouring to gain, and with whom I had many Conteſts, had a Son born; and he preparing to lead the Army to *Decan*, the Eyes of all Men were fixed upon him; ſome flattering, others envying him, and others to make their Advantage, but none loving him. He received twenty Lecks of Roupies towards his Charge, which amounts to 200000 Pound Sterling, and began to beſtow his Money bountifully. Yet notwithſtanding this Show of his Father's Affection and Greatneſs, a *Chan* told the King that the Expedition would prove dangerous in Reſpect of Prince *Pervis*, whoſe Honour was ſo deeply concerned that he would not go unrevenged. The King anſwer'd, Let them fight, and he that proves himſelf the better Commander ſhall purſue the War. The 25th I had Audience of the King, being ſent for by *Aſaph Chan*, and was received with the uſual Courteſy by his Majeſty. This *Aſaph Chan* was the Prince's Favourite, therefore I was unwilling to diſoblige him, tho' he had given ſeveral Provocations. And at this Time *Mocreb Chan*, another great Man, made me Offers of his Service, being of a contrary Faction to the other; but I thought beſt to make Friends of them both. *Mocreb* told me, among other Things, that the *Engliſh* brought too much Cloth and bad Swords, and ſcarce any Thing elſe, and therefore adviſed to forbear two or three Years, and rather bring ſuch Rarities as *China* and *Japan* afforded, which would be more acceptable, and from *England* the beſt Cloth of Gold, and the richeſt Silks wrought with Gold and Silver, but above all a good Quantity of *Arras* Hangings. The 30th I viſited *Abdalla Naſſan*, having need of his Friendſhip; and what is rare in this Country, he received no Preſents. He has the Command of all Soldiers entertained at Court, and is Treaſurer to all the Armies. He entertain'd me with much Civility,

and

we ſat to ſee his Soldiers ſhoot with Bows and Guns. Moſt of them with a ſingle Bullet hit the Mark, being about a Hand's Breadth in the Butt.

July paſſed away in ſolliciting the Prince to ſign and ſeal the Articles I had preſented to the King, of which an Abſtract was given before. On the 13th at Night I went to the *Durbar* to viſit the King, who ſent *Aſaph Chan* to tell me he was informed I had an excellent Painter at my Houſe, which I told him was only a young Man that drew upon Paper, and that very indifferently; however I promiſed to bring him to his Majeſty, who at this Time uſed ſo many Expreſſions of Kindneſs to me, that all Men were amazed at it, and proffered me any Thing I would ask for in his Kingdom. I went from him to *Aſaph Chan*'s Houſe, where I continued till the King came out again; when I was conducted to him, carrying with me Mr. *Hughs* the ſuppoſed Painter, with whom the King had ſome Diſcourſe. After this I preſented the King with a curious Picture I had of a Friend of mine, which pleaſed him highly, and he ſhowed it to all the Company. The King's chief Painter being ſent for, pretended he could make as good; which I denying, a Wager of a Horſe was laid about it between me and *Aſaph Chan*, in the *Mogul's* Preſence, and to pleaſe him; but *Aſaph Chan* afterwards fell off. This done the *Mogul* fell to drinking of *Alicant* Wine I had preſented him, giving Taſtes of it to ſeveral about him, and then ſent for a full Bottle, and drinking a Cup ſent it to me, ſaying, It began to ſour ſo faſt it would be ſpoiled before he could drink it, and I had none. This done he turn'd to ſleep, the Candles were put out, and I grop'd my Way out in the dark. This Day a Gentlewoman of *Normals*, the King's favourite Queen, was taken in the King's Houſe in ſome Action with an Eunuch. Another *Capon* that loved her killed him. The poor Woman was ſet up to the Arm-pits in the Earth cloſe rammed about her, with her Feet tied to a Stake, ſo to continue three Days and two Nights without any Suſtenance, her Head and Arms bare expoſed to the violent Heat of the Sun. If ſhe died not in that Time, ſhe was to be pardoned. The Eunuch was condemned to the Elephants. This Damſel

ſel was found worth in Pearls, Jewels, and ready Money, 160000 Roupies.

Nothing remarkable happened till *Auguſt* the 6th, I was ſent for to the *Durbar*, where I had much Talk with the King, who aſked me many Queſtions to ſatisfy his Curioſity, and bid me come to the *Guzelcan* at Night, and I ſhould ſee my Picture ſo exactly copied, that I ſhould not know the one from the other. I came at Night and he ſhowed me ſix Pictures, five of them painted by his own Painter, all paſted upon a Board, and ſo like that by Candle-light I could ſcarce know one from another. Neither did I at firſt Sight know my own, at which the *Mogul* was much pleaſed; but looking cloſer upon it I ſhowed it, and the Difference between it and the others. The *Mogul* was overjoyed, and I ſurprized at their Art, not thinking they could hav performed ſo well; and the King after many Civilities promiſed me his own Picture.

The 9th a hundred Thieves were brought chain'd before the *Mogul* with their Accuſation: Without further Ceremony, as in all ſuch Caſes is the Cuſtom, he ordered them to be carried away, the Chief of them to be be torn in Pieces by Dogs, and the reſt put to Death: This was all the Proceſs and Form. The Priſoners were divided into ſeveral Quarters of the Town, and executed in the Streets, as in one by my Houſe, where twelve Dogs tore the Chief of them in Pieces, and thirteen of his Fellows having their Hands tied down to their Feet, had their Necks cut with a Sword, but not quite off, being ſo left naked, bloody, and ſtinking to the View of all Men, and Annoyance of the Neighbourhood. The 10th, 11th, and 12th, I ſpent in giving the King and Prince Advice that a *Dutch* Ship lay before *Surat*, and would not declare upon what Deſign it came, till a Fleet arrived; which was expected with the firſt fit Seaſon. This I improved to fill their Heads with Jealouſies of the Deſigns of the *Dutch*, and the Dangers that might enſue from them, which was well taken; and being demanded, I gave my Advice to prevent coming to a Rupture with them, and yet exclude them the Trade of *India*. The laſt of theſe Days I went to viſit *Gemaldin-Uſſin*, Viceroy of *Patan*, and ſeventy

ſeventy Years of Age. He received me with extaaordinary Courteſy, offering me a Leck of Roupies, or all his Intereſt at Court; informing me of all the Cuſtoms of the Country, and ſhewing me a Book he had compoſed of all memorable Things that had happened under three Kings, whom he had ſerved; and offering me a Copy, if I could get it tranſlated. It alſo treated of the King's Revenue, and the Manner of raiſing it. He ſhow'd me that the Government of every Province did pay a yearly Rent; and for Inſtance, he for his Government of *Patan* gave the King eleven Lecks * of *Roupies*; the Roupie is two Shillings and two Pence. All other Profits were the Governor's, and he had Regal Authority to take what he pleaſed; which in his Viceroyſhip of *Patan* was valued at 5000 Horſe; the Pay of each at 200 Roupies a Year, whereof he kept 1500, and was allowed the Surplus as dead Pay. Beſides this the King gave him a Penſion of a thouſand Roupies a Day, and ſome ſmaller Governments; yet he aſſured me there were ſeveral that had double his Allowance, and above twenty equal to him. He praiſed the good Prophet *Jeſus*, and his Laws, and we had much pleaſant and profitable Diſcourſe. Some Days had paſſed after this Viſit, and I thought his Kindneſs had been at an End, when he borrow'd the King's Pleaſure Houſe and Garden, called *Havar Gemal*, a Mile out of the Town, to treat me in, and invited me over Night. At Midnight he went himſelf, and carried his Tents and all his Furniture, and fitted up a Place by the Pond-ſide very handſomely. I went in the Morning, he met me with much Civility, and carried me into his Room prepared for me, where he had ſome Company, and a hundred Servants attending two of his Sons, he having thirty. He ſhewed me the King's Cloſets, and retiring Rooms, which were painted *a l' Antique*, and in ſome Panes the Pictures of the King of *France*, and other Chriſtian Princes. He told me he was a poor Man, Slave to the King; that he was willing to give me ſome Content, and had therefore brought me to a ſlight Banquet to eat Bread and Salt together to ſeal a Friendſhip, which he deſired me to accept; that others might treat me better, but were not ſo ſincere, but would deceive me, and my

* One Leck of *Roupies* is above ten thouſand Pounds Sterling.

my Interpreters would never deliver the Truth, but what thoſe Men pleaſed; and therefore I ſhould never do my Buſineſs to any Purpoſe, till I had an *Engliſhman* that could ſpeak the *Perſian* Tongue, and declare my Mind freely, which the King would grant, if I could find one, becauſe he had conceived a good Opinion of me: And the laſt Night the Jewels of *Sheck Ferid* being brought before him, he remember'd me of himſelf; and finding among them his own Picture well done, he had delivered it to *Aſaph Chan* to ſend it to me to wear for his Sake, with many Expreſſions of his Favour, which would make all the Great Men reſpect me. By this Time Dinner came in, and we all ſat down on Carpets; a Cloth being laid, and Variety of Diſhes ſet before us, as was a little on one Side for the Gentlemen that accompanied him, to whom he went to eat, they looking on it as a Sort of defiling to mix with us. Hereupon I told him he had promiſed we ſhould eat Bread and Salt together, and that I had little Appetite without his Company. He roſe preſently and ſat by me, and we fell heartily to our Meal; there being Diſhes of ſeveral Sorts, as Almonds, Raiſins, Piſtachoes, and Fruit. After Dinner he played at Cheſs, and I walk'd; and after ſome Time I offer'd to take my Leave. But he ſaid he had deſired me to come to eat, and what we had before was but a Collation, and therefore I muſt not depart till we had ſupp'd, which I readily conſented to. About an Hour after, the Ambaſſador of one of the *Decan* Kings came to viſit him, whom he preſented to me, uſing him with much Civility, but much below the Reſpect he ſhewed to me. He aſked me whether his Majeſty, my Maſter, would not take in Scorn the Offer of Service from ſo poor a Man, and would vouchſafe to accept of a Preſent from a Stranger; for he would ſend a Gentleman with me to kiſs his Majeſty's Hands, and to ſee our Country. I returned a civil Anſwer; and he went preſently, and aſked one if he would undertake the Voyage. The Gentleman ſeemed willing, and he preſented him to me, ſaying he would provide ſome Trifles, ſuch as the Country afforded for his Majeſty, and ſend him in my Company. This to me ſeemed by the Manner to be in earneſt. At laſt Sup-

per

per came; two Cloths being ſpread, as in the Morning, and before me and my Chaplain were ſet ſeveral Diſhes of Sallads, and Meat roaſted, fry'd, boil'd, and Variety of Rice. He deſired to be excuſed himſelf, becauſe it was their Cuſtom to eat among themſelves, and his Countrymen would take it ill if he did not eat with them. So he and his Gueſts, and I and my Company made much of our ſelves. The Meat was not amiſs, but the Attendants and Order much better; his Servants being very diligent and reſpectful. He gave me for a Preſent, as is the Manner when any one is invited, five Caſes of Sugar-candy dreſſed with Muſk, and one Loaf of the fineſt Sugar as white as Snow about fifty Pounds weight, deſiring me to accept of a hundred ſuch Loaves againſt I went away; which, ſaid he, you refuſe of me thinking I am poor, but it coſts me Nothing, it is made in my Government, and comes *gratis*. I offer'd to accept when I was going, but he preſſed to take it now for fear he ſhould be then unprovided. Thus calling himſelf my Father, and I my ſelf his Son, we took leave of one another.

The 17th I went to viſit the King, who as ſoon as I came in called to his Women, and reached out his own Picture ſet in Gold, hanging at a gold wire Chain, with one Pendant of foul Pearl, which he delivered to *Aſaph Chan*, warning him not to demand any Reverence of me, but what I was willing to make; it being the Cuſtom, whenſoever he beſtows any Thing, for the Receiver to kneel down, and put his Head to the Ground, which has been required of the Ambaſſadors of *Perſia*. *Aſaph Chan* came to me, and I offered to take it in my Hand; but he made Signs to take off my Hat, and then he put it about my Neck, leading me right before the King. I underſtood not his Meaning, but feared he would require the Cuſtom of the Country mentioned above, which they call *Size-Da*; and was reſolved rather to return my Preſent than ſubmit to it. He made Signs to me to give the King Thanks, which I did after my own Manner; whereupon ſome Officers called to me to make the *Size-Da*, But the King in the *Perſian* Tongue ſaid, No, No. So I returned to my Place: But

that you may judge of the King's Liberality, this Gift was not worth in all 30 *l.* yet was it five Times as good as any he gives in that Sort, and look'd upon as a ſpecial Favour. For all the great Men that wear the King's Image, which none may do but thoſe to whom it is given, receive only a Medal of Gold, as big as a Sixpence, with a little Chain of four Inches to faſten it on their Heads, and this at their own Charge; ſome ſet it with Stones, or adorn it with Pendants of Pearls.

The 19th *Gemaldin Uſſin*, who I ſaid before invited me to *Havar Gemal*, being newly made Governor of *Syndu*, came to dine with me, with two of his Sons, two other Gentlemen, and about a Hundred Servants. He eat ſome of the Banquet provided in my Houſe by a *Mooriſh* Cook, but would not touch ſuch Meat as I had dreſs'd after my own Faſhion, tho' his Appetite was very good; but he refrain'd out of a Sort of Superſtition. Yet he deſired that four or five Diſhes might be ſent to his Houſe, ſuch as he would chuſe, being all bak'd Meats, which he had never ſeen before, and ſaid he would dine on them in private; which was accordingly done. He offered me the Town of *Syndu*, and all other Courteſies in his Power; made all Haſte to fill his Belly, and I gave him a ſmall Preſent according to the Cuſtom of the Country.

The 20th and the Night before it, there fell a Storm of Rain, which they call the Elephant, and is uſual at the End of the rainy Seaſon; but this was extraordinary, for there ran ſuch Streams into the Pond, that tho' it is incloſed with Stone, very ſtrong in Appearance, yet the Water was ſo fierce that it broke through in one Place, which cauſed a ſudden Fear and Conſternation, leſt it ſhould drown that Part of the Town where I dwelt: Inſomuch that the Prince and all his Women forſook their Houſe; my next Neighbour carried away his Wife and Goods on his Elephants and Camels to fly to the Hills Side. All Men had their Horſes ready at their Doors to ſave their Lives; ſo that we were much frighted, and ſat up till Midnight, becauſe we had no Help but to fly ourſelves, and loſe all our Goods; for it was reported that it would run three Foot higher than the

the Top of my Houſe, and carry all away, being poor mud Buildings: Fourteen Years before having ſhewed the diſmal Experience, the Bottom of the Pond being level with our Dwelling, and the Water extraordinary great and deep, ſo that the Top was much higher than my Houſe, which ſtood in the Bottom in the Courſe of the Water; every ordinary Rain making ſuch a Current at my Door, that it runs not ſwifter through the Arches of *London* Bridge, and is for ſome Hours impaſſable for Man or Horſe. The King in the Night cauſed a Sluice to be opened to diſcharge the Water another Way, yet the very Rain had waſh'd away a great Part of the Walls of my Houſe, and ſo weakened it all, breaking in at ſeveral Places, that I feared the Fall more than the Flood. Thus were we every where afflicted; Fires, Smokes, Floods, Storms, Heat, Duſt, Flies, and no temperate Weather or ſafe Seaſon. The 27th I received Advice from *Surat*, that the *Dutch* had obtained Leave to land their Goods there in a Warehouſe, and trade till the Prince's Pleaſure was known, upon Condition they ſhould depart upon the firſt Warning.

The 29th the King went to *Havar Gemal*, and ſo a Hunting. It was reſolved to remove to *Mandoa*, a Caſtle near *Brampore*, where there is no Town; that the King having ſent away his Son Sultan *Pervis* to *Bengala*, might be near at Hand to countenance his Son Sultan *Coron*, who he deſigned ſhould command in *Decan*, contrary to the Inclination of all the great Men. The 30th the King returning from Hunting ſent me a wild Boar ſo large that he deſired the Tuſks might be ſent him back for their extraordinary Size, ſending Word he had killed it with his own Hand, and bidding me eat it merrily.

The 2d of *September* was the King's Birth-day, and kept with great Solemnity. On this Day the King is weighed againſt ſome Jewels, Gold, Silver, Stuffs of Gold, Silver, and Silk, Butter, Rice, Fruit, and many other Things, of every Sort a little, which is all given to the *Bramas* or *Bramans*. The King commanded *Aſaph Chan* to ſend for me to this Solemnity; who appointed me to come to the Place where the King ſits at *Durbar*, and I ſhould be ſent for in;

but the Meſſenger miſtaking, I went not till *Durbar* Time, and ſo miſs'd the Sight; but being there before the King came out, as ſoon as he ſpied me, he ſent to know the Reaſon why I came not in, ſince he had ordered it. I anſwered according to the Miſtake, yet he was very angry, and chid *Aſaph Chan* publickly. He was ſo rich in Jewels, that I own in my Life I never ſaw ſuch ineſtimable Wealth together. The Time was ſpent in bringing his greateſt Elephants before him; ſome of which being Lord Elephants, had their Chains, Bells, and Furniture of Gold and Silver, with many gilt Banners and Flags carried about them, and eight or ten Elephants waiting upon each of them, cloathed in Gold, Silk, and Silver. In this Manner about twelve Companies paſſed by, moſt richly adorned, the firſt having all the Plates in his Head and Breaſt ſet with Rubies and Emeralds, being a Beaſt of wonderful Bulk and Beauty. They all bowed down before the King, making their Reverence very handſomely; this was the fineſt Show of Beaſts I ever ſaw. The Keepers of every chief Elephant gave a Preſent. Then having made me ſome favourable Compliments, he roſe up and went in. At Night about ten of the Clock he ſent for me; I was then in Bed. The Meſſage was, that he heard I had a Picture which I had not ſhow'd him, deſiring me to come to him and bring it; and if I would not give it him, he would order Copies of it to be taken for his Women. I got up and carried it with me. When I came in, I found him ſitting croſs-leg'd on a little Throne, all covered with Diamonds, Pearls and Rubies. Before him a Table of Gold, and on it about fifty Pieces of Gold Plate, all ſet with Jewels, ſome very great and extremely rich, ſome of them of leſs Value, but all of them almoſt covered with ſmall Stones. His Nobility about him in their beſt Equipage, whom he commanded to drink merrily, ſeveral Sorts of Wine ſtanding by in great Flaggons. When I drew near, he aſk'd for the Picture, I ſhow'd him two; he ſeem'd aſtoniſh'd at one of them, and aſk'd whoſe it was. I told him a Friend of mine that was dead. He aſk'd if I would give it him. I anſwer'd I valued it above all Things, but if his Majeſty would pardon me, and accept

of

of the other, which was an excellent Piece, I would willingly beſtow it on his Majeſty. He thank'd me, and ſaid he deſired none but that Picture, and if I would give it him, he ſhould prize it above the richeſt Jewel in his Houſe. I replied, I was not ſo fond of any Thing, but I would part with it to pleaſe his Majeſty, with other Expreſſions of Reſpect. He bow'd to me, and ſaid it was enough I had given it him; that he own'd he had never ſeen ſo much Art, ſo much Beauty, and conjur'd me to tell him truly, whether ever ſuch a Woman lived. I aſſured him there did, but ſhe was now dead. He ſaid he would ſhow it his Women, and take five Copies, and if I knew my own I ſhould have it again. Other Complements paſſed, but he would reſtore it, his Painters being excellent at Copying in Water Colours. The other Picture being in Oil, he did not like. Then he ſent me Word it was his Birth-day, and all Men made merry, and aſk'd whether I would drink with them. I anſwer'd, I would do whatſoever his Majeſty commanded, and wiſh'd him many happy Days, and that the Ceremony might be renew'd a hundred Years. He aſk'd me whether I would drink Wine of the Grape, or made, whether ſtrong or ſmall. I replied, what he commanded, but hoped it would not be too much, nor too ſtrong. Then he call'd for a Gold Cup full of mix'd Wine, half of the Grape, and half Artificial, and drank; cauſing it to be fill'd again, and then ſent it by one of the Nobles to me with this Meſſage, *That I ſhould drink it off twice, thrice, four, or five Times for his Sake, and accept of the Cup and Appurtenances as a Preſent.* I drank a little, but it was ſtronger than any I ever taſt d; inſomuch that it made me Sneeze, and made him laugh; and he call'd for Raiſins, Almonds, and ſlic'd Lemons, which were brought me on a Gold Plate, bidding me eat and drink what I would and no more. I made Reverence for my Preſent after my own Manner, tho' *Aſaph Chan* would have had me kneel, and knock my Head againſt the Ground; but his Majeſty accepted of what I did. The Cup was of Gold, ſet all about with ſmall Rubies and *Turky* Stones, the Cover with large Rubies, Emeralds, and *Turky* Stones in curious Works, and a Diſh ſuitable to ſet the

Cup

Cup on. The Value I know not, becauſe the Stones are moſt of them ſmall, and the greater, which are many, not all clean, but they are in Number about two thouſand, and the Gold about twenty Ounces. Thus he made merry, and ſent me Word, that he eſteemed me more than ever he had done, and aſk'd whether I was merry at eating the wild Boar ſent me a few Days before; how I dreſs'd it, what I drank, aſſuring me I ſhould want for nothing in his Country: The Effects of all which his publick Favours I preſently found in the Behaviour of all his Nobility. Then he threw about to thoſe that ſtood below two Chargers of new Roupies, and amongſt us two Chargers of hollow Almonds of Gold and Silver mixed; but I would not ſcramble, as his great Men did, for I ſaw his Son take up none. Then he gave Saſhes of Gold, and Girdles to all the Muſicians and Waiters, and many others. So drinking, and commanding others to do the ſame, his Majeſty and all his Lords became the fineſt Men I ever ſaw, of a thouſand ſeveral Humours. But his Son, *Aſaph Chan*, two old Men, and myſelf forbore. When he could hold up his Head no longer, he lay down to ſleep, and we all departed.

Seven Months were now ſpent in ſolliciting the Signing and Sealing of the Articles of Peace and Commerce ſet down above, and nothing obtain'd but Promiſes from Week to Week, and from Day to Day; and therefore on the third of *September*, the *Engliſh* Fleet being hourly expected at *Surat*, I went to the Prince, and delivered him a Memorial, containing the Articles I deſired him to give an Order to be obſerved for the unloading of the Ships. The Articles were,

I. That the Preſents coming for the King and Prince ſhould not be opened at the Port, but ſent up to Court ſealed by the Cuſtom Houſe Officers.

II. That Curioſities ſent for other Preſents, and for the Merchants to ſell, ſhould alſo be ſent up to Court ſeal'd for the Prince to take the firſt choice.

III. That the groſs Merchandize be landed, reaſonably rated for the Cuſtom, and not detain'd in the Cuſtom-Houſe; but that the Merchants paying the Cuſtom, have full

full Liberty to ſell or diſpoſe of it; and that the Ships be ſupplied with Proviſions without paying Cuſtom.

On the 4th, *Aſaph Chan* ſent me back my firſt Articles, after ſo long Attendance and ſo many falſe Promiſes, ſome of them altered, others ſtruck out, and an Anſwer that there was no Articling at all, but it was enough to have an Order from the Prince, who was Lord of *Surat*, to trade there: But for *Bengala* or *Syndu*, it ſhould never be granted. Notwithſtanding all this Vexation, I durſt not change my Method of proceeding, or wholly quit the Prince and *Aſaph Chan:* Therefore I drew up other Articles, leaving out what was diſpleaſing in the former, and deſiring *Aſaph Chan* to put them in Form and procure the Seal, or elſe to give me Leave to apply myſelf to the King, to receive his Denial, and depart the Country. The Subſtance of the new Articles was as follows: That all the Subjects of the *Mogul* ſhould receive the *Engliſh* in a friendly Manner; to ſuffer them to land their Goods peaceably; to furniſh them with Proviſions for their Money, without paying any Cuſtoms for them; to have Liberty, after paying Cuſtom for their Goods, to ſell them to any Perſon, and none to oblige them to ſell any under Rate; to have Liberty to paſs with ſuch Goods to any Parts, without any Thing being exacted further of them more than at the Port; to have the Preſents for the *Mogul* and Prince ſealed without opening, and ſent to the Ambaſſador; to have the Goods of any that die ſecured from Confiſcation, and delivered to the other *Engliſh* Factors; and in ſhort, that no Injury of any Sort be offer'd to any of them.

The 8th of this Month *Aſaph Chan* ſent me Word in plain Terms, he would procure nothing for me ſealed; but I might be ſatisfied with an Order from the Prince: Which made me reſolve to apply myſelf directly to the Prince, and apply no more to *Aſaph Chan.* Accordingly I was with the Prince the 10th, and the 11th he ſent me an Order, but ſo altered from what I had given in, that I ſent it back. But at Night I received a new Order from the Secretary, containing all my Articles; tho' ſome Words were ſomewhat ambiguous, which the Secretary interpreted favourably,

bly, and at my Requeſt writ to the Governor of *Surat*, explaining them to him, as he had done to me. He gave me many Aſſurances of the Prince's Favour; and being a Man not ſubject to Bribery, I gave the more Credit to him. So I accepted of the Order, which when tranſlated, I found very effectual.

Several Days paſſed in ſolliciting the King and great Ones, and paying Court to them, without any Thing remarkable; till on the 9th of *October* I received Letters from *Surat* with an Account that four *Engliſh* Ships were arrived there. *Abdala Chan*, the great Governor of *Amadabat*, being ſent for to Court in Diſgrace, for many Inſolencies and Contempts of the King's Authority: It was at firſt thought he would ſtand on his Guard, and refuſe to appear; but the Prince Sultan *Corone*, whoſe Ambition laid hold of every Advantage, deſiring to oblige ſo great a Man, as being one of the chief Commanders in *India*, prevailed with him on his Word to ſubmit. So he came ſixty Miles on Foot in Pilgrims Cloaths with forty Servants, counterfeiting great Humility, and performed the reſt of the Journey in his Palankine, till he came near the Court; but he had 2000 Horſe one Days Journey behind him. On the 10th of *October* he was brought to the *Jarruco* (the Place where the King ſits in publick to ſee Sports, and hear Complaints) with Chains at his Heels, and barefoot, led between two Noblemen. He pull'd his Turbant over his Eyes, that he might ſee no Man, before he had the Happineſs to behold the King's Face. After Reverence made, and ſome few Queſtions, the King forgave him, caus'd his Irons to be knock'd off, and him to be cloathed with a new Veſt of Cloth of Gold, with a Turbant and Girdle ſuitable.

The 13th of this Month *October*, the King returning from Hunting, ſent me a wild Pig. I received Advice that the four *Engliſh* Ships before mentioned were ſafe in the Port of *Soali*. There came ſix out of *England*, but they loſt Company of one in bad Weather, and another was ſent to *Bantam*. By the Way they had fought a *Portugueſe* Galleon bound for *Goa*, which burnt itſelf. Upon this News, on the 14th I ſent for a *Portugueſe* Jeſuit reſiding at the Court, and

and gave him an Account of it, offering a Peace upon equal Terms, which he promiſed to acquaint the Viceroy of *Goa* with. Then I viſited the Prince, and propoſing to him that we might have a Port and Place to fortify, and we would defend his Ships againſt the *Portugueſe*, he rejected it with Scorn. In the Evening I waited on the King with the ſame Account of our Ships Arrival, and he preſently aſk'd me what Preſents came for him, which I could not give him an Account of. He ordered I ſhould have ſuch Things as I required ſent up to Court ſealed, without ſearching or paying any Cuſtom. The 16th, being with the Prince's Secretary about the Diſpatch of our Affairs, he moved me by his Highneſs's Order to procure him two Gunners out of our Fleet to ſerve him in the *Decan* Wars for good Pay; which I undertook to perform, knowing that indifferent Artiſts would ſerve there. This Day *Abdala Chan* came to viſit the Prince, ſo greatly attended that I have not ſeen the like: His Drums and Muſick on Horſeback, being about twenty, made Noiſe enough; then followed fifty Perſons carrying white Flags before him, and two hundred Soldiers well mounted in Coats of Cloth of Gold, Velvet and rich Silks, who entered the Gate with him in Order: Next his Perſon were forty Targetiers in ſuch like Liveries. He made humble Reverence, and preſented a black *Arabian*, with his Furniture ſtudded with Flowers of Gold, enamelled and ſet with ſmall Stones. The Prince, according to Cuſtom, returned a Turbant, a Veſt, and a Girdle.

The 19th the *Perſian* Ambaſſador, *Mahomet Raza Beg*, made his Entry into the Town about Noon, with a great Train, partly ſent out by the King, to meet him with one hundred Elephants, and Muſick, though no Man of greater Quality than the ordinary Receiver of Strangers. The Ambaſſador's own Retinue were about fifty Horſe well equipped, and in Coats of Cloth of Gold, their Bows, Quivers, and Targets, richly garniſhed, forty Shot, and about two hundred common Foot, and Attendants on the Baggage. He was carried to reſt in a Room within the King's outward Court till Evening, when he came to the *Durbar*,

before the King. I ſent my Secretary to obſerve the Faſhion of this Ceremony. When he approached, he made at the firſt Rail three *Teſelins*, and one *Sizeda*, which is proſtrating himſelf and knocking his Head againſt the Ground; he did ſo again within, and ſo preſented *Sha Abas*'s Letter, which the King took with a little Motion of his Body, only aſking, How does my Brother? without mentioning the Title of Majeſty. After ſome few Words, he was placed in the ſeventh Rank againſt the Rail by the Door, below ſo many of the King's Servants on both Sides, which in my Opinion was a very mean Place for his Maſter's Ambaſſador; but he well deſerved it, for doing that Reverence which his Predeceſſors refuſed, to the Diſhonour of his Prince, and the Regret of many of his Nation. It is ſaid he had Order from the *Sophy* to give Content, and it is therefore ſuppoſed his Meſſage is for ſome Supply of Money againſt the *Turk*, which has often been liberally granted; though at the ſame Time it is pretended he comes only to meditate a Peace for the *Decans*, whom *Sha Abas* pretends to protect, being jealous of the Increaſe of this Empire. The King, according to Cuſtom, gave him a handſome Turbant, a Veſt of Cloth of Gold, and a Girdle, for which again he made three *Teſelins*, and one *Sizeda*, or Inclination down to the Ground. He brought for Preſents three Times nine *Arabian* and *Perſian* Horſes, this being a ceremonious Number among them; nine Mules, very fair and large, ſeven Camels laden with Velvet, two Suits of *European* Hangings, which I ſuppoſe were not *Arras*, but *Venetian* Velvet wrought with Gold; two Cheſts of *Perſian* Hangings, one rich Cabinet, forty Muſkets, five Clocks, one Camel laden with *Perſian* Cloth of Gold, eight Carpets of Silk, two Rubies Ballaces, twenty-one Camel Loads of Wine of the Grape, fourteen Camels of diſtilled ſweet Waters, ſeven of Roſe-Water, ſeven Daggers ſet with precious Stones, five Swords ſet after the ſame Manner, ſeven *Venetian* Looking-Glaſſes; and theſe ſo fair and rich, that I was out of Countenance when I heard it. Theſe Preſents were not delivered now, but only a Note of them. His own Equipage was rich, having nine led Horſes ſtrapped in Gold

Gold and Silver. About his Turbant was wound a String of Pearls, Rubies, and *Turky* Stones, and three Pipes of Gold anſwering to three Feathers. I cauſed his Reception to be diligently obſerved, and found he was not favoured above me in any Point, but much leſs in many Particulars, being placed much inferior than I, and only exceeding in being met out of Town, which by Reaſon of my Sickneſs was not demanded; nor did the King receive *Sha Abas*'s Letter with ſuch Reſpect as he did my Maſter's, whom he called the King of *England* his Brother, and the *Perſian* barely Brother, without any Addition; which was an Obſervation of the Jeſuit, who underſtood the Language.

The 20th of *October* I received the Prince's Letter to ſend for *Surat*, with Orders to the Governor of that Place to ſit with the Judge of the Cuſtom-Houſe, and take Care that no Wrong was done the *Engliſh*. But as to the Matter of ſending up the Preſents to me ſealed and unſearched, 'twas ſo unintelligible that it was ſubject to various Conſtructions, which I judged to be done deſignedly, that they might be ſent to him to be his own Carver. This made me ſend it back to his Secretary; and it being returned more intricate than at firſt, I went to the Prince on the 21ſt, and deſired him to have that Part better explained. He aſk'd me how he ſhould have his Preſents, or ſuch other Curioſities as came up, and moved me to go with him where they were. I anſwered, I could not do it till I had delivered my Meſſage and Tokens to the King, but would then attend his Highneſs with his Preſents, and all Rarities that came to my Hands ſhould be ſent after him. He preſs'd me to give my Word for the Performance, and ſo I obtain'd an Order to my Mind. His Highneſs looking on a white Feather in my Hat, aſk'd if I would give it him. I replied, I would not offer that I had worn, but if he pleaſed to command it, that or any Thing in my Power was at his Service; and I took his Acceptance as a great Honour. He aſk'd whether I had any more; I ſaid, three or four of other Colours; and he aſk'd again, whether I would give them all, becauſe he was to ſhow his Horſes and Servants to the King within two Days, and wanted ſome, they being

very rare in thoſe Parts. I promiſed to bring them all on the Morrow, that his Highneſs might take what he pleaſed.

Abdala Chan, in a gallant Equipage both as to his Perſon and Retinue, though the Apparel was ſtrange and antick, but Soldier-like in thoſe Parts, preſented the Prince a white Horſe, the Saddle and Furniture of Gold enamel'd, the Beaſt of delicate Shape, mettleſome, and bold. The Prince returned a plain Sword with a Leather Belt. Many others were brought before him with Silver Hilts, and Chapes ſet with ſmall Stones, and Targets covered with Velvet wrought with Gold, and ſome painted and boſs'd with Gold and Silver, which he gave to his Servants againſt the Review. Many Saddles and Furnitures of his own, all of Gold, ſet with Stones for led Horſes, were ſhown, his Boots embroidered, and all other Accoutrements of State. The Value is wonderful, and the Wealth daily ſeen inеſtimable.

In the Evening I went to the *Durbar* to viſit the King, where I met the *Perſian* Ambaſſador with the firſt Show of his Preſents. He appeared more like a Jeſter or Juggler, than a Perſon of Gravity, running up and down, and acting all he ſaid like a Mimick. He delivered the Preſents with his own Hands, which the King received with Smiles, a chearful Countenance, and Expreſſions of Satisfaction. His Tongue was a great Advantag to him in delivering his Buſineſs; which he did with ſo much Flattery and Obſequiouſneſs, that it pleaſed as much as his Gift; ever calling the *Mogul* King, and Commander of the World, forgetting his own Maſter had a Share in it; and upon every ſlight Occaſion he made his *Teſelins*. When all was delivered for that Day, he proſtrated himſelf on the Ground, and knocked it with his Head as if he would have entered it. The Gifts were a Quiver for Bow and Arrows, delicately embroider'd; all Sorts of *European* Fruits, artificial in Diſhes; folding Purſes, and Knacks of Leather wrought with Needle-work in coloured Silks; Shoes embroidered and ſtitched; great Glaſſes in Frames inlay'd; one ſquare Piece of Velvet, embroidered high with Gold in Panes, between which were *Italian* Pictures wrought in the Stuff, which he ſaid were the

the King and Queen of *Venice*; of theſe ſix Pieces were given, but only one ſhow'd. There were beſides many other Curioſities of ſmall Value; after which came three Times nine Horſes, which had either loſt their Fleſh or Beauty, for I thought them all, except two or three, unfit to be ſent to, or received by Princes; the Mules were handſome. After this he returned with many antick Tricks to his Place, far inferior to that allowed me, which was alone, and above all Subjects. This is but the firſt Act of his preſenting; the Play will not be finiſhed in ten Days.

The 22d, the Letter the Prince had promiſed me for the ſending up of the Preſents unſearched, being again detain'd, I went to his Secretary, who ſaid they could not be ſent up without viſiting, leſt the Merchants under that Pretence ſhould ſteal Cuſtoms. I was offended and going away, but the Secretary prevailed with me to go with him to the Prince, who accepted of ſome Feathers I brought him; and knowing my Reſolution, ordered I ſhould be diſpatched to Content. At Night I went to the *Durbar*, to obſerve the *Perſian* Ambaſſador, and found him ſtanding in his Rank, but often removed and ſet lower, as great Men came in. The King once ſpoke to him, and he danc'd to that Muſick, but gave no Preſent, and the *Mogul* ordered he ſhould be feaſted by the Nobles, The 24th the King removed to *Havar Gemal*, and ſent for the *Perſian* Ambaſſador, who at Night eat and drank before the King with the Nobility, in the ſame Manner as I had done on the Birth-day. The Difference was, that the *Mogul* gave him 20,000 Roupies for his Expence, for which he made many *Teſelins* and *Sizedas*, not riſing from the Ground for a conſiderable Time, which extreamly pleaſed the King, and was baſe, but profitable Flattery. The 25th the King returned to Court, having been far gone over Night in Wine. Some either accidentally or maliciouſly ſpoke of the laſt merry Night, and that many of the Nobility drank Wine, which none muſt do without Leave: The King forgetting his Order, aſk'd who gave it; and Anſwer was made, the *Buxy*; for no Man dares ſay it was the King, when he ſeems to be willing to make a Doubt of it. The Cuſtom is, that when the

the King drinks, which is alone, ſometimes he will command the Nobility to drink after him, which if they do not, it is looked upon as a Crime; and ſo every Man that takes a Cup of Wine of the Officer, has his Name writ down, and he makes his *Teſelin*, though perhaps the King's Eyes are clouded. The king not remembering his own Command, called the *Buxy*, and aſked whether he gave the Order; who falſely deny'd it, for he had it from the king, and by Name called all that drank with the Ambaſſador. The King then called for the Liſt, and Perſons named in it, and fined ſome one, ſome two, and ſome three thouſand Roupies; and ſome that were nearer his Perſon, he cauſed to be whipped before him, they receiving a hundred and thirty Stripes with a terrible Inſtrument, having at the Ends of four Cords, Irons like Spur-rowels, ſo that every Stroke made four Wounds. When they lay for dead on the Ground, he commanded the Standers by to ſpurn them, and after that the Porters to break their Staves on them. Thus moſt cruelly mangled and bruis'd, they were carry'd out; one of them dy'd on the Spot. Some would have excuſed it, by laying it on the Ambaſſador; but the king reply'd, he only ordered a Cup or two to be given him. Though Drunkenneſs be a common Vice, and an Exerciſe of the King's, yet is it ſo ſtrictly forbidden, that no Man can enter the *Guzelcan*, where the king ſits, but the Porters ſmell his Breath, and if he has but taſted Wine, is not ſuffered to come in; and if the Reaſon of his Abſence be known, it will be a difficult Matter to eſcape the Whip; for if the king once takes Offence, the Father will not ſpeak for the Son. Thus the king made all the Company pay the *Perſian* Ambaſſador's Preſent.

The 28th, the king's Day of Removal being at Hand, I ſent to *Aſaph Chan* for a Warrant for Carriages. The Merchants having ſought all the Town to remove their Goods to *Agra*, could find none. I being enroll'd by his Majeſty, received Order for twenty Camels, four Carts, and two Coaches at the king's Price. Of theſe I allowed the Factors as many as they needed for their Uſe. I cannot here omit a Paſſage either of wonderful Baſeneſs in this great Monarch,

Monarch, or elſe a Trial put upon me. The king had condemned divers Thieves, among which were ſome Boys. There was no Way to ſave their Lives, but to ſell them for Slaves. His Majeſty commanded *Aſaph Chan* to offer two of them to me for Money; which he appointed the *Cutwal*, that is the Marſhal, to do. My Interpreter made Anſwer, without my knowledge, that Chriſtians kept no Slaves; that thoſe the king had given me, I had ſet free, and it was in vain to propoſe it to me; yet afterwards of himſelf he told me of it. I ſuſpected it might be a Trial of me, to ſee whether I would give a little Money to ſave the Lives of two Children; or elſe, I thought, though it were in Earneſt, it were no great Loſs to do a good Deed, and try the Baſeneſs or Scope of this Offer. I commanded my Interpreter to go to *Aſaph Chan*, and tell him he had acquainted me with the Motion, and his Anſwer; that I had reproved him for pretending to deliver my Thoughts in any Caſe; and therefore my own Reply was, that if there was any Money to be paid to redeem the Lives of two Children to thoſe whom they had robb'd, or to redeem them from the Law, I was ready to give it, both out of Reſpect to the king's Commands, and for Charity; but I would not buy them as Slaves, only pay their Ranſom, and free them; and therefore if he would know the king's Pleaſure, that I might give them their Liberty without Offence, I was very willing to do it. *Aſaph Chan* reply'd, I might diſpoſe of them as I pleaſed; that it was an extraordinary Goodneſs, and with many Commendations accepted of the Money, deſiring me to ſend it to the *Cutwal*, and to uſe my own Diſcretion with the Boys, never offering to inform the king, which was one End of my Liberality. But I reſolving not to be impoſed upon, leſt this ſhould be only a Trick of the Officers to get Money, ſent to let the *Cutwal* know what had paſſed between me and *Aſaph Chan*, and that if at Night he would acquaint the king that I had offered to redeem the Priſoners out of Charity, and his Majeſty would conſent to their Liberty, I was ready to pay the Money, but would not buy them as Slaves, and deſired his Majeſty to pardon them upon my Redemption. Thus I put them to the Teſt of

their

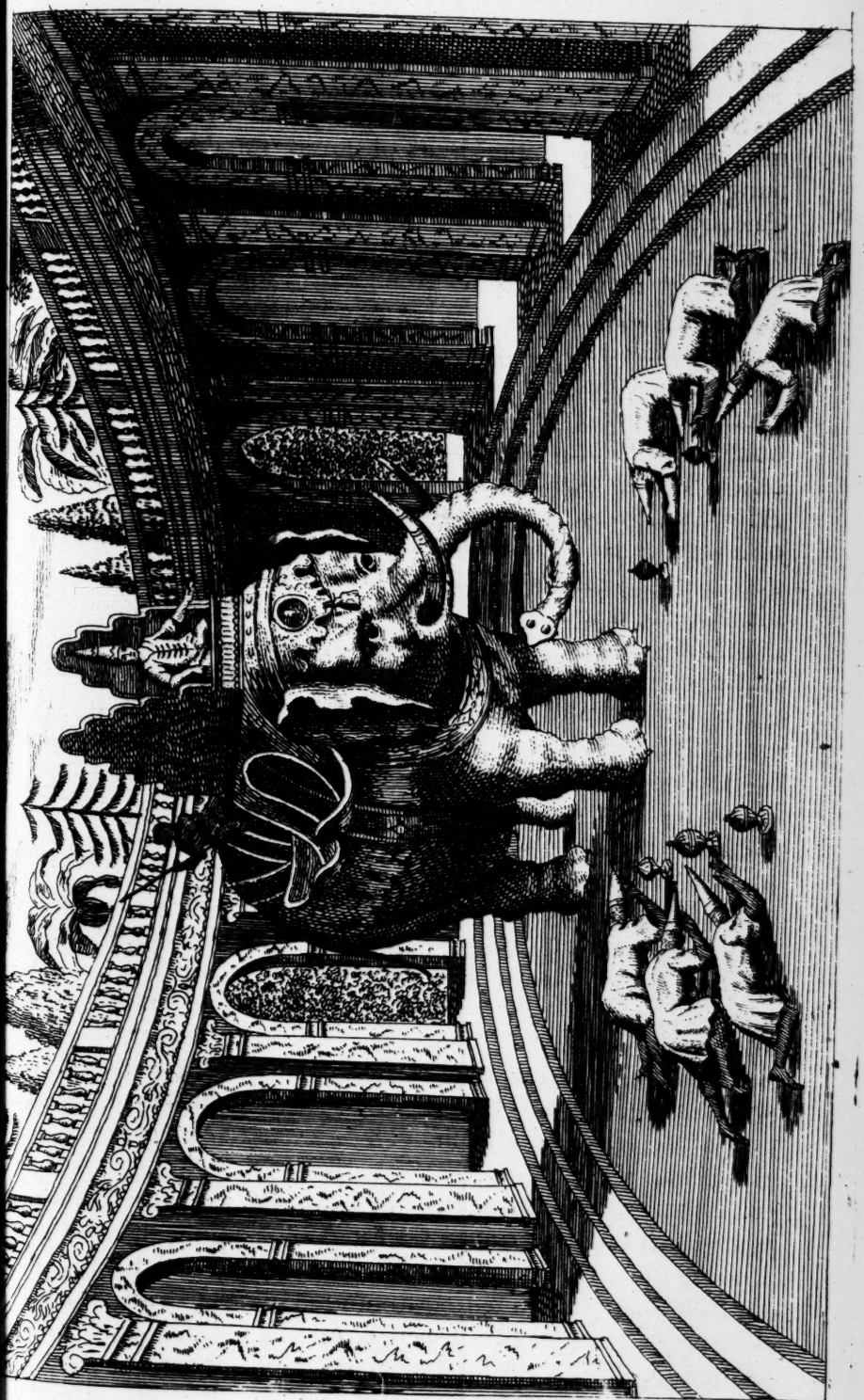
their own Offer. The Sum demanded did not exceed ten Pounds. The *Cutwal* anſwered, he would know the king's Pleaſure. Some would perſuade me this is one of the *Mogul*'s ſignal Favours, to pitch upon ſuch great Men, to whom he will offer the Opportunity of doing Good, as the redeeming of Priſoners; and that the Money is to make Satisfaction to the Party that was robbed; and that theſe ſo appointed by the king to ranſom others, make the *Sizeda*, as for ſome Benefit received. I went to the *Durbar*, to ſee if his Majeſty would himſelf ſpeak to me; the *Cutwal* made many Motions, but I underſtood nothing. This Day I ſent my Secretary to the *Perſian* Ambaſſador, to let him know I would viſit him, if he would give his Word to repay the Viſit, with other Compliments: Who anſwered with all Reſpect, that it was the Cuſtom of the Country for Ambaſſadors not to viſit one another without the king's Leave, which he would move for, and then receive me with all Friendſhip, and repay my Viſit; with many more Expreſſions of Civility.

November the firſt, *Sultan Corone* took his Leave and went to his Tents. The king at Noon ſat out in the *Durbar*, whither the Prince brought his Elephants, being about ſix hundred richly trapped and furniſhed, and his Followers by Computation one thouſand Horſe; many of them in Cloth of Gold, with Herons Feathers in their Turbants, all very gallant; the Prince himſelf in a Coat of Cloth of Silver, embroidered with great Pearl, and glittering with Diamonds like the Firmament. The king embrac'd, kiſs'd, and ſhow'd him much Affection. At his Departure he gave him a Sword, the Scabbard all of Gold ſet with Stones, valued at above ten thouſand Pounds; a Dagger at four thouſand Pounds; an Elephant and two Horſes, all their Furniture of Gold ſet with Stones; and for a Cloſe, one of the new Coaches made in Imitation of that ſent by the king my Maſter, and commanded the *Engliſh* Coachman to drive him to his Tents. The Prince went into the Coach, and ſat in the Middle, the Sides open, his chiefeſt Nobles on Foot walking by him to his Tents about four Miles diſtant. All the Way he threw Quarters of Roupies, being

being followed by a Multitude of People. He reach'd his Hand to the Coachman, and put into his Hat about 100 Roupies.

The ſecond t[illegible] King removed about three Miles to his Tents, with his Women and all the Court. I went beforehand to attend him; and coming to the Palace, I found him at the *Jarucco* Window, and went upon the Scaffold under him. Not having ſeen this Place before, I was glad of the Opportunity. Two Eunuchs ſtood on two Treſſels with long Poles and Feather Fans at the End of them, fanning him. He beſtow'd many Favours, and receiv'd Preſents. What he beſtow'd he let down by a Silk String rolled on a turning Inſtrument; what was given him, a venerable fat deform'd old Matron, wrinkled and hung round with Gimbles like an Image, pulled up at the Hole with ſuch another Clue. At one Side in a Window were his two principal Wives, whoſe Curioſity made them break little Holes in a Grate of Reed that hung before it to gaze on me. I ſaw firſt their Fingers, and then they laying their Faces cloſe, firſt the one, and then the other, I could ſometimes diſcern their full Proportion. They were indifferently white, with black Hair ſmoothed up; but if there had been no other Light their Diamonds and Pearls had ſufficed to ſhow them. When I look'd up, they retired; and were ſo merry that I ſuppoſe they laugh'd at me. On a ſudden the King roſe, we retired to the *Durbar*, and ſat on the Carpets, attending his coming out. Not long after he came, and ſat about Half an Hour, till his Ladies at their Door had mounted their Elephants. which were about fifty, all of them richly adorned, but chiefly three with Turrets on their Backs, all encloſed with Grates of Gold Wire to look through, and Canopies over of Cloth of Silver. Then the King came down the Stairs with ſuch an Acclamation of Health to the King, as would have out-roar'd Cannon. At the Foot of the Stairs, where I met him, and ſhuffled to be next, one brought a mighty Carp; another a Diſh of white Stuff like Starch, into which he put his Finger, and touch'd the Fiſh, and ſo rubb'd on his Forehead; a Ceremony uſed preſaging good Fortune. Then another came, and girt on

his Sword and hung on his Buckler ſet all over with Diamonds and Rubies, the Belts of Gold ſuitable. Another hung on his Quiver with thirty Arrows, and his Bow in a Caſe, being the ſame that was preſented by the *Perſian* Ambaſſador, On his Head he wore a rich Turbant with a Plume of Herons Feathers, not many but long. On one Side hung a Ruby unſet, as big as a Walnut; on the other Side a Diamond as large; in the Middle an Emerald like a Heart much bigger. His Staff was wound about with a Chain of great Pearl, Rubies, and Diamonds drill'd. About his Neck he wore a Chain of three Strings of moſt excellent Pearl, the largeſt I ever ſaw. Above his Elbows, Armlets ſet with Diamonds, and on his Wriſts three Rows of ſeveral Sorts; his Hands bare, but on almoſt every Finger a Ring. His Gloves, which were *Engliſh*, ſtuck under his Girdle. His Coat of Cloth of Gold, without Sleeves, upon a fine *Semian*, as thin as Lawn. On his Feet a Pair of Buſkins embroidered with Pearl, the Toes ſharp and turning up. Thus arm'd and accoutred he went to the Coach that attended him, with his new *Engliſh* Servant, who was cloathed as rich as any Player, and more gaudy, and had broke four Horſes, which were trapp'd and harneſs'd in Gold Velvets. He ſat at the End, and on each Side went two Eunuchs, who carried ſmall Maces of Gold ſet all over with Rubies, with a long Bunch of Horſe Tail to flap the Flies away. Before him went Drums, baſe Trumpets, and loud Muſick, many Canopies, Umbrelloes, and other ſtrange Enſigns of Majeſty, made of Cloth of Gold ſet in many Places with Rubies. Nine led Horſes, the Furniture ſome garniſh'd with Rubies, ſome with Pearls and Emeralds, ſome only with Studs enamell'd. The *Perſian* Ambaſſador preſented him a Horſe. Next behind came three Palankines, the Carriages and Feet of one plated with Gold, ſet at the Ends with Stones, and covered with Crimſon Velvet embroidered with Pearl, and a Fringe of great Pearl hanging in Ropes a Foot deep, a Border about it ſet with Rubies and Emeralds. A Footman carried a Footſtool of Gold ſet with Stones. The other two Palankines were covered and lined only with Cloth of Gold. Next followed the *Engliſh* Coach newly covered



3
56
SEP

vered and richly adorned, which he had given to Queen *Normahal*, who ſat in it. After them a third, in which ſat his younger Sons. Then followed about twenty Elephants Royal, led for him to mount, ſo rich in Stones and Furniture that they glittered like the Sun. Every Elephant had ſundry Flags of Cloth of Silver, gilt Sattin and Taffety. His Noblemen he ſuffered to walk on Foot, which I did to the Gate, and left him. His Wives on their Elephants were carried Half a Mile behind him. When he came before the Door where his eldeſt Son is Priſoner, he ſtayed the Coach, and call'd for him. He came and made Reverence, with a Sword and Buckler in his Hand, his Beard grown to his Middle, a Sign of Diſfavour. The King commanded him to mount one of the ſpare Elephants, and rode ſo next to him, with extraordinary Applauſe and Joy of all Men, who are now fill'd with new Hopes. The King gave him 1000 Roupies to caſt to the People. His Gaoler *Aſaph Chan*, and all thoſe Monſters were yet on Foot. I took Horſe to avoid the Croud and other Inconveniences, and croſſed out of the *Leſkar* before him, waiting till he came near his Tents. He paſſed all the Way between a Guard of Elephants, having every one a Turret on his Back, and on the four Corners of each four Banners of yellow Taffety, and right before a Piece of Cannon carrying a Bullet as big as a Tennis-ball, the Gunner behind it. They were in all about 300. Other Elephants of State went before and behind, being about 600, all which were covered with Velvet, or Cloth of Gold, and had two or three gilded Banners. Several Footmen ran along the Way with Skins of Water to lay the Duſt before the King. No Horſe or Man was ſuffered to come within two Furlongs of the Coach, except thoſe that walk'd by on Foot. So that I haſted to his Tents to attend his Alighting. They were walled in about half an *Engliſh* Mile in Compaſs in Form of a Fort, with ſeveral Angles and Bulwarks, and high Curtains of a coarſe Stuff made like Arras, red on the Out-ſide, and within Figures in Panes, with a handſome Gatehouſe, every Poſt that bore theſe up headed with Braſs. The Throng was great, I had a Mind to go in; no Man was permitted, the greateſt in the

Land ſitting at the Door: However I made an Offer, and they admitted me, but refuſed the *Perſian* Ambaſſador, and all the Noblemen. Here firſt the *Perſian* Ambaſſador ſaluted me with a ſilent Compliment. In the Midſt of this Court was a Throne of Mother of Pearl, born on two Pillars raiſed on Earth, covered over with a high Tent, the Pole headed with a Nob of Gold; under that Canopies of Cloth of Gold, and under Foot Carpets. When the King drew near the Door, ſome Noblemen came in, and the *Perſian* Ambaſſador. We ſtood on both Sides making a Line. The King entering caſt his Eyes on me; I made him Reverence, and he laid his Hand on his Breaſt and bow'd, and turning to the other Side nodded to the *Perſian*. I followed at his Heels till he went up, and every Man cried, Joy and good Fortune; and ſo we took our Places. He call'd for Water, waſh'd his Hands, and departed. His Women went in ſome other Way to their Apartment, and his Son I ſaw not. Within this Incloſure were about thirty Diviſions with Tents. All the Noblemen retired to theirs, which were in excellent Forms, ſome all white, ſome green, ſome mix'd, all incloſed as orderly as any Houſe, in the moſt magnificent Manner I ever ſaw. The Vale ſhewed like a beautiful City, for the Baggage made no Confuſion. I was ill provided with Carriage, and aſhamed of my Equipage; for five Years Allowance would have hardly provided me an indifferent Suit anſwerable to others: And to add to the Grandeur every Man has two, ſo that one goes before to the next Ground, and is ſet up a Day before the King riſes from the Place where he is. So I returned to my poor Houſe.

November the 5th I rode about five Miles to the Prince's Tents. I made his Highneſs my Compliments of Leave, wiſhing him Proſperity and Succeſs; but he ordered me to return and take my Leave two Days after, having preſented him ſome Buſineſs about Debts due to the *Engliſh*, which he promiſed to examine and diſpatch. He ſat with the ſame Greatneſs and Magnificence I mentioned of his Father, his Throne being plated over with Silver, inlaid with Flowers of Gold, and the Canopy over it ſquare, born up on four Pillars covered with Silver; his Arms, Sword, Buckler, Bows,

Bows, Arrows, and Lance on a Table before him. The Watch was ſet, for it was Evening when we came abroad. I obſerved him curiouſly now he was abſolute, and took Notice of his Behaviour and Actions. He received two Letters, and read them ſtanding before he aſcended his Throne. I never ſaw ſo ſettled a Countenance, or any Man keep ſo conſtant a Gravity, never ſmiling, nor by his Looks ſhewing any Reſpect or Diſtinction of Perſons, but an extreme Pride and Contempt of all. Yet I perceived ſome inward Trouble now and then aſſail him, and a kind of Interruption and Diſtraction in his Thoughts; anſwering Suitors diſorderly, or in Confuſion, or not hearing them. If I can judge of it, he has left his Heart among his Father's Women, with whom he has the Liberty of converſing. *Normahall* the Day before went to viſit him in the *Engliſh* Coach, and took her Leave of him. She gave him a Cloak all embroidered with Pearls, Diamonds, and Rubies, and carried away, if I miſtake not, all his Attention for Buſineſs. The 9th the Prince being to remove, ſent one of his Guard in haſte for me. I was not provided to go, but he preſſed me; urging his Maſter ſtayed for me; that he ordered him not to return without me; that all the Court did talk of the Prince's Favour to me; that it was reported he had deſired the King to let me accompany him to the Army; and that he had promiſed to uſe me ſo well, that I ſhould confeſs his Favour to our Nation. This News made me take Horſe after Dinner; but I found him newly riſen and marching, but I met a *Duchman* his Jeweller, who confirmed all the Soldier had ſaid, and added ſo much more that I believed none of it. I ſent Word I was come, and he returned Anſwer, that I ſhould paſs before to the Tents, and ſit till he came, and he would ſpeak with me. It was Night before he came; he only looked on me, ſat a little, and went in among his Women. As he paſſed he turned about, and ſent a Servant to deſire me to ſtay awhile, and he would come into the *Guzelcan*, and take his Leave of me. Within half an Hour he ſet out, but I could not get any Man to put him in Mind of me, and he was fallen to play, and either forgot it, or put a Trick of State upon me; ſo that I ſtayed an Hour. Being much

much troubled I went to the Door, and told the Waiters that the Prince had ſent for me; that I came only to receive his Orders; that I had ſtayed long, and muſt return to my Houſe, it being late; and if his Highneſs had any Buſineſs I deſired him to ſend it after me, for I ſcorned ſuch Uſage; and ſo went away to take Horſe. Before I could mount, Meſſengers came running for me, and I went in. He excuſed himſelf, and blamed his Officers, uſing me with much Show of Civility; calling me to ſee his Cards, and aſking me ſeveral Queſtions. The Eunuchs and Officers told me the Prince would make me a great Preſent, and if I fear'd to ride home late, I ſhould have ten Horſe to guard me. The Preſent came, and was a Cloak of Cloth of Gold which he had worn once or twice, and which they put upon my Back: I made Reverence for it very unwillingly; and it is here reputed the higheſt Favour to give a Garment that has been worn by the Prince, or juſt lain on his Shoulders; yet this would have become an Actor that had repreſented his Anceſtor *Tamerlane*. Then he bowed, and I had my Diſcharge; yet firſt I urged ſome Buſineſs, and having my Anſwer, took my Leave. Going out I was followed by his Porters and Waiters in ſuch ſhameful Manner, that I half paid for my Cloak before I got clear of them.

November the 10th, almoſt all the Town being removed, I was left behind, having got neither Camels nor Carts, notwithſtanding my Warrant; and the *Perſian* Ambaſſador was under the ſame Circumſtances, who complained, and was ſoon redreſſed: Whereupon I ſent to Court, and on the 11th received two Warrants for Carts and Camels at the King's Price; but it was not eaſy to get either, the great Men having Soldiers every Way to take all up; and indeed it was wonderful how the whole Town and two *Leſkars*, or Camps, that is the King's and Prince's, could remove at once. The 16th the King gave Orders to fire all the *Leſkars*, or Huts, at *Adſmere*, to oblige the People to follow him; which was daily executed. The *Perſian* Ambaſſador and I were left in bad Plight, in Danger of Thieves, who came daily from the Camp to rob; and almoſt without Bread to eat. This made me think of buying Beaſts and Carriages,

Carriages, which would prove as cheap as hiring; but firſt I ſent again to Court to make one Trial more.

The 20th of this Month I received a new Warrant for Carriages, which procured me eight Camels, but ſuch poor ones as would not ſuffice me, and therefore I was forced to take Order to buy the reſt. The 22d I removed into my Tents. The 25th I removed ſix Coſſes, but ſtayed the following Days for the Caravan that was going from *Agra* to *Surat* to ſend my Papers with Safety. *December* the 1ſt I removed four Coſſes to *Ramſor*, where the King had left the Bodies of a hundred naked Men, executed in the Fields for Robbing. The 2d ſeven Coſſes, the 3d reſted becauſe of the Rain, the 4th five Coſſes; in the Way this Day I met a Camel laden with three hundred Mens Heads, ſent from *Candahar* by the Governor as a Preſent to the King, theſe Men being in Rebellion. The 5th five Coſſes, the 6th four, where I overtook the King at a wall'd Town called *Todah*, in the beſt Country I ſaw ſince my Landing; being a fair Champaign, at every Coſſe a Village; the Soil fruitful in Corn, Cotton, and Cattle. The 7th the King only removed from one Side to the other of the Town, which was one of the beſt built I ever ſaw in *India*, for ſome Houſes were two Stories high, and moſt of them ſuch as a Pedlar might not ſcorn to keep Shop in, all covered with Tile. It had been the Seat of a *Raja Raſhoote* before the Conqueſt of *Ezbar Sha*, and ſtood at the Foot of a great Rock very ſtrong, had many excellent Works of hewed Stone about it, many Ponds arched, vaulted, and Deſcents to them large and deep: By it was a delicate Grove two Miles long and a Quarter broad, planted on Purpoſe with Mangoes, Tamarinds, and other Fruit-trees divided into Walks, and full of little Temples, and Altars of Pagods, and *Indian* Idolatry, many Fountains, Wells, and Summer Houſes of carved Stone, curiouſly arched; ſo that a baniſhed *Engliſhman* might have been content to live there. But it is a general Obſervation that all goes to Ruin and Deſtruction; for ſince the Property of all is come to the King, no Man takes Care of any Thing in particular, ſo that Devaſtation and the Spoils of War appear in every Place without any Reparation. The 8th I

was

was at the King's *Guzelcan*, and found him ſo near drunk that he made it up in half an Hour, ſo that I could move no Buſineſs to him.

The 9th I took a Niew of the *Leſkar*, or King's Camp, which is one of the greateſt Wonders I ever beheld, and chiefly for that I ſaw it ſet up and finiſhed in leſs than four Hours, except ſome of the great Men, who having double Suits of Tents, it being no leſs than twenty *Engliſh* Miles in Compaſs, the Length ſome Ways four Miles and a Half including the Skirts: In the Middle where the Streets are orderly and the Tents joined, there are all Sorts of Shops, and ſo regularly diſpoſed, that every Man knows whither to go directly for what he wants; each Man of Quality, and every Trade being appointed how far from the King's Tents they ſhall pitch, what Ground they ſhall take up, and on what Side, without ever altering. All which as it lies together, is almoſt equal to any Town in *Europe* for Greatneſs; but no Man muſt approach the Royal *Ataſchanha*, or Quarter, by a Muſket-ſhot every Way; which is now ſo ſtrictly obſerved, that none are admitted but by Name, and the Time of the *Durbar* in the Evening is omitted, and ſpent in Hunting, or Hawking on Pools by Boat, in which the King takes wonderful Delight, and his Barges are removed on Carts with him. He ſits on the Sides of theſe Pools, which are often a Mile or two over. At the *Jarucco* in the Morning he is ſeen, but Buſineſs, or Speech is prohibited, all being concluded at Night in the *Guzelcan*, and there very often the Opportunity is miſs'd, his Majeſty being overcome by the Fumes of *Bacchus*. The *Engliſh* at *Surat* complained of ill Uſage at this Time, but their Drunkenneſs and other Irregularities proceeding from it, were ſo great in that Place, that it was rather wonderful they were ſuffered to live.

The 18th of this Month of *December* I viſited the King, who having been at his Sports, and having all his Game before him, deſired me to take my Choice of the Fowl and Fiſh, and then diſtributed the Remainder to the Nobility, I found him ſitting on his Throne, and a Beggar at his Feet, a poor ſilly old Man all ragged and patch'd, with a young Rogue attending him. The Country abounds with

theſe

theſe profeſſed poor holy Men, and they are held in great Veneration; and in Works of Mortification, and voluntary Sufferings, they outdo all that ever has been pretended either by Hereticks or Idolaters. This miſerable Wretch clothed in Rags, crowned with Feathers, covered with Aſhes, his Majeſty talked with about an Hour ſo familiarly, and with ſuch ſeeming Kindneſs, that it muſt needs argue an Humility not eaſily found among Kings. The Beggar ſat, which the King's Son dares not do; he gave the King a Preſent, a Cake mixed with Aſhes, burnt on the Coals, and made by himſelf of coarſe Grain, which the King willingly accepted, broke a Bit and eat it, which a nice Perſon could ſcarce have done; then he took the Clout and wrapt it up and put it into the poor Man's Boſom, and ſent for 100 Roupies, and with his own Hand poured them into the poor Man's Lap, and gathered up for him what fell beſide. When his Collation, or Banquet and Drink came, whatſoever he took to eat he broke and gave the Beggar Half; and riſing, after many ſtrange Humiliations and Charities, the old Wretch not being Nimble, he took him up in his Arms, tho' no cleanly Body durſt have touched him, embracing him, and three Times laying his Hand on his Heart, and calling him Father, left him and all of us, and me in Admiration to ſee ſuch Virtue in a Heathen Prince, which I mention with Emulation and Sorrow, that we having the true Vine ſhould bring forth a baſtard Stock of Grapes; wiſhing either our Chriſtian Princes had this Devotion, or that this Zeal were guided by a true Light of the Goſpel.

The 26th we paſſed through Woods and over Mountains thick of Buſhes, where many Camels periſhed, many People tired with the Difficulties of an impaſſable Way, went away to *Agra*, and all complained. I loſt my Tents and Carts, but by Midnight we met again. The King reſted two Days, for the Leſkar could not in leſs Time recover their Order; many of the King's Women, and thouſands of Coaches, Carts and Camels, lying in the woody Mountains without Meat or Water: He himſelf got through on a ſmall Elephant that will climb up Rocks, and paſs

ſuch Straits, that no Horſe or Beaſt I have ſeen can follow him. The 29th we lay by the River of *Chambet.*

The 11th of *February*, the King rode to *Ugen*, to ſpeak with a Derviſe, or religious Man living on a Hill, who is reported to be 300 Years old. I thought this Miracle not worth my examining. This Day I received Advice by a Foot Poſt that the Prince had ſtopt the Preſents as they were coming to me, but not broken them open, hoping to compel the *Engliſh* to conſent to it, which by my Orders they would not do. The Prince at the ſame Time ſent to the King to acquaint him with his ſtopping ſome Goods, without mentioning they were Preſents, and to deſire his Leave to buy what he thought fit. This faithleſs Proceeding of the Prince, contrary to his Word, and Orders under his Hand, obliged me to have Recourſe to the King for Redreſs, being now blameleſs in the Eyes of all the World for taking this Courſe. I was afraid to go to *Aſaph Chan* to introduce me, leſt if he knew of the Wrong done he ſhould prevent me; and yet I durſt not well provoke him by uſing any other Means. The Prophet Derviſe, or religious Man the King went to viſit, offered me an Opportunity of doing my Buſineſs; and my new Interpreter, a *Greek* I had ſent for from *Adſmere*, was ready. I rode and met his Majeſty on his Elephant, and alighted, making Signs to ſpeak. The King turned his Monſter to me, and prevented me; ſaying, my Son has taken your Goods and my Preſents, be not ſad, he ſhall not touch nor open a Seal or Lock. At Night I will ſend him a Command to free them. He graciouſly added, that he knew I came full of Complaint, and to eaſe me he began firſt. Upon the Way I could do no more; but at Night without further ſeeking to *Aſaph Chan*, I went to the Guzelcan, reſolving to proſecute the Complaint of forcing back our Goods, and all other Grievances. As ſoon as I came in, the King called my Interpreter, and declared by his own that he had written and ſent his Command very effectually, that not a Hair ſhould be diminiſhed. I replyed, the Injury was ſuch, and the Charge and Abuſe of our Liberty by the Prince's Officers, that I deſired Redreſs, being no longer able to endure

endure it. It was anſwered, that what was paſt I muſt remit to his Son; but by *Aſaph Chan*'s Mediation I could procure nothing but good Words, for he ſmoothed on both Sides. So I was forced to ſeem content, and to ſeek an Opportunity in the Abſence of my falſe Friend and Procurator. The good King fell to diſpute of the Laws of *Moſes*, *Chriſt*, and *Mahomet*, and in his Drink was ſo kind, that he turned to me, and ſaid, If I am a King you ſhall be welcome, *Chriſtians*, *Moors*, and *Jews*; he meddled not with their Faith; they came all in Love, and he would protect them from Wrong; they lived under his Protection, and none ſhould oppreſs them. This he often repeated; but being very drunk, fell to weeping, and into divers Paſſions, and ſo kept us till Midnight.

Afterwards the King had cauſed the Cheſts to be privately brought to him, and had opened them; which I reſolved not to put up, and having obtained Audience, made my Complaint. He received me with much mean Flattery, more unworthy him, than even the Action he had done. I ſuppoſe he did it to appeaſe me, ſeeing by my Countenance I was highly provoked. He told me he had found ſeveral Things that pleaſed him extreamly, and among them two embroidered Sweet-bags, two Glaſs Cabinets, and the Maſtiff Dogs: That if I would not give him any of theſe Things, he would reſtore them, for he would have me pleaſed. I anſwered, there was little but what was deſigned for him; but that this was not a civil Way of dealing with the King my Maſter, and I knew not how to give him to underſtand that the Preſents had been ſeized, and not delivered by me, as he had appointed. That ſome of the Preſents were for the Prince, and ſome for the Queen *Normahal*; the reſt to remain in my Hands, to make Uſe of as Occaſion offered, to move his Majeſty to protect us againſt the Wrongs offered us by Strangers. That there were ſome few for my Friends, and for my own Uſe; the reſt belong'd to the Merchants, and were not at my Diſpoſal. He deſired me not to take it ill that he had cauſed them to be brought to him; that thoſe Things had pleaſed him ſo well, he had not the Patience to ſtay till I preſented them, and he

thought he had done me no Wrong, believing it was my Intention he ſhould be firſt ſerved in the Diſtribution of the Preſents. As for the King of *England*, he would ſatisfy him, and make my Excuſe. That the Prince, Queen *Normahal*, and he, were all one; and for the Preſents to be kept to uſe as Occaſion offered, that was a needleſs Ceremony; for he would give me Audience at any Time, and I ſhould be well received, though I came empty-handed, he being ſenſible it was not my Fault that I came ſo. Then he began to talk of his Son, and told me he would reſtore Part of what he had taken, and ſatisfy the Merchants for what belonged to them. In Concluſion, he deſired me not to take what he had done in ill Part, for he had no Deſign to wrong me. I made no Anſwer to all this: Whereupon he preſſed me to ſpeak my Mind, aſking me ſeveral Times whether I was ſatisfied; I replied, I was very well pleaſed to ſee his Majeſty was ſo. Then he began to reckon up all the Things he had taken, beginning with the Maſtiffs, the Sweet-bags, and the Caſe for Combs and Razors; and ſmiling ſaid, You would not have me reſtore thoſe Things, for I have a Mind to them.

After ſome more Diſcourſe about other Trifles, he ſaid I muſt needs help him to one of our large Horſes, to a Brace of *Iriſh* Greyhounds, Dog and Bitch, and other Dogs of all Sorts, for Game; which if I would procure him, he proteſted on the Word of a Prince he would gratify me, and grant me more Privileges than I ſhould think of aſking. I anſwered, I would order them to be put aboard the next Ships, but could not anſwer they would out-live ſo tedious a Voyage; but in caſe they died, to convince him I had obeyed his Commands, the Skins and Bones ſhould be brought him. Upon this Promiſe he bowed to me ſeveral Times, laid his Hand on his Breaſt, and ſhewed me ſo much Kindneſs, Favour, and Familiarity, that all there preſent proteſted he had never done the like to any Man. This was the Reward I had; but he ſaid further, he would make Amends for the Wrong he had done me, and ſend me Home to my Country laden with Favours worthy a Perſon of my Rank. Nevertheleſs, perceiving I had only fair Words for

the

the Merchandize, I again aſked his Majeſty for the Pieces of Velvet and Silks, as Commodities belonging to the Merchants, making him believe the Merchants had put them into thoſe Cheſts, only to prevent their falling into the Hands of the Prince's Officers. He ſent for Mr. *Biddolfe*, to agree with and ſatisfy him. Then I preſented a Memorial, containing the Privileges and Franchiſes I deſired, ſaying, if he would not grant them, I ſhould have the Diſſatisfaction of being uſeleſs in my Employment to my Prince, and conſequently return Home in Diſgrace. I preſſed the Payment of a Debt: He anſwered, I ſhould have Satisfaction in all Things, and return Home to my Prince with Honour; that he would ſend him a noble Preſent by me, and with it a Letter, certifying the good Service I had done. Then he preſſed me to tell him what Preſent I thought would be moſt acceptable. I ſaid, it would not look well in me to aſk a Preſent; that it was not the Cuſtom of our Country; that it was againſt my Maſter's Honour to do any ſuch Thing; but that I was ſure his Majeſty would receive any Thing he ſent with much Satisfaction, as coming from a Prince for whom he had a great Eſteem. He was ſo earneſt with me, and made ſuch Proteſtations of Sincerity, that I was forced to tell him that the great *Perſian* Carpets were proper to ſend, becauſe my Maſter did not expect Preſents of great Value. Whereupon he told me he would chuſe a good Quantity of all Sorts and Sizes, and what he thought moſt proper to convince the King of the Eſteem he had for him. There was a Quantity of all Sorts of Game laid before him. He gave me half a Buck, and told me at the ſame Time he had killed it with his own Hand, and deſigned the other half for his Women. That half was accordingly cut in Pieces of about four Pounds Weight each, and immediately the King's third Son and two Women came out of the *Seraglio*, took up thoſe Pieces of Fleſh in their Hands, and carried them into the *Seraglio*, as if they had been Beggars that had received them for Charity. He then repeated his Expreſſions of Deſire to ſatisfy me; and added, I have often admired, that your Maſter having ſent you with the Character of Ambaſſador, your Preſents have been

been inferior to thoſe a Merchant you have ſeen here has brought, which have gained him the Affection of all Men. I own, as an Ambaſſador, your Behaviour ſpeaks you a Man of Quality, and yet I cannot underſtand why you are kept here with ſo little of Grandeur. I am ſatisfied it is not your's nor your Prince's Fault, and I will make you ſenſible I value you more than thoſe that ſent you. I will ſend you Home with Honour, and give you a Preſent for your Maſter, without regarding thoſe I have received; and in return I deſire but one Thing of you, which I do not care to commit to the Merchants. It is to get me a Quiver made in your Country to carry my Arrows, a Caſe for my Bow, a Pattern whereof ſhall be given you, a Pillow after my Manner to ſleep on, a Pair of Buck-ſkins, which you ſhall cauſe to be embroidered in *England*, the richeſt that may be, and a Coat of Mail for my own wearing. I promiſed to ſend for them, and *Aſaph Chan* was commanded to give Patterns. The Night being ſpent in this Diſcourſe, the Prince roſe up and diſmiſſed me.

March the third I came to *Mandoa:* The King was expected to make his Entry there, but the Day was not yet fixed; for he expected the Aſtrologers ſhould aſſign an auſpicious Hour for performing that Ceremony; ſo we ſtaid without, waiting that happy Moment.

The 6th I went into *Mandoa.* The 11th I ſet out to go meet the King; but was told, that a Lyon having kill'd ſome Horſes of his Train, he was gone out to hunt him. I ſpent ſome Time in ſeeking Water; for though the City was on a Hill, there was no Wells, nor Ciſterns; ſuch is the Forecaſt of thoſe People. All that Multitude of People there were in Danger of periſhing with Thirſt. The great Men at Court had taken Poſſeſſion of thoſe Wells there were in the Country about, ſo that I could get no Water. All the poor People were forced to leave the Town; and an Order was ſet forth for all Beaſts and Camels to be ſent out. All that had not Favour, were forced to ſeek other Habitations three or four Leagues from thence.

I cannot but declare, that in my Travels following the *Mogul*'s Court, I endured all the Inconveniences Men are ſubject

ſubject to under an ill Government, and in an untemperate Climate.

The 12th of *March* I preſented the King for a New-Year's Gift, a Couple of fine Knives and ſix Glaſſes, from the Company; and he took in good Part the Excuſe I made for the Smallneſs of the Preſent. He commanded one of his Officers to call Mr. *Biddolfe* immediately, and to pay him what he demanded. All our Creditors had Orders at the ſame Time to pay what they owed the Company. Then the King ordered me to come up the Steps of his Throne, and draw near him. I obeyed, and found the *Perſian* Ambaſſador on the one Side of him, and the old King of *Candahar* on the other. As ſoon as I had taken my Place near that Prince, he aſked me for a Knife, which I ſent him the next Day. Then the King called the *Perſian* Ambaſſador, and gave him ſome Stones and a young Elephant: He knelt and knocked his Head againſt the Steps of the Throne to thank him. This was the ſame Throne that ſerved the Year before, and was then mentioned, having the ſame Ornaments about it. Over the Throne were the Pictures of the King my Maſter, the Queen, the Lady *Elizabeth*, Sir *Thomas Smith*, and ſome others. Under it were two very fine *Perſian* Carpets. The Throne itſelf, as has been ſaid, was of Gold ſet with Rubies, Emeralds, and *Turky* Stones. On one Side, upon a little Stage or Scaffold, was a Company of Women Muſicians.

The 30th of this Month I ſent *Aſaph Chan* a Compliment, with a Preſent of a Pair of Gloves, and a curious Night-Cap. He ſent back the Gloves, as of no Uſe in that Country; but the Cap he received, and ſent to beg ſome *Spaniſh* Wine of me, which I ſent him the next Day.

The 30th of *April*, the *Perſian* Ambaſſador ſent to excuſe himſelf to me, for going away without paying his Reſpects to me. His Meſſenger told me he was not ſick, as he pretended; but that finding no Succeſs in his Negotiations with the King, he had taken his Leave, and at parting gave him thirty fine Horſes. The King in Return preſented him 3000 Crowns, and the Ambaſſador teſtified his Diſſatisfaction at that Gift. The King, to juſtify himſelf,

cauſed

cauſed two Liſts to be drawn; one of them of the Ambaſſador's Preſents, with the Price ſet on every one, but lower much than what they were really worth: In the other were ſet down even the meaneſt Things the King had given him, not omitting the Melons, Pine-Apples, and *Spaniſh* Wine ſent him, with their Prices; but much above the real Value. Theſe two Liſts being laid before the Ambaſſador, they offered him the reſt of the Money to make up the Balance. This ill Uſage made the *Perſian* feign himſelf ſick of a Fever, to avoid viſiting *Aſaph Chan*, and *Etimon Doulet*. Therefore he ſaid he could not croſs the Town to ſee me, without diſcovering the Counterfeit; but to make Amends had ſent to let me know the Truth, and would ſerve my Nation in his Country to the utmoſt of his Power. I preſented him ſome *Spaniſh* Wine, and a few Knives.

The firſt of *September* being the King's Birth-Day, and of the Solemnity of weighing him, I was conducted into a fine Garden; where, beſides others, there was a great ſquare Pond with Trees ſet about it, and in the Midſt of it a Pavilion or Tent, under which were the Scales the King was to be weighed in. The Scales were of beaten Gold, ſet with ſmall Stones, Rubies, and Turquoiſes; they hung by Chains of Gold, and for more Surety there were Silk Ropes. The Beam was covered with Plates of Gold. The great Lords of the Nation ſat about the Throne on rich Carpets, expecting the King's coming out. At length he appeared covered with Diamonds, Rubies, and Pearls. He had ſeveral Strings of them about his Neck, Arms, Wriſts, and Turbant, and two or three Rings on every Finger. His Sword, Buckler, and Throne, were alſo covered with precious Stones. Among the reſt I ſaw Rubies as big as Walnuts, and Pearls of a prodigious Magnitude. He got into one of the Scales, ſitting on his Legs like a Tailor: Into the other Scale, to weigh againſt him, were put ſeveral Parcels, which they changed ſix Times. The Country People told me they were full of Silver, and that the King that Day weighed nine thouſand Roupies. Then they put into the ſame Scale Gold and precious Stones; but being packed up, I ſaw them not. After that he was weighed againſt

Cloth

Cloth of Gold, Silks, Callicoes, Spices, and all other Sorts of precious Commodities, if we may believe the Natives, for all thoſe Things were pack'd up. Laſtly he was weighed againſt Honey, Butter, and Corn, and I was informed all that was to be diſtributed amongſt the *Banians*; but I think that Diſtribution was not made, but that all thoſe Things were careſully carried back. They told me all the Money was kept for the Poor, the King uſing to cauſe ſome to be brought at Night, and to diſtribute that Money among them very charitably. Whilſt the King was in one of the Scales, he looked upon me and ſmiled, but ſaid never a Word, perhaps becauſe he did not ſee my Interpreter, who could not get in with me. After being weighed he aſcended the Throne. Before him there were Baſons full of Almonds, Nuts, and all Sorts of Fruit artificially made in Silver. He threw about a great Part of them, the greateſt Noblemen about him ſcrambled for them. I thought it not decent to do ſo; and the King obſerving it, took up one of thoſe Baſons which was almoſt full, and poured it out into my Cloak. His Courtiers had the Impudence to thruſt in their Hands ſo greedily, that had I not prevented them, they had not left me one. Before I came in, they had told me thoſe Fruits were of maſſy Gold; but I found by Experience they were only Silver, and ſo light, that a thouſand of them do not weigh the Value of twenty Pounds. I ſaved the Value of ten or twelve Crowns, and thoſe would have filled a large Diſh. I keep them to ſhow the Vanity of thoſe People. I do not believe the King that Day threw away much above the Value of an hundred Pounds. After this Solemnity the King ſpent all the Night in drinking with his Nobles: I was invited, but deſired to be excuſed, becauſe there was no avoiding drinking, and their Liquors are ſo hot they will burn a Man's very Bowels. I was then ill of a Flux, and durſt not venture ſuch a Debauch.

September the 9th the King went to take the Air upon the Banks of the River *Darbadat*, and I took Horſe to meet him. It is the Cuſtom there that the Maſters of all the Houſes by whoſe Door the King paſſes muſt make him ſome Preſent; which Gift is called *Maubarech*, ſignifying

good News, or good Succeſs. Theſe Preſents the King takes as a good Omen of the Succeſs of what he has in Hand. I had nothing to give him, and it was a Shame to appear before him empty handed; beſides, it had been ill Manners in me not to be at home upon that Day: I reſolved therefore to preſent him an Atlas neatly bound, and make him this Compliment, that my Houſe affording nothing worthy the Acceptance of ſo great a Prince, I preſented him with all the World, he being Maſter of ſo conſiderable and wealthy a Part of it. He received my Preſent very courteouſly, often putting his Hand to his Breaſt, and proteſting that any Thing from me was always very acceptable to him. After other courteous Expreſſions, he told me he had received ſome wild Boars ſent him from *Goa* extraordinary fat, and if I would eat any he would ſend me ſome. I made my profound Obeyſance, and anſwered, I ſhould receive any Thing that came from his Majeſty with the utmoſt Satisfaction and Reſpect. He mounted his Elephant, and having made a little Halt before my Lodging, liked it very well, for it was one of the beſt in the Camp, and I had built it out of the Ruins of a Temple and an antient Tomb. He took Leave of me ſeveral Times, and would needs have me return to my Lodging becauſe the Way was very bad. I took my Leave, and obey'd him.

The 16th I went to pay the King of *Candahar* a Viſit, who ſent me Word at his Door, that he could not receive me without the King's Leave, or acquainting *Etimon Daulet*, or *Aſaph Chan*, which he would do at the *Durbar*. I ſent him Word he might ſpare his Labour, for I would take Care not to come a ſecond Time to a Perſon ſo ill bred. His Servants would have ſtaid me to carry in my Anſwer; but I went away, and at Night was at Court, where the King aſked me ſeveral Queſtions about my Book of Maps.

October the 6th I went to viſit the Prince upon his Arrival, having need of him for our Buſineſs. I deſigned to offer him the Service of our Nation, and preſent him with a Gold Chain made in *China*. When I ſent to deſire Audience, Word was brought me I might come in the Morning at Break

Break of Day, or ſtay till he went out to ſee the King, which I muſt have done at the Door. I took this as an Affront, having never been refuſed Audience by his Father; and therefore ſhow'd my Reſentment, ſaying, I was none of his Slave, but free, and the Ambaſſador of a King, and would take care not to viſit, or make Court to him any more; and ſince he refuſed me Juſtice, I would for the future ſeek it elſewhere: Accordingly at Night I went to the King, who received me with much Civility. I bow'd to the Prince, and he would not take Notice he ſaw me. I gave the King an Account of what he had required of me, and told him I had brought an Inventory of Goods in purſuance to his Commands. He aſked ſeveral Queſtions, and ſeemed well pleaſed at what was in the Inventory, promiſing me all Favours and Privileges I could deſire. He aſked whether our Ships had brought any Pearls, or precious Stones; to which I anſwered, they were dearer in *England* than in his Dominions; which Anſwer ſeemed to ſatisfy him. I durſt not ſay there were Pearls, fearing that would ſet the Prince upon perſecuting our People; beſides, I thought thoſe Pearls would be the more valued being the leſs expected, and hoped to make a Friend with them: And, therefore, when *Aſaph Chan* preſſed me to tell him whether we had any Jewels, I declared to him, I would have him ſecond the Anſwer I had given, that they were dearer in *England* than in *India*, and I had ſomething to ſay to him in private: He took me at half a Word, and ſaid no more. The King ſeeming to me to be then in a good Diſpoſition towards us, I thought it a proper Seaſon to mention our Debts; and having then the Petition ready drawn about me, took it out, and held it up to preſent it. The King having his Thoughts perhaps otherwiſe employed at that Time, did not obſerve it; but his Courtiers preſently imagined what it might be, and believing that he would be very angry that his Orders were not obeyed, one of them ſlily drew near, and pulled down my Hand, deſiring me not to preſent that Petition to the King. I told him, *Aradeth* had refuſed to do me Juſtice. He hearing what I ſaid was very uneaſy, and applying himſelf to *Aſaph Chan*, deſired him not to let me make

my Complaint. I urged, our Ships being now come, we could ſuffer no longer Delays and Loſs of Time. They conſulted what was to be done, and calling for the *Cutwall*, told him he muſt execute the King's Orders. That ſame Night our Debtors Tents were beſet, others were purſued, ſo that I believe this Time we ſhall have Juſtice done us. I had many Thanks returned me for the Civility uſed by the *Engliſh* towards the Paſſengers that were on board the Queen Mother's Ship, and for protecting that Veſſel againſt the Pirates of our Nation. They repreſented the Thing well to the King, and the great Men told me they had Reaſon to love the *Engliſh*, that they would do us all the Service in their Power; but that they wondered our King could not command his Subjects, and that any ſhould preſume to take Ships out of the Kingdom without his Leave. *Aſaph Chan* and I withdrew to tranſlate the Inventory into *Perſian* for the King: I ſomewhat increaſed the Article of the Money, that he might have the better Opinion of our Trade. I concluded, deſiring his Majeſty to allow us the Liberty of ſelling the reſt. This done, *Aſaph Chan* put me in Mind I had ſomething to ſay to him in private. I told him it was true, I had ſome Rarities come, but I had fared ſo ill the laſt Year by having my Secret divulged, that now I dar'd truſt none but him; and therefore on his Word of Secrecy and Advice, I declared I had a Pearl of great Value, and ſome other Rarities, and knew not whether I ſhould tell the King, leſt the Prince ſhould become our utter Enemy. I gave him an Account of what happened going to viſit him in the Morning, that I was ſtill ſenſible we ſtood in need of his Favour, and had therefore kept that Pearl to make him our Friend, to which I deſired his Advice. He embraced me, and ſaid I had done wiſely, but muſt keep the Secret, or it would breed me Trouble: That the Prince was a Tyrant, and miſ-uſed all Strangers. All this I ſaw tended to get the Pearl out of my Hands, adviſing me to ſend for it and truſt no Man, telling me Inſtances of the ill Uſage of the *Portugueſe* upon the like Occaſions. That if I would ſell him the Pearl, he would depoſite the Money I ſhould value it at in the Hands of a third Perſon; and in Return for the Confidence

Confidence I repoſed in him, he would ſollicit our Buſineſs, which could never be done without him. I ſaid I would ſerve him, but feared he would reveal the Secret: He ſwore he would keep it, and to make the Oath the more ſolemn, we ſqueezed one another's Thumbs, as is the Cuſtom of the Country. I promiſed on my Part to rely wholly on him, and do all Things according to his Direction. He ſaid he would get me Orders that our Goods ſhould not be touched, but left wholly at my Diſpoſal; that he would reconcile the Prince and me, and I ſhould be better uſed than I had been, have a particular Judge aſſigned that ſhould take Care of our Buſineſs, and all the Satisfaction we could wiſh. He ſaid it would be proper to make his Siſter Queen *Normahall* a Preſent, and ſhe would prevail with the King to give me Money. To this I replied, I had rather his Majeſty ſhould beſtow his Favours on our Nation in general. Then he carried me to the King, to whom I preſented the Inventory tranſlated: I had a favourable Reception. He aſked me whether there was any Tapeſtry? I ſaid ſome was ſent me, if it were not ſeized by the Way by the Prince's Order. He ſaid he would take a good Quantity of our Cloths, and other Commodities, directing me to have them brought, and *Aſaph Chan* to draw up the Order for their free Paſſage. I was well pleaſed with this Days Succeſs; for though Experience had taught me, that there was no Faith among thoſe Barbarians, yet I had no Cauſe to miſtruſt *Aſaph Chan*, when it was his Intereſt to be faithful to me, till he had got the Pearl, which he might otherwiſe have miſſed of; nor could I ſuſpect him afterwards, becauſe he could not betray my Secret without diſcovering his own Falſhood to the Prince.

The 12th *Aſaph Chan* according to Promiſe went with me to the Prince, who received me in his Chamber, where I preſented him with a ſmall Gold Chain made in *China*, on a Salver of that Country. *Aſaph Chan* perſuaded him to deal more kindly with us than he had done, repreſenting the Profit our Trade would yield him, and the Loſs it would be if we went away. The Prince immediately directed his Secretary to draw the Order to our Mind, and write a Letter

ter to the Governor to ſee it executed; adding I ſhould have any other Letter I deſired. This made me ſenſible of the poor Spirits of thoſe People. *Aſaph Chan* was become ſo much our Friend in hopes to buy ſome Trifles, that he would have betrayed his own Son to ſerve us, and was my humble Servant. He would needs ſend one of his Servants aboard our Ships for this Purpoſe, which I could not refuſe him; beſides, it is no Loſs to us, for he is a good Pay-maſter, bought by Wholeſale, what we muſt have ſold by Retail, and ſaved us the Charge of Carriage. He obtained an Order from the Prince to this effect, and writ a kind Letter to the Governor in our behalf. I now alſo obtained an Order from the Prince for *Bengala*, which before he would not let me ſpeak of. Afterwards I found he proſecuted our Debtors, as if they had been his own; and as he paſſed before the Cutwall's Houſe, called him out to bid him be ſpeedy in our Buſineſs, which was an unparallel'd Favour. The next Day *Aſaph Chan* ſent one of his Servants in the Queen's Name, to acquaint me that ſhe had obtained another Order from the Prince, that all our Goods for the future ſhould be under her Protection; that this was done, and ſhe was about ſending one to ſee what elſe we wanted, and to take Care that no Wrong was offered us. *Aſaph Chan* ſent Word he had done this for Fear of the Prince's paſſionate Temper, and his Delays in thoſe Affairs; but now we might be ſecure, ſince his Siſter had undertook our Protection, for the Prince would meddle in it no more; and that he engaged on his Honour that all Things directed for me ſhould be delivered to me. That ſhe had ſent a poſitive Order, directing the Perſon that carried it to be aſſiſting to our Factors, that they might have no Cauſe to complain of the Officers of *Surat*. She further deſired me to write to the Captain of the Ship and to the Factors, to be kind to her Meſſenger, and let him buy ſome of thoſe Toys that had been laid aſide. This I could not refuſe, but gave her a Liſt of them, upon Condition ſhe would ſhow me a Copy of the Order, which was ſealed. This ſhows how eaſy it is to ſell ſuch Commodities here. Laſt Year they did not regard us, now the Liſt or Inventory is tranſlated;

yet

yet without mentioning the Pearls I had given the King, every one runs to buy. Moſt of the great Men at Court deſired me to give them Letters to ſend their Servants to deal with our Factors; ſo that if I had been furniſhed with three Times the Quantity of Goods, they had been ſold aboard the Ships, and we had ſaved the Duties, Carriage, and the Seizures made before. I writ to our Factors to ſell to *Normahal*'s and her Brother's Servants what Goods they deſired, even of thoſe ſet apart, that I might be ſupported by their Intereſt at Court.

November the 6th I went to *Aſaph Chan*, and ſhow'd him the Pearls according to Promiſe. He told me they were not fit for that Country, which was afterwards confirmed to me by others; yet he was ſo pleaſed I had kept my Word with him, that I believe I may ſay as *Pharaoh* did, *The Land is before you, ſettle where you pleaſe.* We ſpoke not of the Price of the great Pearl. He promiſed to keep the Secret, aſſuring me that for my Sake, and becauſe I had confided in him, he would give more for it than it was worth, and pay ready Money; for he had a great deal, and would lend me ſome if I had Occaſion. I had all imaginable good Words from him, and ſome good Actions. He further told me there was little Difference in that Country between Giving and Selling, which I found by Experience to be true. After this familiar Diſcourſe in his Bed-chamber, he roſe up to go to Dinner, and invited me and my Retinue. I dined at a Table apart, becauſe they make a Scruple of eating with us.

The 10th I viſited *Aſaph Chan*, on Account of a Complaint I received that we were not allowed to lay our Ships aſhore, the Prince having been informed we intended to build a Fort at *Soali*, and that our Ships were to that Purpoſe loaded with Brick and Lime. This Jealouſy ſprung from our Mens bringing their Ships aſhore to careen them. The Report was ſo hot that I was forced to go to Court to clear myſelf, and had much ado to undeceive the King; this Conceit being more ſtrongly fixed in them, becauſe I had not long before aſked a Port of the King for that Purpoſe. Yet this did not prevent his ſending down a Body of Horſe

to

to demoliſh a Brick Fort that was at the Mouth of that River. They diſarmed our Men, but the Arms were put into the Cuſtom-houſe, and only the Sailors had theirs taken away. I told *Aſaph Chan* I could not live in Servitude; that there was no Honour in a Prince who granted a favourable Order one Day, and recalled it the next; and that I ſhould be blamed if I ſtaid any longer after ſuch Uſage. He ſaid he would that Night acquaint the King before the Prince, and return me his Anſwer. The 30th he told me Wonders of the Mogul's Kindneſs for the King my Maſter, my Nation, and for me in particular; adding, he had run the Hazard of loſing the Prince's Favour to ſerve us, but that he ſhould ſoon be in a Condition to do it effectually; for he was about being Governor of *Surat*, which the Prince muſt quit, having the Government of *Amadabat* and *Cambaya* conferr'd on him: And to demonſtrate he was real, deſired me to be with the King at Night, with the King my Maſter's Letter tranſlated into *Perſian*, adviſing me to complain, and deſire Leave to be gone, and I ſhould ſee how he would ſecond me. In the Evening I attended the King, found a great Court, preſented my Letter; and *Etimon Doulet*, at the Requeſt of *Aſaph Chan*, read the *Perſian* Tranſlation. The King ſaid he would take upon him to conclude a Peace between us and the *Portugueſe*, anſwer his Majeſty's Letter, and perform all he deſired in it. However I aſk'd Leave to return to *England*. The King and Prince had ſome Conteſt about this Matter, the latter ſaying he got nothing by our Stay at *Surat*, and was willing we ſhould be gone. Here *Aſaph Chan* ſtood up boldly, and ſaid the Kingdom gained conſiderably by our Trade, and was in ſome Meaſure ſecured by it; that the Prince's Officers uſed us ill, and it was impoſſible for us to ſtay without Redreſs; and therefore it were better for his Majeſty to diſmiſs us, than keep us to ſuffer new Wrongs. The Prince in a Paſſion ſaid he had never wronged us, but that on the contrary, at his Suit he had lately granted us an Order. It is true, replied *Aſaph Chan*, you granted them the Order as they deſired it, but ten Days after you ſent another to recall it: Adding that his Honour ſuffered by this Breach of Faith;

Faith; that he had no Intereſt in it, and only ſpoke with Reſpect to the King's Juſtice and Reputation. For our Uſage *Aſaph Chan* referred it to me, who had often complained that our Goods were taken from us forcibly theſe two Years laſt paſt; that we could never get Payment, and his Officers ſtill uſed the ſame Violence every Fleet that came; that if the Prince was weary of us, it were better for him to turn us out, and he might be ſure we would do ourſelves Right upon the Sea. Does the Prince, or the King, ſaid he, maintain this Ambaſſador? He is a Stranger that follows the Court at his own Expence; if his Goods are forcibly taken from him, and he can procure no Payment, how can he ſubſiſt? This was ſpoke with much Heat, and the King two or three Times repeated, *Violence, Violence*, ſeverely checking the Prince. This open Breach with the Prince ſucceeded as *Aſaph Chan* had forecaſted; for we were pay'd all that was due to us at *Surat*, and the Cuſtom-houſe Officers had Orders to treat us better for the future. I am ſatisfied had I not fallen out with the Prince, I ſhould never have made Good of it. I told the Prince's Meſſenger before the *Engliſh* Merchants, that if he offered any Violence to me, or my Merchants, it would coſt him ſome Blood; that I would ſhip myſelf aboard his own Veſſels, taking them out of his Ports, and would carry them into *England.*

*** *The reſt of Sir* Thomas Roe's *Journal, related chiefly to Trade and the Buſineſs of the Company; but the following Letters contain ſome remarkable Particulars and Obſervations not mentioned in his Journal.*

Extract of a Letter of Sir Thomas Roe's *to the Company.*

AT my firſt Audience, the Mogul prevented me in Speech, bidding me welcome as to the Brother of the King my Maſter; and after many Compliments I deliver'd his Majeſty's Letter, with a Copy of it in *Perſian:* Then I ſhow'd my Commiſſion, and delivered your Preſents, that

is, the Coach, the Virginals, the Knives, a Scarf embroidered and a rich Sword of my own. He ſitting in his State, could not well ſee the Coach, but ſent many to view it, and cauſed the Muſician to play on the Virginals, which gave him Content. At Night, having ſtaid the Coachman and Muſician, he came down into a Court, got into the Coach, and into every Corner of it, cauſing it to be drawn about. Then he ſent to me, though it was Ten o'Clock at Night, for a Servant to put on his Scarf and Sword after the *Engliſh* Faſhion, which he was ſo proud of, that he walked up and down drawing and flouriſhing it, and has never ſince been ſeen without it: But after the *Engliſh* were come away, he aſked the *Jeſuit*, whether the King of *England* was a great King, that ſent Preſents of ſo ſmall Value, and that he looked for ſome Jewels.

There is nothing more welcome here, nor did I ever ſee Men ſo fond of Drink, as the King and Prince are of red Wine, whereof the Governor of *Surat* ſent up ſome Bottles, and the King has ever ſince ſollicited for more: I think four or five Caſks of that Wine will be more welcome than the richeſt Jewel in *Cheapſide*. For the Queen, fine Needlework Toys, Bone-laces, Cut-work, and ſome handſome wrought Waiſtcoats, Sweet-bags, and Cabinets, will be moſt convenient. I muſt add, that any fair *China* Bedſteads, or Cabinets, or Trunks of *Japan*, are here rich Preſents.

Lately the King of *Viſapour* ſent his Ambaſſador with thirty-ſix Elephants, two of them with all their Chains of wrought beaten Gold, two of Silver, the reſt of Braſs, and four rich furniſhed Horſes, with Jewels to the Value of ten Lecks of Roupies. Yet withal he ſent *China* Ware, and one Figure of Chryſtal, which the King valued more than all that Maſs of Wealth.

This Place is either made, or of itſelf unfit for an Embaſſador; for though they underſtand the Character, yet they have much ado to underſtand the Privileges due to it, and the rather becauſe they have been too humbly ſought to before.

Extract

Extract of a Letter to the Archbiſhop of Canterbury.

LAWS theſe People have none written; the King's Judgment binds, who ſits and gives Sentence once a Week, with much Patience, both in civil and criminal Cauſes, where ſometimes he ſees the Execution done by his Elephants, with too much Delight in Blood.

His Governors of Provinces rule by his *Firmaes*, which are his Letters, or Commiſſions authorizing them, and take Life and Goods at Pleaſure.

There are many Religions, and in them many Sects. *Moors* or *Mahometans* following *Hali*; and ſuch is the King. *Banians* or *Pythagoreans*, believing the Tranſmigration of Souls, and therefore will not kill the Vermin that bite them, for Fear of diſlodging the Soul. They often buy many Days Reſpite from killing any Fleſh in a Province or City, merely out of Charity. Idolaters there are of ſeveral Sorts, their Wives adorning the Funeral Piles, and caſting themſelves into the Flames with great Joy.

The Extent of this Dominion is on the Weſt to *Syndu*, on the North-Weſt to *Candahar*, on the North almoſt to the Mountain *Taurus*, on the Eaſt to the Borders of *Ganges*, and South-Eaſt all *Bengala*, the Land forming the Gulph down to *Decan*. It is much greater than the *Perſian* Monarchy, almoſt, if not quite, equal to the *Turkiſh*. *Agra*, the ordinary Reſidence of the King, is near a thouſand Miles from any of the Borders, and farther from ſome. The right Iſſue of *Porus* is here a King in the Midſt of the Mogul's Dominions, never ſubdued till laſt Year; and to ſay the Truth, he is rather bought than conquered, won to own a Superior by Gifts, and not by Arms. The Pillar erected by *Alexander* is yet ſtanding at *Delli*, the antient Seat of the Anceſtors of *Rama*, the Succeſſor of *Porus*.

The Buildings are all built of Mud, one Story high, except in *Surat*, where there are ſome of Stone. I know not by what Policy the King ſeeks the Ruin of all the antient Cities which were nobly built, and now lie deſolate and in

Rubbiſh. His own Houſes are of Stone, handſome and uniform. His great Men build not, for Want of Inheritance; but as far as I have yet ſeen, live in Tents, or Houſes worſe than our Cottages: Yet, where the King likes, as at *Agra*, becauſe it is a City erected by him, the Buildings, as is reported, are fair and of carved Stone.

In Revenue he doubtleſs exceeds either *Turk* or *Perſian*, or any Eaſtern Prince, the Sums I dare not name; but the Reaſon. All the Land is his; no Man has a Foot. He maintains all that are not Mechanicks by Revenues beſtowed on them reckoned by Horſes, and the Allowance of many is greater than the Eſtates of *German* Princes. All Men riſe to greater and greater Lordſhips as they advance in Favour, which is got by frequent Preſents rich and rare. The Mogul is Heir to all that die, as well thoſe that gained it by their Induſtry, as Merchants, *&c.* as thoſe that live by him. He takes all their Money, only leaving the Widow and Daughters what he pleaſes. To the Sons of thoſe that die worth two or three Millions, he gives ſome ſmall Lordſhip to begin the World anew.

The King ſits out in three ſeveral Places at three Times of the Day, except ſomething extraordinary hinders him: An Hour at Noon, to ſee the Elephants fight; from Four till Five, to entertain all Comers, to be ſeen and worſhipped; from Nine till Midnight, amidſt his principal Men in more Familiarity, being below among them.

All the Policy of his State, is to keep the greateſt Men about him, or to pay them afar off liberally. There is no Council, but every Officer gives the King his Opinion apart.

Extract of another Letter to the Archbiſhop of Canterbury.

BEFORE the Inundation of *Temer* the Great, that is, *Tamerlain*, the ninth Anceſtor of this King, theſe Countries were govern'd by divers Heathen petty Princes, worſhipping all Sorts of Creatures after their ſeveral Manners.

Tamerlain's

Tamerlain's Offspring brought in the Knowledge of *Mahomet*, but impoſed it on none by the Law of Conqueſt, leaving Conſciences at Liberty. So that the Natives from the Circumciſion brought in by the *Mahometans*, called them *Moguls*, or Chief of the Circumciſed. Among the *Moguls* there are many ſtrict *Mahometans*, many that follow *Hali* his Son, and other later Prophets, who have their *Xerifes*, *Mulhaes*, and Prieſts, their Moſques, Religious Votaries, Waſhings, Praying, and Ceremonies without End. And as for Penitents, no Sect in the World can ſhew ſuch ſtrange Examples, nor boaſt of ſuch voluntary Poverty, Puniſhments, Sufferings, and Chaſtiſements as theſe, who are all eſteem'd holy Men, but of a mixt Religion, not upright with their Prophet. The *Gentiles* are of more Sorts, ſome valiant good Soldiers, drinking Wine, eating Hogs Fleſh, but worſhipping the Figure of a Beaſt. Some who will not touch the Fleſh that is not holy by Imputation; others that will not eat any Thing that ever had Life, nor kill the Vermin that bites them, nor drink in the ſame Cup with thoſe that do, ſuperſtitious in Waſhing, and moſt zealous in their Profeſſion; but all of them aſcribe a Sort of Divinity to their River *Ganges*, at which once a Year 40 or 50000 meet, and caſt in Gold and Silver for an Oblation. In like Manner they reverence a Pig's Head in a *Pagod* near this City, and all living Cows, and ſome other Beaſts and Creatures. Theſe have their *Pagods*, and Holy Men, Prophets, Witches and Soothſayers, and all other Impoſtures of the Devil. The *Mahometan Mulhaes* know ſomewhat in Philoſophy and the Mathematicks, are great Aſtrologers, and can talk of *Ariſtotle*, *Euclid*, *Averroes*, and other Authors. The learned Tongue is the *Arabian*. In this Confuſion they continued till the Time of *Ezbar Sha*, Father to this King, without much Knowledge of Chriſtianity. *Ezbar Sha* being a Prince by Nature juſt and good, inquiſitive after Novelties, curious of new Opinions, and excelling in many Virtues, eſpecially in Piety and Reverence towards his Parents, call'd in three Jeſuits from *Goa*, the Chief of whom was *Jerom Xaverius*, a *Navarois*. After their Arrival he heard them diſcourſe with much Satisfaction, and diſpute of Religion;

ligion; and cauſed Father *Xaverius* to write a Book in Defence of his Religion againſt both *Moors* and *Gentiles*, which when finiſhed, he read in every Night, and had ſome Part diſcuſs'd. Finally he granted them his Letters Patent to build, preach, teach, convert, and to uſe all their Rites and Ceremonies as freely as in *Rome*, beſtowing on them Means to erect their Churches and Places of Devotion. In this Grant he gave Liberty to all Sorts of Men to become Chriſtians, even to his own Court and Blood, profeſſing it ſhould be no Cauſe of Diſfavour. *Ezbar Sha* himſelf continued a *Mahometan*, yet he began to make a Breach into the Law; for conſidering that *Mahomet* was but a Man, and a King, as he was, and therefore reverenced, he thought he might prove as good a Prophet himſelf. This Defection of the King ſpread not far, a certain Awe with-held him, and ſo he died in the formal Profeſſion of his Sect, *Jehan Guire Sha*, his Son, the preſent King, being the Iſſue of this new Fancy, and never circumciſed, bred up without any Religion at all, continues ſo to this Hour, and is an Atheiſt. Sometimes he will profeſs himſelf a Mahometan, but always obſerves the Holy-days and does all Ceremonies with the *Gentiles*. He is pleaſed with all Religions, but loves none that changes; and falling into his Father's Conceit, has dared to proceed further in it, and profeſs himſelf for the main of his Religion to be a greater Prophet than *Mahomet*, and has formed to himſelf a new one, being a Mixture of all others, which many have received with ſuch Superſtition, that they will not eat till they have ſaluted him in the Morning; for which Purpoſe he comes at Sun-riſing to a Window open to a great Plain before his Houſe, where Multitudes attend him. When the *Moors* about him talk of *Mahomet*, he will ſooth them; but is glad when any one will laſh out againſt him. Of Chriſt he never utters any diſreſpectful Words, nor do any of all theſe Sects; which is a wonderful ſecret Working of God's Truth, and worth obſerving.

As for the new-planted Chriſtian Church, he confirmed and enlarged its Privileges, ſpending two Hours every Night for a Year in hearing Diſputes; often dropping Words of his

his Converſion, but to a wicked Purpoſe. To give the more Hope he delivered many Youths into the Hands of Father *Franciſco Corſi* ſtill Reſident here, to teach them to read and write *Portugueſe*, and to inſtruct them in Human Learning, and in the Law of Chriſt. To that Purpoſe the Father kept a School ſome Years, to which the King ſent two Princes his Brothers Sons, who being brought up in the Knowledge of God, and his Son our bleſſed Saviour, were ſolemnly baptized in the Church of *Agra*, with great Pomp; being firſt carried up and down all the City on Elephants in Triumph: And this by the King's expreſs Order, who would often examine them to ſee what Progreſs they made, and ſeemed well pleaſed with them. This made many bend towards the ſame Way, being ignorant of his Majeſty's Intention; others that knew him better, ſuppoſed he ſuffered this in Policy to render thoſe Children odious to the *Moors* for their Converſion, the Strength of his Eſtate conſiſting in them: But all Men miſtook his Deſign, which was thus diſcovered. When theſe and ſome other Children were ſetled, as was thought, in the Chriſtian Religion, and had learnt the Principles thereof, as to marry but one Wife, not to be coupled with Infidels, *&c.* the King ſet the Boys to aſk *Portugueſe* Wives of the Jeſuits; who thinking it only an idle Motion of their own, chid them, and ſuſpected no more: But that being the End of their Converſion to get Women for the King, and no Care being taken in it, the two Princes came to the Jeſuits, and delivered up their Croſſes, and all other Tokens of Religion, declaring they would be no longer Chriſtians, becauſe the King of *Portugal* ſent them no Preſents nor Wives, as they expected. The Fathers ſeeing this, began to doubt there was more in it than the Boys diſcovered; eſpecially ſeeing their Confidence that had caſt off the Awe of Pupils; and examining the Matter, they confeſs'd the King commanded them. The Jeſuits refuſed to receive the Croſſes, anſwering they had been given by his Majeſty's Order, and they would not take Notice of any ſuch Surrender from Boys, but bid them deſire the King to ſend one of thoſe who are, according to Order, to deliver all his Majeſty's Commands, whoſe Words

are

are by Privilege a ſufficient Warrant, and then they would accept of them; hoping the King would not diſcover himſelf to any of his Officers in this poor Plot. The Boys returned with this Meſſage, which enraged the King; but being deſirous to break up the School, and withdraw the Youth without Noiſe, he bid them call the Jeſuits to the Womens Door, where by a Lady he gave the Order, and without ever taking Notice ſince of any Thing, his Kinſmen were recall'd, and are now abſolute *Moors*, without any Taſte of their firſt Faith: And here ended the Converſion of theſe Infidels.

I will add another Relation, and ſo conclude, Not long ſince the Jeſuits Houſe and Church being burnt, the Crucifix remain'd untouch'd, which was given out for a Miracle, and much talk'd of. The King, who never lets ſlip any Opportunity of new Talk, or Novelties, hearing of this Accident, calls the Jeſuit, and queſtions him about it. He anſwers ambiguouſly; whereupon his Majeſty aſk'd, whether he did not deſire to convert him; and being anſwer'd in the Affirmative, reply'd, *You ſpeak of your great Miracles, and of many done in the Name of your Prophet; if you will caſt the Crucifix and Picture of Chriſt into a Fire before me, if it burn not I will become a Chriſtian.* The Jeſuit refuſed the Trial, as unjuſt, anſwering, that God was not tied to the Call of Man, that it was a Sin to tempt him, and that he wrought Miracles according to his own Will; yet he offered to caſt himſelf into the Fire for a Proof of his Faith, which the King would not allow of.

INDEX.

A

ABDALA CHAN, Governor of Amadabat, his penetential Appearance before the Mogul 226. His ſplendid Appearance and rich Preſents to the Prince 227, 230

America, not known till a few Centuries ago 3. Whence called the Weſt Indies *ibid.* *See* Weſt Indies.

Aſaph Chan, the Mogul's Prime Miniſter, his coſtly Feaſt and Preſent to him 213

B

BACCHIAN, one of the Molucca Iſlands, ſome Account of it 197. A ſingular Preſent ſent from its King to the King of Spain *ibid*

Baikol, a vaſt Lake in Siberia deſcribed 123

Banians, an Account of ſome of the Manners and Cuſtoms of that Sect 206

Bats as big as Eagles, an Account of 188

Bear, an Inſtance of the extraordinary Strength and Reſolution of one 103

Beavers in Siberia, their ſurprizing Sagacity 107

Beggar, a remarkable Interview of a religious one with the Mogul 242, 243

Borneo Iſland, an Account of its Inhabitants, King, and Produce 194, 195

Bovadilla, a Spaniſh Knight, his baſe Treatment of Columbus 67

Brandy made from Mares Milk, how 126

Brazil, Magellan's Account of it 176

Burattians, a Pagan People of Siberia, deſcribed 121. Their ſtupid Worſhip 122

C

CALEGHAN Iſland, its Produce 188

Candidius, Miniſter at Formoſa, his Account of that Iſland 80

Cabot, John Sebaſtian, the Commander of the firſt Ship that ſailed round the World 199. In how long Time the Voyage performed 200

Caribbees

I N D E X.

Caribbees, or Canibals. a ſavage Kind of People in the Weſt Indies deſcribed 42
Cat's Muſk, *See* Muſk.
Cemi, the Name of an Indian Idol 63. Some Ceremonies of its Worſhip 64
China, or Porcellaine Ware, the Manufactory of it deſcribed 142
Chineſe, their Manner of Entertaining 137. Their Muſick *ibid* Way of eating and ſerving their Tables 138. An Account of a Chineſe Play *ibid.* An Account of their Jonks or Ships 141. Surprizing Dexterity and Slight of Hand *ibid*, 156. Their great Annual Feſtival how celebrated 159
Cimbubon Iſland, its Situation and Produce 195
Clove Tree and Fruit deſcribed 196
Cocoa Tree and Fruit deſcribed 184. Their vaſt Uſefulneſs 185
Columbus, Bartholomew, ſent by his Brother to negotiate with the King of England for Aſſiſtance to make Diſcoveries in the Weſt Indies 8
Columbus, Chriſtopher, his Birth and Education 3. His firſt Hints for making Diſcoveries Weſtward 4. His Perſon and Character deſcribed *ibid.* His Motives for attempting Diſcoveries Weſtward 5. Applies to Sovereigns and States for their Aſſiſtance 7. Sails from Palos with three Ships 9. Firſt obſerves the Variation of the Needle 10. The Sailors ready to mutiny 13. Diſcovers Land and goes aſhore 20. The Innocence and Simplicity of the Inhabitants 21. Their Value for Trifles that belonged to the Europeans, whence 23. Leaves this and arrives at another Iſland *ibid.* Takes Poſſeſſion of Cuba 26. And of ſeveral ſmall Iſlands near it 29. Is deſerted by one of his Ships 31. His Account of the Beauties of Holy Harbour *ibid.* Takes Hiſpaniola 33. Takes Tortuga 34. His Account of their King 35. Loſes his Ship by the Negligence of the Seamen 37. Receives a good Deal of Gold for Trifles 39. Leaves the Iſland of Cuba 41. Meets with the Ship that had parted from him *ibid.* Lands at Enamorado 42. The fierce and ſavage Nature of its Inhabitants *ibid.* Meets with a terrible Storm and is in great Diſtreſs 44. His wiſe Precaution to make his Succeſs known to the King of Spain in Caſe of his Death 45. Arrives in Portugal 46. Arrives in Spain 47. Prepares for another Expedition 48. Sails with 17 Ships and 1500 People 49. Arrives at Dominica and ſeveral other Iſlands 50. Diſcoveries concerning the Inhabitants, Produce, &c. of theſe Iſlands 52. Comes to Hiſpaniola 53. Gets ſad Accounts of thoſe he had left there 54. Founds the Town Iſabella in a fruitful Part of the Iſland 56. Prevents a deſigned Mutiny *ibid.* Attempts new Diſcoveries and finds Jamaica

3 56 SEP

maica 58. Several remarkable Obſervations in their Voyage 59. Is in great Diſtreſs by a Storm, and for Want of Proviſions 60. Returns to Hiſpaniola, and is ſeized with a dangerous Sickneſs 61 Is put to much Trouble by a Revolt of one of his Officers 62. Impoſes a vaſt Tribute on the Inhabitants 63. Learns ſome of their Religious Ceremonies *ibid*, 64. Their Funeral Rites 64. Their Notions of a future State 65. Returns to Spain and meets with ſeveral Diſcouragements *ibid.* Sails again for America *ibid* Diſcovers ſeveral Iſlands 66. Arrives at St. Domingo in Hiſpaniola *ibid.* Finds this Place in great Diſtraction *ibid.* Diſcovers a Gold Mine 67. Is undermined and baſely treated by a Spaniſh Knight *ibid.* Arrives at Spain in Irons, is releaſed and reſtored to his Eſtate and Honours *ibid*, 68. Embarks again with four Ships for the Weſt Indies 68. Is refuſed Entrance to St. Domingo *ibid.* Arrives at Guiana 60. Meets with much Trouble in attempting to find a Paſſage to the Eaſt Indies 70. His Voyage and Traffick on the Coaſt of Honduras 70. Arrives at Porto Bello 72. Sails for Veragua, and meets with a terrible Storm of Thunder and Rain *ibid.* Is greatly ſurprized at a Water ſpout *ibid.* Arrives at Veragua, where he ſettles a Colony 73. Takes the Indian Chief with thirty of his People Priſoners *ibid.* They all eſcape or kill themſelves 74. Is obliged to bring off his Colony and loſes a Ship 76. Arrives in great Diſtreſs at Jamaica, where he ſtays a Year *ibid.* Returns to Spain, where he is ill uſed 77. His Death, Epitaph, and various Diſcoveries 78, 79.

Cuba Iſland, firſt diſcovered by Columbus 26. Some Account of it and its Inhabitants 27

D

DAURIAN Heathens deſcribed 125. Several of their Cuſtoms 126. The Diabolical Superſtition of thoſe of Xixigar 131. Several others of their Cuſtoms 132

Day, one gained or loſt in ſailing round the World 200. This how accounted for *ibid*

Dogs uſed in Tartary for drawing Carriages 104. Uſed in China as a wholeſome Food 163

Derviſe, in Japan, reported to be 300 Years old 244

Domingo, St. a Town in Hiſpaniola, built by Columbus 66

Durbar, the Ceremonies of 208, 209

E

ELEPHANTS, ſeveral ſurprizing Actions by them and other Beaſts in China 162, 163. Some of great Beauty kept richly adorned by the great Mogul 222

England, how disappointed of the Honour and Profit of the first Discovery of America 8

F

FERNANDINA, or Isabella, an Island in the West Indies first discovered by Columbus 24. An Account of it and its Inhabitants, &c. *ibid*, 25

Formosa Island, an Account of 80. Their Agriculture chiefly managed by Women 81. Their singular Manner of conversing with their Wives 82. A barbarous Law cocerning their Children *ibid.* Their publick Service performed only by Women 83 Their absurd religious Ceremonies *ibid.* Barbarous Manner of Fighting 84. And of celebrating their Victories 85. Their Government *ibid.* Punishments and Customs 86. Their Respect measured by Seniority 87. Their Marriages and Method of computing Time 88. Presents *ibid.* Strange Funeral Ceremonies 89. Their Ignorance of Books or Writing *ibid.* Believe the Immortality of the Soul *ibid*, 90. Their Notions of Rewards and Punishments, and of Sins 90. Acknowledge many Gods 91. Account of some of their Gods *ibid.* Their Houses, Furniture, &c. *ibid*

Fox, a very cunning one outwitted 106

G

GAN, a large River in Siberia 127

Guiana, an Island in the Gulph of Honduras discovered by Columbus 69

Guzelcan, the Place where the Mogul transacts his Affairs of State 209

Hispaniola discovered by Columbus 33. Some Acount of it *ibid*, 34

Honduras, Coast of, discovered by Columbus 69. Some Account of its Inhabitants, Produce, &c. 70

I

JALO, a River in Tartary, its beautiful Banks 128

Jamaica Island, discovered by Columbus 58

Ides, E. Ysbrants, his Travels, the Occasion of them 93. Sets out from Moscow and passes through several Cities 94, 95. His tedious and troublesome Passage through Siberia and Tartary 96. Reaches the Borders of China, and is civilly received and sumptuously entertained by a Mandarin 129. Arrives at Pekin 149. Is admitted to an Audience 151, The Ceremony of his eating with the Emperor 152. His Conference with a Jesuit in the Emperor's Presence 153. His Palace and Throne described 154. His Person and Dress *ibid*, 155. A Show in their Market of Manufactures and Provisions 158, 159. The Ceremonies of his Audience of Leave 160. The Closter and Entertainment of the

the Jeſuits deſcribed 162. Leaves Pekin 164. Enters the great Deſart 165. Is in great Danger of being attacked in it *ibid.* Meets with many Hardſhips and much Fatigue in paſſing it 165, 166. Is in great Diſtreſs and Danger by Fire 167. Several others of his Difficulties 168. Reduced to hard Shifts for Proviſions 169. How ſupplied with Roebucks and Fiſh 170. Gets to the End of the Deſart 171. Paſſes through various Places and arrives ſafe at Moſcow 172

Jenizeſkoy, a City in Siberia, and the adjacent Country deſcribed 116

Inibs, Prieſteſſes in the Iſland of Formoſa 83

Ingangu, a Chineſe Temple, the Pilgrimage to it deſcribed 140

M

MAGELLAN Ferdinand, his Voyage from the South Seas to the Eaſt Indies, 173. His Reaſons for making the Attempt, 175. Encouragement and Ships offered him by the Court of Spain, *ibid.* Sails from Seville with five Ships and 237 Men, 176. Comes to Brazil, *ibid.* Diſcovers a fierce and barbarous People, *ibid.* Finds another Kind of People very gigantick, 177. Their Dreſs, &c. deſcribed, *ibid* 178. Subdues ſome Conſpirators, 180. Diſcovers the Streights by which they come into the great Ocean, *ibid.* Is deſerted by one of his Ships, 181. In great Diſtreſs for Want of Proviſions in the Pacific Ocean, *ibid.* Obſervations concerning the Needle and the South Pole, *ibid.* Falls in with a Cluſter of Iſlands, 182. What People he found there, 183. Account of ſeveral other Iſlands, 184. Finds a People of much Humanity and good Diſpoſitions, *ibid.* Their great Plenty of Gold and Jewels, 186. Comes to the Iſland of But-Buthuan, *ibid.* The Riches of the Inhabitants, 187. Diſcovers many other Iſlands, 188. Refuſes to pay Tribute to the King of Zubut, 189. Perſuades the Inhabitants of that Iſland to embrace Chriſtianity, *ibid* 190. Arrives at the Iſland of Mathan, 191. Fights with and is killed by the Inhabitants, 192. Several of the Spaniards treacherouſly murdered, 193. The reſt proceed and diſcover ſeveral other Iſlands, *ibid.* Some Account of their Produce, Inhabitants Cuſtoms, 194. Come to Borneo, arrive at Cimbubon, 195. And at the Moluccas, *ibid.* The Rates of Traffick with the Inhabitants, 196, 197. Account of ſeveral other Iſlands, and their Inhabitants, 198. Come to the Cape Verd Iſlands, and ſeveral of them made Priſoners by the Portugueſe, 199. The reſt arrive in Spain, *ibid.* The Streights of Magellan, ſo called in Honour of Ferdinand, 200.

Mahomet Raza Beg, the Perſian Ambaſſador, his publick Entry to the Great Mogul, 227

Margarite,

Mammuts, Animals in Siberia, ſome Account of, 114
Margarite, Peter, one of Columbus's Officers, mutinies againſt him, and is reduced, 62
Mary, St. of the Conception, an Iſland in the Weſt Indies, firſt diſcovered by Columbus. 23
Mathan Iſland, the ridiculous Cuſtoms and Superſtition of its Inhabitants, 191. Their Funeral Ceremonies, 192
Meſſana Iſland, ſome Account of its Situation, Produce, &c. 188
Mocreb Chan, his Advice to Sir Thomas Roe concerning the Engliſh Manufactures, 214
Mogul, the Great, or Emperor of India, his ſtated Hours of ſhowing himſelf to his People, tranſacting Buſineſs, &c. 209. The Ceremonies of his Court, and giving Audience, *ibid.* His Reception of Sir Thomas Roe, *ibid.* One of his Pleaſure Houſes deſcribed, 210. Account of a ſolemn Feſtival, *ibid.* His vaſt Riches diſplayed on that Occaſion, *ibid.* 211. Receives New Year's Gifts from his Subjects, 211. His Reſentment to his Brother's Son, who was become Chriſtian, 213 His free Treatment of Sir Thomas Roe, 215. His terrible Puniſhment of the Infidelity of his favourite Queen, *ibid.* Beſtows his Picture ſet in Gold on Sir Thomas Roe, 219. Sends him a large wild Boar which he had killed, 221. Sends for him to ſolemnize his Birth-Day, *ibid.* The Ceremony of weighing him on that Occaſion, *ibid.* His immenſe Riches, 222. Deſires a Picture from Sir Thomas Roe, *ibid.* Makes him a Preſent of a rich Cup, 223. He and his Lords become merry with drinking, 224. Receives rich Preſents from the Perſian Ambaſſador, 228. His cruel and arbitrary Treatment of ſeveral of his Courtiers, 232. A remarkable Inſtance of his Meanneſs, 233. His Affection and rich Preſents to the Prince, 234. His Appearance at the Jarricco Window, 235. Account of his two principal Wives, *ibid.* Uſes a Ceremony to preſage good Fortune, *ibid.* His rich Dreſs, Ornaments, and grand Equipage, 236. His ſplendid Retinue, *ibid.* His Manner of decamping, 240. His large Camp, how expeditiouſly moved, 242. The great Regularity and Order of his Camp, *ibid.* His Diverſions there, *ibid.* His ſurprizing Familiarity with a religious Beggar, 243. Travels through Woods and over Mountains, *ibid.* His Interview with a very old Derviſe, 244. His fooliſh Behaviour when drunk, 245. His rude and baſe Behaviour to Sir Thomas Roe, *ibid.* His mean Apology to him, 246. His ill Uſage of the Perſian Ambaſſador, 249, 250. His Grandeur and Ceremonies on his Birth-Day, 250, 251. His vain Show of Profuſeneſs on that Occaſion, 251

INDEX.

Molalia Iſland, of Comera, deſcribed, 202. Its Inhabitants Produce and Trade, 203, 204. Their Manner of entertaining, Religion, &c. *ibid.*

Molucca's Iſlands, an Account of, 195. Produce and Situation, *ibid* 197. The Religion, &c. of the Inhabitants. 197

Muſk Cats, deſcribed, 122. The Muſk, how prepared, *ibid.*

N

NEEDLE, *See* Columbus and Magellan.

Noroſe, a ſolemn Feſtival at the Mogul's Court, deſcribed, 210

O

OSTIACKS, a People in Siberia, their idolatrous Worſhip, 107. Several others of their Cuſtoms, 109, 112. Their ſtrange Manner of ſmoaking Tobacco, 111. Their Method of Trial when jealous, 112

P

PAcific Ocean diſcovered by Magellan, 180. Why ſo called, 181

Pavia, Iſland diſcovered by Columbus, 66. Its Produce, *ibid.* The Simplicity of its Inhabitants, *ibid.*

Patar, the Viceroy, informs Sir Thomas Roe of the Revenue of the Mogul's Provinces, 217

Penguins, large Fowls in vaſt Quantities in the South Seas, 177. Some further Accounts of them, 202

Perſian Ambaſſador, *See* Mahomet Raza.

Pinzon, Martin Alonzo, *See* Columbus.

R

RIBNOY, an Iſland in Siberia, ſome Account of, 117

Roderick de Triana, the firſt who diſcovered Land in the Weſt Indies, 20

Roe, Sir Thomas, Journal of his Embaſſy to the Great Mogul, 201. Account of the Cape of Good Hope, 202. Arrives at Surat, 206. Comes to the Mogul's Dominions, *ibid.* His Reception by the Prince at Brampore, 207. His ſeveral Stages from Brampore to the Emperor's Court at Ardſmere, *ibid* 208. Ceremonies of his Audience, 209. Has another Audience, and gets the Articles of Peace and Commerce with England ordered to be ſettled, 211. The Subſtance of theſe Articles, 212, 213. Is treated with much Freedom by the Mogul, 215, 216. Gives an Account of the Emperor's vaſt Riches, 222. Propoſes Articles to be obſerved for unloading Engliſh Ships, 224. Has more Reſpect ſhown him than to the Perſian Ambaſſador, 228, 229. Makes a Preſent of ſome Feathers to the Prince, 231. Deſcribes the Magnificence of the Prince, 233. 239. Receives Preſents

Preſents from him, 240. Complains to the Emperor of the ill Uſage from the Prince 244. Preſents a New-Year's Gift to the Emperor 249. Bids Defiance to the Prince, 259. His Letters, containing ſeveral of their Civil and Religious Cuſtoms, 260

S

SALDANO, Coaſt of, deſcribed 201. Inhabited by Savages 202. Its Climate and Produce *ibid.*

Salvador, St. the Iſland in the Weſt Indies diſcovered by Columbus 20

Sarrano, Don Juan de, a Commander of a Ship, ſails with Magellan 175. Is taken Priſoner by the Inhabitants of Mathan 193

Schaman Schamanſkoy, a great rocky Water-fall in Siberia deſcribed 117. Account of a famous diabolical Artiſt living near it 119

Ships, ſuppoſed to be living Creatures when firſt ſeen by the Weſt-Indians 20

Siberia, Account of ſeveral Parts of it 101. How it became ſubject to the Czar of Muſcovy *ibid*

Socotora Iſland, ſome Account of it, and the ſtrange Cuſtoms of its Inhabitants 204, 205

Solikamſkoi, a large City in Ruſſia, its great Salt Trade 95

Spain, King and Queen of, *See* Columbus. Their Title to the Weſt Indies confirmed by the Pope 48

T

Tartars, Wogulſkia, a ſtupid, barbarous and brutal People deſcribed 97. Their Religious Worſhip *ibid.* Funerals 98. Marriages and other Cuſtoms 99, 100

Timefeiewitz Jeremak, a famous Robber, brings Siberia under Subjection to the Ruſſians 101

Trinity Iſland diſcovered by Columbus 66

Tunguſians, Niſovian, a People in Siberia deſcribed 119. Several of their Cuſtoms 120. The Konni Tunguzians deſcribed 124. Their prodigious long Hair *ibid*

U W

WALL, ſome Account of the great Wall in China 136

Weſt Indies, the Hiſtory of its firſt being diſcovered, *See* Columbus. Their Character, Cuſtoms, *&c.* 35. Their Humanity to the Europeans when in Diſtreſs 38. Are aſtoniſhed at the Noiſe of Cannons 39. Are terrified at the Sight of Horſes 58. Their ſingular Manner of Fiſhing 59. Their Funeral Rites 64. Notion of a future State 65. See Columbus.

Z

ZUBUL Iſland, ſome Account of 188. Manners of the People 190

Zulvan Iſland, an Account of it and its Inhabitants 184

3 56 SEP